

Read to Lead



Pharmaceutical Biotechnology



THAKUR PUBLICATION PVT. LTD.
LUCKNOW

Dr. S. Jayaraman
Dr. Richa Ohri
Dr. Pankaj Verma

PHARMACEUTICAL BIOTECHNOLOGY

B.Pharm, Semester-VI

According to the syllabus based on 'Pharmacy Council of India'

Dr. S. Jayaraman

Ph.D , M.pharm

Principal,

Sri Shanmugha College of Pharmacy, Salem Dist. Tamil Nadu

Dr. Richa Ohri

M. Pharm. Ph.D (Pharmaceutics)

Principal,

Lala Birkha Ram College of Pharmacy, Haryana

Dr. Pankaj Verma

M.Tech, Ph.D

Associate Professor,

Anand College of Pharmacy, Keetham, Agra

Books are Available for Online Purchase at: tppl.org.in



THAKUR PUBLICATION PVT. LTD., LUCKNOW

* Meerut * Bhopal * Nagpur * Bhubaneswar * Jaipur * Jalandhar * Kolkata *
* Chennai * Bengaluru * Ahmedabad * Pune * Hyderabad * Rohtak * Kerala *

Pharmaceutical Biotechnology

Edition 2019

Copyright © All Rights Reserved

This book is sole s ubject to the condition that it shall not, by way of trade or otherwise, be lent, resold, hired out, or otherwise circulated without the publisher's prior written consent, in any form of binding or cover, other than that in which it is published and without t including a similar condition. This condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser and without limiting the rights under copyright reserved above, no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in or transmitted in any form or by any means (e lectronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise), without the prior written permission of both the copyright owner and the below mentioned publisher of this book.

Published by :

Thakur Publication Pvt. Ltd.

H.O.-645B/187, Abhishekpuram, Jankipuram Extension,
Lucknow-226021

Mob.: 9415584997/98, 9235318591/94/95/96/97/22/17/24.

Website: www.tppl.org.in E-mail: thakurpublication@gmail.com

Our branch office in India:

1. **Thakur Publication Pvt. Ltd.,** 9-D, Gali No. 2, Rajendra Nagar, Shambhu Das Gate, Nauchandi, Meerut-250001. Mob. 9235318516, 9457820674.
2. **Thakur Publication Pvt. Ltd.,** Plot No. 109, Nava Naksha behind Jaiswal Restaurant, Near Choti Masjid, Nagpur-440017. Mob. 08840084584
3. **Thakur Publication Pvt. Ltd.,** Colony No. 14, Ganesh Nagar Bhopk el Post, CME Pune -411031. Mob. 09373086387, 9326863355, 9325036341, 9595076005/08.
4. **Thakur Publication Pvt. Ltd.,** House No. 46/1309, Kattikaran House, Feroz Gandhi Lane, Vaduthala (Post), Ernakulam, Kerala-682023. Mob. 9207296272, 9207296273, 9207296271.
5. **Thakur Publication,** H.No. 765, Badwale Chamatkareshwar Mahadev Mandir, Godi ki Gali, Maniharon ka Rasta, Kishan Pol Bazar, Jaipur-302003. Mob. 9351193641.
6. **Thakur Publication Pvt. Ltd.,** H.No. 12/14, Sukhram Nagar Society, Opp. Watar Tank, Lane No. 2, Rakhial Road, Gomtipur Ahmedabad-380021. Mob. 9328829591, 9374374905, 9328622684.
7. **Thakur Publication,** House No. 77 -2 RT, Municipal Colony, Near Yashoda Hospital, Malakpet, Hyderabad-500036. Mob. 09396389594, 09391550531, 09346575384.
8. **Thakur Publication Pvt. Ltd.,** H.No. 110, Room No. 1, Ahinsa Vihar Colony Ayodhya Bypass Road Bhopal-462022. Mob. 9691717925, 9691717928.
9. **Thakur Publication Pvt. Ltd.,** Plot No. 3368/8777, Prachi Vihar, Post - GGP Colony, P.S. Mancheswar, Dist.- Khurda, Bhubaneswar-751025. Mob. 9337585809.
10. **Thakur Publication Pvt. Ltd.,** House No. 1076, Harbans Nagar, Jalandhar -144002. Mob. 9357816968, 8591828212, 8591850332.
11. **Thakur Publication Pvt. Ltd.** House No. 8, Ambu Nagar, Main Road, Goverthanagiri, Avadi, Chennai 600071. Mob. 9543605656, 8144126950, 93247241, 8124457101, 9543247130.
12. **Thakur Publication Pvt. Ltd,** House No. 120, 2nd Main, 2nd Cross, Brindavan Nagar, D.R.C. Post, Bengaluru-560029. Mob. 9341835403, 9379798011, 9343859590, 8880441707.
13. **Thakur Publishers,** H.No.34, Ward No. 6, Behind Verma P etrol Pump, Bhiwani Chungi, Rohtak - 124001. Mob. 7876991824, 7876991825, 9068601142, 9729004576.
14. **Thakur Publication Pvt. Ltd,** H.No.-1312, Purba Sinthee Road, Fakir Ghosh Lane, Dumdum, Kolkata-700030. Mob. 9337585809,

*“Dedicated
to
my **students**”*

-Dr. S. Jayaraman

*“Dedicated
to
my loving **Family**”*

-Dr. Richa Ohri

*“Dedicated
to
my **family**”*

-Dr. Pankaj Verma

Preface

It gives us immense pleasure to place before the **B. Pharm Sixth Semester** pharmacy students the book on “**Pharmaceutical Biotechnology**”.

This book has been written strictly in accordance with the current syllabus prescribed by Pharmacy Council of India, for B. Pharm students. Keeping in view the requirements of students and teachers, this book has been written to cover all the topics in an easy-to-comprehend manner within desired limits of the prescribed syllabus, and it provides the students fundamentals of biosensors, protein and genetic engineering, microbial genetics and bio transformation, mutation, immune -blotting techniques, fermentation, and blood products and plasma substitutes.

All efforts have been made to keep the text error -free and to present the subject in a student friendly and easy to understand. However, any suggestions and constructive comments would be highly appreciated and incorporated in the future edition.

Please e-mail us at, **thakurpublication@gmail.com**

Website, **www.tppl.org.in**

Acknowledgement

It gives me pleasure to acknowledge with deep appreciation for all those who have extended their co-operation during preparation of the book. A special thanks to our Charirman **Mr. K. Shanmugham** , Vice-Chairman **Mr. S. Prabahar** and **Mr. K.K. Balagi Vasenth** , Secretary of Sri Shanmugha Educational Institutions for their encouragement and motivation. I wish to thank my pharma friends **Prof. Dr. Rathinavel**, **Mr. T. Boopathy**, **Ms. Monika** and **Ms. Keerthana Shanmugham** for their patience throughout the entire process. My special acknowledge and thanks to **Mr. Bhuvanesh Kumar** , Marketing manager, **Thakur Publication Pvt. Ltd** . for his approach, assistance and support in this regard. Finally, I thank to my entire family members for their continued support.

-Dr. S. Jayaraman

A successful work is never a one person job. It is the result of the effort and support of lot of people. I am highly indebted to **Almighty** who has given me strength to accomplish this task. Mere words can never encompass one's profound inward emotions of ineffable indebtedness.

I am overwhelmed with sense of gratitude which I owe to **my husband Mr. Sunil Ohri** , **my Parents** and **my father in law** for granting an opportunity to the person that life intended me to be; for encouraging my dreams and allowing me to spread my wings and pursue all opportunities in life. Special thanks to my **son Darsh** for his constant love and affection.

I am also thankful to the management of Lala Birkha Ram College of Pharmacy, who believed in me and gave me opportunity to work with them. I am equally thankful to my colleagues the of the pharmacy institute for their co-operation. I would like to thank **Thakur Publication Pvt. Ltd** ., and their entire team for their timely assistance and coordination.

-Dr. Richa Ohri

I would like to thank all people who have helped and inspired me during my book writing. It is a pleasure to convey my gratitude to them all in my humble acknowledgment.

I am grateful to **God** for giving me the strength to successfully complete book writing process and for sustain my efforts which many a times did oscillate.

I am grateful to **Thakur Publication Pvt. Ltd** especially, **Ms. Tuhina Banerjee** (Copy Editor) and **Mr. Sharad Kushwaha** (Marketing Coordinator), for giving me book writing excellent opportunity. I am very much thankful to **management of Anand College of Pharmacy**.

-Dr. Pankaj Verma

Syllabus

Module 01

10 Hours

- Brief introduction to Biotechnology with reference to Pharmaceutical Sciences.
- Enzyme Biotechnology - Methods of enzyme immobilization and applications.
- Biosensors- Working and applications of biosensors in Pharmaceutical Industries.
- Brief introduction to Protein Engineering.
- Use of microbes in industry. Production of Enzymes - General consideration - Amylase, Catalase, Peroxidase, Lipase, Protease, Penicillinase.
- Basic principles of genetic engineering.

Module 02

10 Hours

- Study of cloning vectors, restriction endonucleases and DNA ligase.
- Recombinant DNA technology. Application of genetic engineering in medicine.
- Application of rDNA technology and genetic engineering in the production of: i)
- Interferon ii) Vaccines- hepatitis- B iii) Hormones-Insulin.
- Brief introduction to PCR.

Module 03

10 Hours

- Types of immunity- humoral immunity, cellular immunity.
- Structure of Immunoglobulins.
- Structure and Function of MHC.
- Hypersensitivity reactions, Immune stimulation and Immune suppressions.
- General method of the preparation of bacterial vaccines, toxoids, viral vaccine, antitoxins, serum -immune blood derivatives and other products relative to immunity.
- Storage conditions and stability of official vaccines.
- Hybridoma technology- Production, Purification and Applications.
- Blood products and Plasma Substitutes.

Module 04

08 Hours

Immuno-Blotting Techniques

- ELISA, Western blotting, Southern blotting.
- Genetic organization of Eukaryotes and Prokaryotes.
- Microbial genetics including transformation, transduction, conjugation, plasmids and transposons.
- Introduction to Microbial biotransformation and applications.

Mutation

Types of mutation/mutants.

Module 05

07 Hours

- Fermentation methods and general requirements, study of media, equipments, sterilization methods, aeration process, stirring.
- Large-scale production fermenter design and its various controls.
- Study of the production of - penicillins, citric acid, Vitamin B12, Glutamic acid, Griseofulvin.

Blood Products

- Collection, Processing and Storage of whole human blood, dried human plasma, plasma Substitutes.

Contents

Module I

Chapter 1: Introduction to Biotechnology

1.1.	Biotechnology	15
1.1.1.	Introduction	15
1.1.2.	Historical Background	15
1.1.3.	Applications of Biotechnology in Pharmaceutical Sciences	17
1.2.	Enzyme Biotechnology	19
1.2.1.	Introduction	19
1.2.2.	Enzyme Immobilization	19
1.2.3.	Methods of Enzyme Immobilization	20
1.2.3.1.	Adsorption Method	20
1.2.3.2.	Covalent Bonding	21
1.2.3.3.	Cross-Linking	23
1.2.3.4.	Entrapment	24
1.2.3.5.	Encapsulation	26
1.2.4.	Applications of Enzyme Immobilization in Pharmacy	28
1.2.4.1.	Production of Antibiotics	28
1.2.4.2.	Production of Steroids	29
1.2.4.3.	Production of Amino Acids	30
1.2.4.4.	Production of Acids	30
1.2.4.5.	Other Organic Compounds	31
1.2.4.6.	Analytical Applications	31
1.2.5.	Production of Enzymes	32
1.2.5.1.	Use of Microbes in Industry	32
1.2.5.2.	General Consideration	33
1.2.5.3.	Amylase	35
1.2.5.4.	Catalase	37
1.2.5.5.	Peroxidase	37
1.2.5.6.	Lipase	39
1.2.5.7.	Protease	40
1.2.5.8.	Penicillinase	41
1.3.	Summary	42
1.4.	Exercise	44

Chapter 2: Biosensors, Protein and Genetic Engineering

2.1.	Biosensors	46
2.1.1.	Introduction	46
2.1.2.	Principle	46
2.1.3.	Working	47
2.1.4.	Types	47
2.1.5.	Applications in Pharmaceutical Industries	48
2.2.	Protein Engineering	49
2.2.1.	Introduction	49
2.2.2.	Objectives	50

2.2.3.	Increasing the Stability and Biological Activity of Proteins	51
2.2.3.1.	Addition of Disulfide Bonds	51
2.2.3.2.	Changing Asparagine to Other Amino Acids	51
2.2.3.3.	Reducing the Free Sulfhydryl Groups	52
2.2.3.4.	Single Amino Acid Changes	52
2.2.3.5.	Improving Kinetic Properties of Enzymes	53
2.2.4.	Applications	54
2.3.	Genetic Engineering	55
2.3.1.	Introduction	55
2.3.2.	Historical Background	55
2.3.3.	Basic Principles	56
2.3.4.	Process	56
2.3.5.	Applications	56
2.4.	Summary	58
2.5.	Exercise	59

Module II

Chapter 3: Recombinant DNA Technology

3.1.	Recombinant DNA Technology (Gene Cloning)	60
3.1.1.	Introduction	60
3.1.2.	Isolation of Target DNA	61
3.1.2.1.	Restriction Endonuclease Digestion	61
3.1.2.2.	cDNA Clones	63
3.1.2.3.	Mechanical Shearing	64
3.1.2.4.	Chemical Synthesis	64
3.1.3.	Insertion of Target DNA Into a Vector	65
3.1.3.1.	Direct Ligation of Cohesive Termini (DNA Ligase)	65
3.1.3.2.	Blunt End Ligation	65
3.1.3.3.	Linkers and Adapters	66
3.1.3.4.	Homopolymer Tailing	66
3.1.4.	Study of Cloning Vectors	67
3.1.4.1.	Plasmids	67
3.1.4.2.	Bacteriophages	69
3.1.4.3.	Cosmids	71
3.1.4.4.	Phagemids	71
3.1.4.5.	Vectors for Cloning Larger DNA Fragments	72
3.1.4.6.	Vectors for Preparing Single-Stranded DNA	74
3.1.4.7.	Expression Vectors	75
3.1.5.	Identification and Isolation of Recombinant Genes	76
3.1.5.1.	Colony Hybridisation (or Nucleic Acid Hybridisation) by Replica Plate Method	76
3.1.5.2.	Hybrid Released Translation (HRT) Method	77
3.1.5.3.	Immunochemical Detection	78
3.1.6.	Expression of Cloned Gene Within the Host	78
3.1.7.	Techniques Used In Recombinant DNA Technology	78
3.1.7.1.	Gel Electrophoresis	79
3.1.7.2.	Blotting Techniques	79

3.1.7.3.	Dot Blot Hybridisation	79
3.1.7.4.	PCR (Polymerase Chain Reaction)	80
3.1.8.	Applications of rDNA Technology and Genetic Engineering in Medicine	81
3.1.9.	Application of rDNA Technology and Genetic Engineering in the Production of Interferon	82
3.1.10.	Application of rDNA Technology and Genetic Engineering in the Production of Hepatitis Vaccine	84
3.1.11.	Application of rDNA Technology and Genetic Engineering in the Production of Insulin	86
3.2.	Summary	87
3.3.	Exercise	88

Module III

Chapter 4: Immunology

4.1.	Immunity	90
4.1.1.	Introduction	90
4.1.2.	Types of Immunity	90
4.1.3.	Non-Specific/Innate/Neutral Immunity	90
4.1.3.1.	Types	91
4.1.3.2.	Mechanisms	91
4.1.4.	Specific/Acquired/Adaptive Immunity	93
4.1.4.1.	Active Immunity	94
4.1.4.2.	Passive Immunity	94
4.1.5.	Cellular/Cell-Mediated/T-Cell Immunity	95
4.1.5.1.	Mechanism	96
4.1.5.2.	Importance	96
4.1.6.	Humoral/Antibody-Mediated/B-Cell Immunity	96
4.1.6.1.	Immunoglobulins Participating in Humoral Immunity	97
4.1.6.2.	Mechanism	97
4.2.	Immunoglobulins	98
4.2.1.	Introduction	98
4.2.2.	Classification	98
4.2.3.	Structure	100
4.3.	Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC)	102
4.3.1.	Introduction	102
4.3.2.	Classes	103
4.3.3.	Structure	103
4.3.4.	Functions	104
4.4.	Hypersensitivity Reactions	105
4.4.1.	Introduction	105
4.4.2.	Types	105
4.4.2.1.	Type I Hypersensitivity	106
4.4.2.2.	Type II Hypersensitivity	106
4.4.2.3.	Type III Hypersensitivity	108
4.4.2.4.	Type IV Hypersensitivity	108
4.4.2.5.	Type V Hypersensitivity	110
4.4.3.	Immune Stimulation	110

4.4.4.	Immune Suppression	110
4.5.	Summary	113
4.6.	Exercise	114

Chapter 5: Immunisation

5.1.	Vaccines	116
5.1.1.	Introduction	116
5.1.2.	Classification	116
5.1.3.	General Method of Preparation	117
5.1.3.1.	Bacterial Vaccines	117
5.1.3.2.	Toxoids	118
5.1.3.3.	Viral Vaccines	118
5.1.3.4.	Antitoxins	118
5.1.3.5.	Serum	119
5.1.4.	Storage Conditions and Stability of Official Vaccines	119
5.1.4.1.	Bacillus Calmette-Guerin or BCG Vaccine	120
5.1.4.2.	Pertussis Vaccine (Whooping Cough Vaccine)	121
5.1.4.3.	Cholera Vaccine	121
5.1.4.4.	Tetanus Toxoid	122
5.1.4.5.	Rabies Vaccine	122
5.1.4.6.	Polio Vaccine	124
5.1.4.7.	Typhoid Vaccine	128
5.1.4.8.	Hepatitis Vaccine	129
5.1.4.9.	AIDS Vaccine	129
5.1.4.10.	Diphtheria Antitoxin	131
5.2.	Hybridoma Technology	132
5.2.1.	Introduction	132
5.2.2.	Principle	132
5.2.3.	Production of MAbs	133
5.2.3.1.	Immunisation	134
5.2.3.2.	Cell Fusion	135
5.2.3.3.	Selection of Hybridomas	135
5.2.3.4.	Screening the Products	135
5.2.3.5.	Cloning and Propagation	135
5.2.3.6.	Characterisation and Storage	135
5.2.4.	Large Scale Production of MAbs	136
5.2.5.	Purification of MAbs	136
5.2.6.	Applications of MAbs	137
5.2.6.1.	Diagnostic Applications	137
5.2.6.2.	Therapeutic Applications	139
5.2.6.3.	Protein Purification	140
5.2.6.4.	Miscellaneous Applications	140
5.3.	Summary	141
5.4.	Exercise	142

Module IV

Chapter 6: Immuno-Blotting Techniques

6.1.	Immuno-Blotting Techniques	143
6.1.1.	Introduction	143
6.1.2.	Enzyme-Linked Immunosorbent Assay (ELISA)	144
6.1.2.1.	Principle	144
6.1.2.2.	Procedure	145
6.1.2.3.	Types of ELISA	145
6.1.2.4.	Applications	148
6.1.3.	Western Blotting	148
6.1.3.1.	Principle	148
6.1.3.2.	Procedure	148
6.1.3.3.	Applications	151
6.1.4.	Southern Blotting	152
6.1.4.1.	Principle	152
6.1.4.2.	Procedure	152
6.1.4.3.	Applications	153
6.2.	Genetic Organisation of Eukaryotes and Prokaryotes	153
6.2.1.	Introduction	153
6.2.2.	Eukaryotes	154
6.2.3.	Prokaryotes	155
6.3.	Summary	156
6.4.	Exercise	156

Chapter 7: Microbial Genetics and Biotransformation

7.1.	Microbial Genetics	158
7.1.1.	Introduction	158
7.1.2.	Transformation	158
7.1.3.	Transduction	160
7.1.3.1.	Specialised Transduction	160
7.1.3.2.	Generalised Transduction	162
7.1.4.	Conjugation	162
7.1.5.	Plasmids	164
7.1.5.1.	Properties	164
7.1.5.2.	Physical Nature	164
7.1.5.3.	Types	164
7.1.5.4.	Replication	166
7.1.5.5.	Incompatibility	167
7.1.6.	Transposons	167
7.1.6.1.	Types	168
7.1.6.2.	Significance	169
7.2.	Microbial Biotransformation	170
7.2.1.	Introduction	170
7.2.2.	Types of Reactions	170
7.2.3.	Sources of Biocatalysts	177
7.2.4.	Applications	178

7.3.	Summary	178
7.4.	Exercise	179

Chapter 8: Mutation

8.1.	Mutation	181
8.1.1.	Introduction	181
8.1.2.	Types of Mutation	181
8.1.3.	Types of Mutants	184
8.1.4.	Agents of Mutation - Mutagens	184
8.1.4.1.	Physical Mutagens	185
8.1.4.2.	Chemical Mutagens	188
8.2.	Summary	193
8.3.	Exercise	193

Module V

Chapter 9: Fermentation

9.1.	Fermentation	195
9.1.1.	Introduction	195
9.1.2.	Fermentation Methods	195
9.1.2.1.	Batch Fermentation	195
9.1.2.2.	Fed-Batch Fermentation	196
9.1.2.3.	Continuous Fermentation	196
9.1.3.	General Requirements	198
9.1.4.	Study of Media	198
9.1.4.1.	Types of Media	199
9.1.4.2.	Culture Media for Lactobacilli and <i>E. coli</i>	199
9.1.4.3.	Culture Media for Viruses	200
9.1.5.	Study of Equipments	201
9.1.6.	Sterilisation Methods	202
9.1.6.1.	Sterilisation of Fermenter	202
9.1.6.2.	Sterilisation of Media	203
9.1.6.3.	Sterilisation of Air	203
9.1.7.	Large-Scale Production Fermenter Design	204
9.1.7.1.	Cooling Jacket	204
9.1.7.2.	Aeration System and Stirring	204
9.1.7.3.	Baffles	205
9.1.7.4.	Controlling Devices for Environmental Factors	205
9.1.7.5.	Use of Computer in Fermenter	205
9.1.8.	Various Controls of a Fermenter	205
9.1.9.	Factors Affecting Fermenter Design	206
9.1.10.	Production of Penicillins	207
9.1.10.1.	Strain Development	208
9.1.10.2.	Inoculum Production	209
9.1.10.3.	Inoculation	210
9.1.10.4.	Medium	210
9.1.10.5.	Extraction and Purification	212

9.1.11.	Production of Citric Acid	213
9.1.11.1.	Microbial Strains for Citric Acid Production	213
9.1.11.2.	Medium	213
9.1.11.3.	Production Processes for Citric Acid	214
9.1.11.4.	Surface Processes	214
9.1.11.5.	Submerged Processes	215
9.1.11.6.	Recovery of Citric Acid	216
9.1.12.	Production of Vitamin B ₁₂	216
9.1.12.1.	Fermentation of <i>Pseudomonas denitrificans</i>	217
9.1.12.2.	Fermentation of <i>Propionibacterium shermanii</i>	218
9.1.12.3.	Isolation and Purification	219
9.1.13.	Production of Glutamic Acid	219
9.1.13.1.	Medium	219
9.1.13.2.	Process	219
9.1.13.3.	Recovery	220
9.1.14.	Production of Griseofulvin	220
9.1.14.1.	Inoculum Development	221
9.1.14.2.	Extraction and Purification	222
9.2.	Summary	222
9.3.	Exercise	223

Chapter 10: Blood Products and Plasma Substitutes

10.1.	Blood Products	225
10.1.1.	Introduction	225
10.1.2.	Whole Human Blood	225
10.1.2.1.	Collection	226
10.1.2.2.	Processing	226
10.1.2.3.	Storage	227
10.1.3.	Plasma, Serum and Plasma Fractions	229
10.1.3.1.	Dried Human Plasma BP	230
10.1.3.2.	Fresh Frozen Plasma	231
10.1.3.3.	Dried Human Serum, BP	231
10.1.4.	Plasma Substitutes	231
10.1.4.1.	Ideal Requirements of Plasma Substitutes	232
10.1.4.2.	Polyvinylpyrrolidone (PVP)	232
10.1.4.3.	Dextran	232
10.2.	Summary	234
10.3.	Exercise	235

CHAPTER
1

Introduction to
Biotechnology

1.1. BIOTECHNOLOGY

1.1.1. Introduction

Biotechnology is a branch of biology involving the use of living organisms and bioprocesses in engineering, technology, medicine, and other fields using bioproducts. The term **biotechnology** indicates the use of living organisms or their products for modifying the human health and environment.

The field of biotechnology has been further expanded by a host of new molecular inventions, which permit making unique changes to the living systems. Transgenic plants and animals are widely used in agricultural field; in humans; devastating diseases are being treated by gene therapy; and in the environment, biotechnology is used in water and land management and also in the management of pollution resulting from over-industrialisation. Therefore, biotechnology is a collection of biological, chemical, and engineering disciplines with various uses in agricultural, medical, industrial and environmental situations.

1.1.2. Historical Background

The earlier formative works which made significant contributions in the growth of biotechnology are enlisted in **table 1.1**:

Table 1.1: History of Biotechnology

Year	Summary of the Discoveries
1665	Robert Hooke observed tiny microscopic structures under the first microscope and coined the word cell .
1830	Robert Brown (a Scottish physician) identified an opaque area in plant cells and called it nucleus .
1857	Biologists observed small rod-like bodies in dividing cells, and called them chromosomes (coloured bodies) as they were found to be absorbing coloured dyes.
1869	Johann Friedrich Miescher (a Swiss biologist) isolated nuclein, which at present is called DNA . Watson and Crick later studied the DNA structure for more than a decade.
1879	Albrecht Kossel (a German biochemist) discovered the nucleic acid composition, i.e., adenine, thymine, cytosine, guanine, and uracil.
1882	Edouard van Beneden (a Belgian biologist) found out that every species characteristically possesses a specific number of chromosomes.
1902	Walter S. Sutton studied grasshopper sperm and reported that each chromosome paired with another physically similar pair and then got separated during meiosis. The individual members of each pair then divided among the cells.
1907	Tissue culture techniques were developed.

1909	Wilhelm Ludvig Johannsen (a Danish botanist) coined the term genes .
1919	Thomas Hunt Morgan identified XY male and XX female chromosomes and suggested that some traits are sex -linked. He also demonstrated the mutation of genes.
1930	Electron microscope was invented with the help of which the researchers viewed viruses. This microscope had better contrast and staining agents, thus macromolecules like DNA were exposed.
1944	Oswald T. Avery along with his colleagues demonstrated that DNA is the carrier of genetic information.
1953	James Watson and Francis Crick proposed a double helix molecular structure of DNA based on Rosalind Franklin's model.
1961	Francois Jacob and Jacques Monod (French molecular biologists) suggested that differential gene expression causes differences in the structure and function of cells.
1964	Marshall Nirenberg cracked genetic code.
1970	First restriction enzyme (a specialised protein used to cut DNA strands at specific locations) was isolated.
1973	Herbert W. Boyer and Stanford's Stanley N. Cohen performed the first genetic engineering experiment by linking toad genes with <i>E. coli</i> bacteria.
1976	J. Michael Bishop and Harold E. Varmus discovered oncogenes (which lead to cancer). Yuet Wai Kan established molecular techniques to allow the first foetal test for identifying sickle cell anaemia.
1979	Genentech Inc. (the biotechnology company) in collaboration with UCSF (University of California, San Francisco) developed synthetic human growth hormone. Yuet Wai Kan and Judy C. Chang (of UCSF's) used gene mapping techniques to discover the single genetic mutation causing β -thalassemia (the most common form of life-shortening blood disease).
1980	Virus-fighting interferon was cloned.
1981	Transgenic mice and transgenic fruit flies were produced, which became the model systems for studying mutations, gene expression, and human diseases. After 7 years, a cancer prone transgenic mouse became the first patented life form.
1987	William J. Rutter (a biochemist) and his Emeryville Chiron Corporation produced the first commercial genetically engineered vaccine against hepatitis B.
1990	Chymosin (an enzyme used in cheese -making) became the first product of genetic engineering to be introduced into the food supply.
1991	The gene implicated in the inherited form of breast cancer was discovered. This paved the way for the treatment of other similar forms of cancer.
1992	Techniques for testing embryos for inherited diseases such as cystic fibrosis were developed.
1996	The first trial of gene therapy for a neurological disorder was conducted in New Zealand. Dolly, the sheep was cloned from a cell from an adult sheep making it the first cloned organism.
1999	New Zealand researchers developed a new vaccine for bovine and human tuberculosis. Chinese scientists cloned a giant panda embryo.

2003	The human genome was sequenced.
2004	UN Food and Agriculture Organisation endorsed biotech crops, and stated biotechnology as a complementary tool for traditional farming methods. FDA approved Avastin (the first anti-angiogenic drug for cancer).
2005	The Energy Policy Act was passed and signed into law, authorising numerous incentives for bioethanol development.
2006	FDA approved Gardasil recombinant vaccine, which is the first vaccine developed against Human Papillomavirus (HPV) that causes an infection implicated in cervical and throat cancers, and the first preventative cancer vaccine.
2007	USDA granted Dow AgroSciences, the first regulatory approval for a plant-made vaccine.
2008	
2009	FDA approved the H5N1 vaccine (the first vaccine approved for avian flu). Global biotech crop acreage reached 330 million acres. FDA approved the first genetically engineered animal for production of a recombinant form of human anti-thrombin.

1.1.3. Applications of Biotechnology in Pharmaceutical Sciences

The pharmaceutical applications of biotechnology are:

- 1) **Medicine:** Modern biotechnology finds promising applications in medicine as in:
 - i) **Drug Production:** Most of the traditional pharmaceutical drugs used for treating the symptoms of a disease are simpler molecules found through trials and errors. Small molecules are manufactured chemically, but the larger ones are created by human cells, bacterial cells, yeast cells, and animal or plant cells. Modern biotechnology involves the use of genetically altered microorganisms (e.g., *E. coli* or yeast) for producing insulin or antibiotics via synthetic means. Modern biotechnology can also be used for producing plant-made pharmaceuticals. Biotechnology is also used in the development of molecular diagnostic devices used to define the target patient population for a given biopharmaceutical. **For example,** herceptin was the first drug to be used with a matching diagnostic test for treating breast cancer in women whose cancer cells expressed HER₂ protein.
 - ii) **Pharmacogenomics:** It is the study of how the genetic inheritance of an individual affects his/her body's response to drugs. The term **pharmacogenomics** was derived from the words **pharmacology** and **genomics**, thus it involves studying the relationship between pharmaceuticals and genetics. Pharmacogenomics aims to design and produce drugs adapted to each individual's genetic makeup.
 - iii) **Gene Therapy :** It is used for the treatment of genetic and acquired diseases like cancer and AIDS. Gene therapy utilises normal genes for supplementing or replacing the defective genes or for strengthening immunity. This therapy targets either the somatic cells (i.e., body) or the gametes (i.e., egg and sperm). In **somatic gene therapy**, the recipient's

genome is altered; however, this alteration is not passed on to the next generation. On the other hand, in **germline gene therapy**, the egg and sperm cells of the parents are altered to be passed on to their offspring.

iv) **Genetic Testing:** This involves direct examination of the DNA, and is used for:

- a) Carrier screening, or identifying unaffected individuals who carry one copy of a gene for a disease that requires two copies for the disease to manifest,
- b) Confirming the diagnosis of symptomatic individuals,
- c) Determining sex,
- d) Forensic/identity testing,
- e) New-born screening,
- f) Prenatal diagnostic screening,
- g) Pre-symptomatic testing for determining the risk of developing adult-onset cancers, and
- h) Pre-symptomatic testing for predicting adult-onset disorders.

2) **Cloning:** In this method, nucleus from one cell is removed and is transferred to an unfertilised egg cell whose nucleus has either been deactivated or removed. Cloning can be done in the following **two ways**:

- i) **Reproductive Cloning:** In this method, the egg cell after a few divisions is transferred to a uterus for its development into a foetus that is genetically identical to the donor of the original nucleus.
- ii) **Therapeutic Cloning:** In this method, the egg is placed in a petridish for its development into embryonic stem cells that are potential for treating several ailments.

3) **Agriculture:** Biotechnology in agricultural field is used for the following purposes:

- i) **Crop Yield:** For increasing the crop yield, one or two genes are transferred to a highly developed crop variety for imparting a new character. The current techniques of genetic engineering are best for the effects controlled by a single gene. Some genetic characteristics related to yield (e.g., enhanced growth) can be controlled by various genes, each posing a nominal effect on the yield.
- ii) **Reduced Vulnerability of Crops to Environmental Stresses:** Such crops which can be made resistant to biotic and abiotic stresses can be developed with the help of genes; **for example**, drought and salty soil are the two limiting factors in crop productivity.
- iii) **Increased Nutritional Qualities:** The nutritional value of proteins contained in foods can be enhanced; **for example**, proteins in legumes and cereals can be transformed such that they also provide amino acids required in the balanced diet of humans.
- iv) **Reduced Dependence on Fertilisers:** Modern biotechnology can also be used to reduce the dependence of farmers on agrochemicals; **for example**, *Bacillus thuringiensis* (Bt) is a soil bacterium that produces a protein having insecticidal properties. Conventionally, these bacteria

were used to produce an insecticidal spray by a fermentation process. In this form, the Bt toxin occurs as an inactive protoxin, which becomes effective when digested by an insect. There are several Bt toxins and each has a specificity for some target insects.

- v) **Production of Novel Substances in Crop Plants:** Biotechnology is also applied for novel uses apart from food; **for example**, oilseed is genetically modified to produce fatty acids for detergents, substitute fuels, and petrochemicals. Potatoes, tomatoes, rice tobacco, lettuce, safflowers, and other plants are genetically engineered to produce insulin and certain vaccines.
- 4) **Biological Engineering :** It is a branch of engineering that involves biotechnologies and biological science. It includes different disciplines such as biochemical engineering, biomedical engineering, bio-process engineering, biosystem engineering, etc.

1.2. ENZYME BIOTECHNOLOGY

1.2.1. Introduction

Enzymes are non-toxic and biodegradable biocatalysts synthesised by the living cells. They are complex protein molecules that bring about chemical reactions associated with life. Enzymes function, i.e., they bring about catalysis even when separated from the cells. They can also be produced by microorganisms to be used in industries. Enzyme technology involves production, isolation, purification and use of soluble or immobilised form of enzymes for benefiting humankind. Recombinant DNA technology and protein engineering involved in the production of more efficient and useful enzymes are also a part of enzyme technology.

1.2.2. Enzyme Immobilization

Enzyme immobilisation is a technique of restraining the enzymes in or on an inert support for their stability and functional reuse. The immobilisation matrix or the support allows exchange with the bulk phase in which the substrate, effect or inhibitor molecules are dispersed, but remains separated from it. With the use of enzyme immobilisation, enzymes are made more efficient and cost-effective to be used industrially.

Advantages

- 1) Enzymes are used repeatedly only if they can be completely recovered from the accomplished reaction mixtures. Thus, immobilisation allows the repeated usage of enzymes as such enzyme preparations can be separated from the reaction system involved.
- 2) The final desired product should be from the enzyme. It goes a long way in affecting reduction and saving upon the cost of downstream processing of the end-product.
- 3) Non-aqueous systems (that utilise organic solvents) and the immobilised enzymes are compatible, and this is extremely desirable in some typical and specific cases.

- 4) Immobilised enzymes can be used in most continuous production systems, which is not possible with free enzymes.
- 5) Some immobilised enzymes exhibit thermostability of the highest order; **for example**, glucose isomerase (free enzyme) denatures at 45°C temperature in solution; however, on immobilisation it remains stable for a year even at 65°C temperature.
- 6) The ultimate recovery of immobilised enzyme reduces the high effluent disposable problems (acute in several fermentation industries).
- 7) Immobilised enzymes can be used at a much higher concentration range than the corresponding free enzyme.

Disadvantages

- 1) There is a possibility of the loss of biological activity of an enzyme during immobilisation or while in use.
- 2) It is an expensive technique as it requires sophisticated equipment.
- 3) Immobilisation of enzymes affects the stability and/or activity. Such conditions can be avoided by strictly following the developed immobilisation protocols.
- 4) If one of the substrates is insoluble, the immobilised enzymes are not considered fit for practical utilisation.
- 5) Some immobilisation protocols give rise to problems related to the diffusion of the resultant substrate to have an access to the corresponding enzyme.

1.2.3. Methods of Enzyme Immobilization

Enzymes can be immobilised by the following four different methods depending on the physical relationship of the catalyst being used with the carrier matrix:

- 1) Adsorption method,
- 2) Covalent bonding,
- 3) Entrapment, and
- 4) Encapsulation.

1.2.3.1. Adsorption Method

Adsorption of an enzyme is brought about by allowing the enzyme to come in contact with a polymer support. The enzyme molecules adhere to the surface of the carrier matrix with the help of hydrophobic bonds and by forming several salt-linkages per enzyme molecule. Various specific and non-specific forces, like hydrophobic bonds, electrostatic interactions, or affinity bondage to some specific ligands attached to the carrier matrix, involve in the adsorption method.

Examples of some enzymes that have been immobilised by adsorption on different carrier matrices are given below:

Enzymes	Carrier Matrices
α -Amylase	Calcium phosphate
Amyloglucosidase	Agarose gel; DEAE-Sephadex
Catalase	Activated charcoal
Glucose oxidase	Cellophane (followed cross-linking with glutaraldehyde, inorganic adsorbents)
Invertase	Activated charcoal; DEAE-Sephadex
Subtilisin	Cellulose

Methods for Immobilisation by Adsorption

The adsorptive immobilisation of enzymes (**figure 1.1**) can be carried out by the following ways:

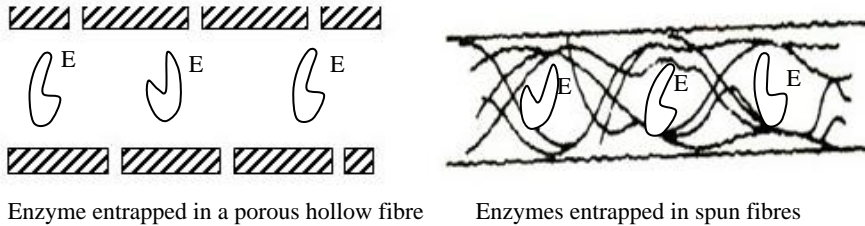


Figure 1.1: Representation of Immobilisation of Enzymes by Adsorption Methods

- 1) **Static Pores:** This is the most efficient technique, but is time consuming. In this process, the enzyme is immobilised on the carrier by bringing the enzyme containing solution in contact with the carrier without agitation or stirring.
- 2) **Dynamic Pores:** This technique is frequently used in the laboratories. In this process, the enzyme solution is admixed with the carrier with constant agitation or stirring with a mechanical shaker. The process is effective and results in uniform and high loading provided an adequate concentration of enzymes is used.
- 3) **Reactor Loading:** This technique is used for producing immobilised enzymes. In this process, the carrier is placed into the reactor and enzyme solution is transferred to the reactor loaded with carrier. Immobilisation is accomplished via dynamic environment by either circulating the enzyme or by agitating the enzyme-carrier solution.
- 4) **Electro-Deposition:** In this process, the carrier is placed in proximal vicinity of one of the electrodes in an enzyme bath and then electric current is passed. As a result, the enzyme molecules migrate towards the carrier and deposit on its surface. The carrier system used for immobilisation by electro-deposition process should be stable in an electric field.

1.2.3.2. Covalent Bonding

In this method, the enzyme molecules adhere to the carrier matrix by forming covalent bonds (**figure 1.2**), which forms with the side chains of amino acids present in the enzyme; however, their actual strength of reactivity is entirely related to the status of 'charge' present in them as given below:

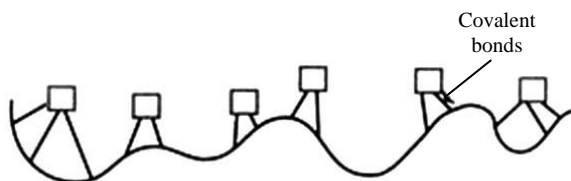
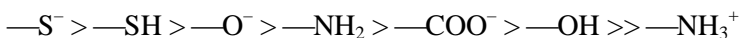


Figure 1.2: Representation of Immobilisation of Enzymes by Covalent Binding

The following common methods of covalent binding are in use:

- 1) **Cyanogen Bromide (CNBr) Activation:** In this method, the inert support materials (e.g., cellulose, sepharose, and sephadex) containing glycol groups are activated by CNBr, which then binds to the enzymes and immobilises them (**figure 1.3A**).
- 2) **Diazotation:** In this method, the support materials (e.g., amino benzyl cellulose, amino derivatives of polystyrene, and aminosilanised porous glass) are diazotised with NaNO_2 and HCl , which then covalently bind to tyrosyl or histidyl groups of enzymes (**figure 1.3B**).

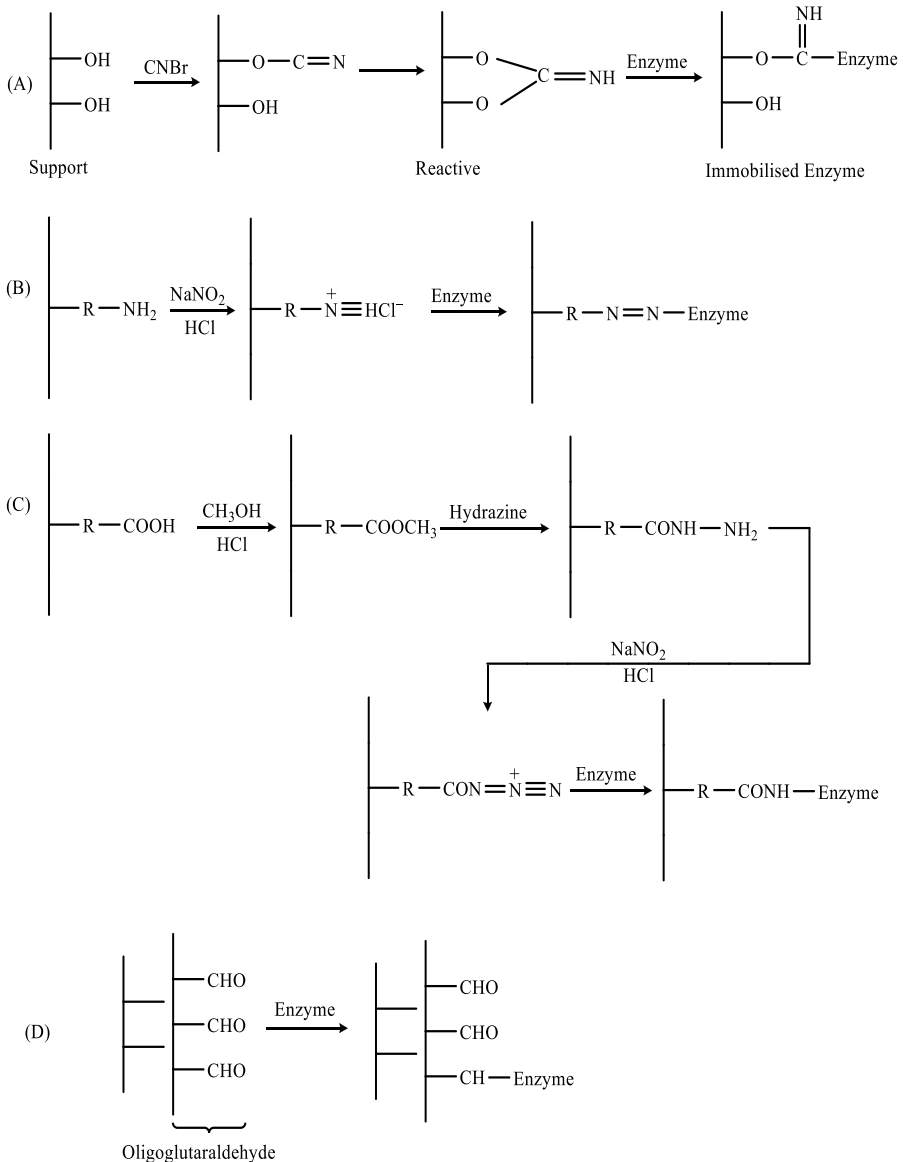


Figure 1.3: Immobilisation of Enzymes by Covalent Binding (A) Cyanogen Bromide Activation, (B) Diazotation, (C) Peptide Bond Formation, (D) Activation by Bifunctional Agent

- 3) **Peptide Bond Formation:** In this method, peptide bonds are formed between the amino (or carboxyl) groups of the support materials and the carboxyl (or amino) groups of the enzymes (**figure 1.3C**). The support material is previously treated chemically to form active functional groups.
- 4) **Activation by Bi- or Poly-Functional Reagents:** In this method, the reagent (**e.g.,** glutaraldehyde) is used to form bonds between the amino groups of enzymes and amino groups of support materials (**e.g.,** aminoethylcellulose, albumin, and amino alkylated porous glass) (**figure 1.3D**).

Some enzymes immobilised by covalent bonding using typical carrier matrix and binding reaction are summarised in **table 1.2**:

Table 1.2: Enzymes Immobilised by Covalent Bonding

Enzymes	Carrier Matrix Used	Binding Reaction Involved
α-Amylase	DEAE-cellulose*	Direct coupling
Amyloglucosidase	—do—	Cyanuric chloride
Cellulase	Polyurethane	Isocyanate
Glucose isomerase	—do—	—do—
Glucose oxidase	Porous glass	Isothiocyanate
Pectinase	Polyurethane	Isocyanate
Pronase	CM-Sephadex	Carbodiimide activation

*Cellulose-2-(Diethylamino) ethyl ether.

1.2.3.3. Cross-Linking

In this method of enzyme immobilisation, a solid support is not required; instead cross-links are formed between the enzyme molecules. Poly -functional reagents (**e.g.,** glutaraldehyde, diazobenzidine, hexamethylene diisocyanate, and toluene di-isothiocyanate) are used which react with the enzyme molecules and form bridges that act as a backbone to support the enzyme molecules (**figure 1.4**).

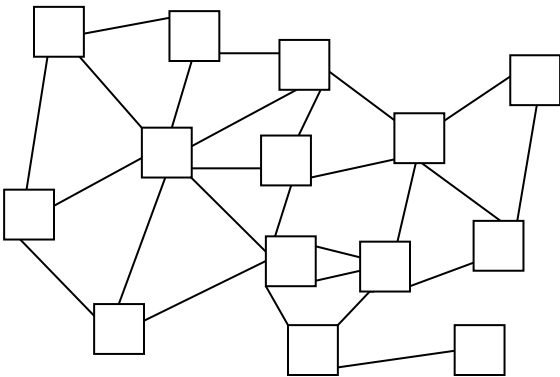


Figure 1.4: Representation of Immobilisation of Enzymes by Cross-Linking

Glutaraldehyde, the most **commonly used cross -linking reagent** , forms a Schiff’s base by reacting with the lysyl residues of the enzymes. Irreversible cross-links are formed between the enzyme molecules and glutaraldehyde, and

these cross-links can withstand extreme pH and temperature. Glutaraldehyde cross-linking has been used for immobilising some industrial enzymes, e.g., glucose isomerase and penicillin amidase.

The cross-linking method is simple and cost-effective; but the enzyme may get denaturated by the poly-functional reagent.

1.2.3.4. Entrapment

Entrapment is a phenomenon in which the enzyme molecules are held or entrapped within appropriate fibres or gels. This entrapment, however, may or may not be the result of covalent bonding existing between the enzyme entities (molecules) and the carrier matrix. In this method of enzyme immobilisation, the enzyme molecules are either held or entrapped within fibres or gels. The following methods are used for entrapment:

- 1) **Three-Dimensional Gels:** In this method, a large number of stable, three-dimensional gels are formed under mild conditions so that the enzymes get entrapped without losing their activity. Hydrogels are used extensively as they provide maximum stabilisation to the active structure and get easily wetted allowing free access of the substrate (figure 1.5).

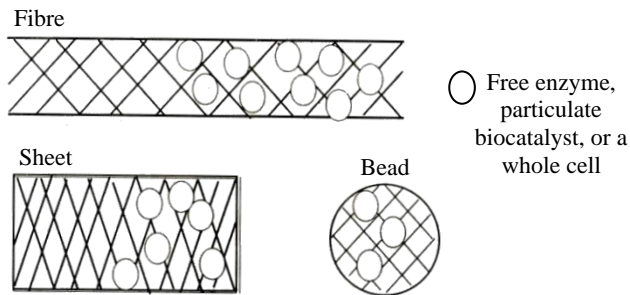


Figure 1.5: Entrapment of Enzymes in a Three-Dimensional Porous Matrix

- 2) **In Situ Polymerisation:** In this method, pre-polymeric weak ionic or adsorptive interactions occur with the enzymes. Therefore, the entrapped enzymes should be rapidly washed to remove the unreacted chemicals and other reagents. In the method of *in situ* polymerisation, the enzyme is suspended or dissolved in an aqueous buffer containing acrylamide and a bis-acrylate as a cross-linker. The vinyl polymerisation of these two monomers within the solution is initiated by generating free radicals either by incorporating a redox couple or by energetic electromagnetic radiation (such as light or γ -rays).

Cross-linked polymers of acrylamide are extensively used as a medium for chromatography and electrophoresis. The hydrophilic nature of gel, its high water regain capacity, high porosity, and low level of absorptivity for biochemicals, make it useful as a carrier for immobilising enzyme, and also in separation techniques. Other acrylates based on methacrylate monomers like Hydroxy Ethylmethacrylate (HEMA), bifunctional acrylates like PEG-dimethacrylates can also be used as gel-forming polymeric matrices.

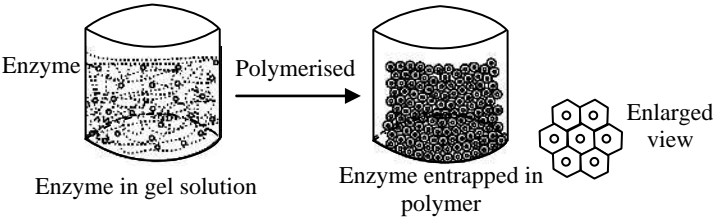


Figure 1.6: Entrapped Enzyme Inside a Polymerised Gel

- 3) **Polycondensation:** Polymerisation of bis -isocyanates with polyalcohols or polyamines to give urethanes and the cross -linking of inactive proteins with bifunctional glutaraldehyde are the common **examples** of polycondensation reactions. *Streptomyces rimosus* cells are immobilised in urethane pre -polymers and used for oxyt etracycline production. Bifunctional aldehyde like glutaraldehyde reacts with the amine groups of proteins to form a cross -linked structure. Aqueous solution of gelatin - containing urease can be entrapped by dipping dried film into glutaraldehyde to fix -up the matrix.
- 4) **Immobilisation of Enzymes in Gelatin:** The protein nature of gelatin, its high hydrophilicity, and strong swelling power make it suitable for immobilising cells and enzymes. In this method, the cells are immobilised by suspending them in deionised water and dispersing in 10% w/v aqueous gelatin solution at 35 -40°C temperature to give final cells to gelatin concentration ratio of 0.1% w/w. The so formed cell -gelatin suspension is mixed with hardening agents (**e.g.,** mixture of 20% w/v formaldehyde in 50% v/v alcohol) and immediately poured into cylindrical moulds (0.3cm), which are then allowed to gel in deep freeze (at -25°C). After 4 hours, the moulds are kept at room temperature and cut into thin discs (0.2 -0.4cm), which can be stored for months under refrigerated conditions without the loss of enzyme activity (**e.g.,** yeast cell invertase).

The enzyme can be immobilised using gelatin in the same manner as the cells, except that the gelatin and hardening agents are mixed first, and immediately added with defined volume of enzyme solution. This is advantageous as the exposure of enzyme to formaldehyde is reduced, and the active preparation can be obtained with no loss of enzyme activity.

For example, penicillin acylase is a fibre -entrapped enzyme that was immobilised by entrapment in the microcavities of the synthetic fibres.

Polymer Entrapment

Enzyme Immobilisation via Polymer Entrapment

Liposome Entrapment

Enzyme Immobilisation via Liposome Entrapment

Enzyme	
Phospholipid	
Polymer matrix	

1.2.3.5. Encapsulation

Encapsulation (or **microencapsulation** or **membrane confinement**) is a versatile and effective method of enzyme immobilisation by entrapping. In this method, the enzyme molecules are regularly taken up in an aqueous medium and strategically confined in a semi-permeable membrane, which allows an absolute free movement of the enzymes.

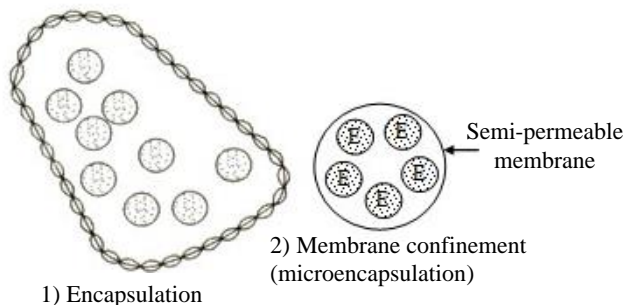


Figure 1.7: Enzyme Immobilisation by 1) Encapsulation and 2) Membrane Confinement (or Microencapsulation)

Encapsulation can be done by the following **methods**:

- 1) **Membrane Reactors:** Reverse osmosis and ultra-filtration can be operated on immobilised enzyme or cell reactors; however, the size of substrate molecules which must pass through the membrane is a limiting factor. The enzyme is retained behind the membrane, the substrate is introduced in the enclosed compartment, and the reaction products pass out as permeate or filtrate. It is certain that in membrane techniques the concentration of solutes results in flux of solvent and small solutes through the membrane and formation of larger solutes on the inner face as a polarisation layer.
- 2) **Microcapsules:** In liquid membrane system (a biphasic system), an organic intermediate phase acts as a barrier to the diffusion of enzyme molecules, thereby keeping them immobilised in the inner phase. For substrate transportation, a specific carrier system can be used to facilitate an effective enzyme substrate interaction. Emulsions are stabilised permanently by hardening a polymer membrane at the interface, thus producing a microcapsule entrapping the enzyme droplet. This simplifies the transfer of these membranous capsules to a fresh, non-emulsified solution.
- 3) **Dehydrated-Rehydrated Vesicles (DRVs):** Gregoriadis *et al* suggested the encapsulated incorporation of proteins and enzymes in liposomal vesicles (dehydration-hydration vesicles). This method involves the formation of lipid vesicles in which hydration fluid contains protein or enzyme to be incorporated. The total content of the hydration stage is frozen and rehydrated using Plain Phosphate Saline (PBS) buffer.

The transformation stages involved in the form of rehydrated-dehydrated vesicles produce uni- or oligo-lamellar liposomes that can entrap up to 70% of therapeutic proteins and DNase. This entrapment can be improved by increasing the concentration of sodium or potassium chloride; but accidental

or intentional introduction of sugar or carbohydrates decreases the entrapment of macromolecular bioproteins. This happens due to cryoprotection caused by sugars; this process prevents the membrane rupture, thus, the vesicles undergo fusion during the dehydration phase. Fusion is essential for effective performance of this method during freeze drying.

4) **Reverse Phase Evaporation Method (REV)s** : Szoka and Papahadjopolous gave this method in which bioproteins (including enzymes) can be incorporated into liposomes . The method is based on the formation of w/o emulsion which was considered to be the reverse of o/w emulsion involving the evaporation of solvent from the emulsion. The water phase of the system contains the bioproteins to be incorporated.

On removal of solvent, droplets are formed which when subjected to sonication makes the emulsion dry to a semi -solid form in a rotary evaporation under reduced pressure . At this stage, the monolayers of phospholipids surrounding discrete water compartments are closely attached. In the second stage, vigorous mechanical shaking is applied and thus the water droplets collapse. These collapsed vesicles contribute their monolayers resulting into larger intact vesicles. The aqueous content of the droplets is the medium in which the newly formed liposomes are suspended.

Table: 1.3 Comparison of Characteristic Features of Immobilisation Techniques

S. No.	Characteristic Features	Immobilisation Techniques			
		Adsorption	Covalent Bonding	Entrapment	Encapsulation
1.	Matrices	Clays, glasses, ion-exchange matrices	Acrylamide, cellulose, sepharse	Acrylamide, cellulose acetate etc.	Semipermeable membranes via., hollow fibres, liposomes etc.
2.	Preparation	Simple	Difficult	Difficult	Simple
3.	Immobilisation mechanism	Hydrophobic effects; salt links, etc.	Covalent bonds	Trapping in gel or fibre	Confinement in semipermeable membrane.
4.	Binding force	Variable	Strong	Weak	Strong
5.	Enzyme loading	High (Ca. 1g/g matrix)	Low (Ca. 0.2g/g matrix)	—	—
6.	Enzyme leakage during usage	Yes	No	Yes	No
7.	Applicability	Wide	Selective	Wide	Very wide
8.	Problems encountered during operation	High	Low	High	
9.	Matrix influences on enzyme	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
10.	Diffusional barriers to substrate and product molecules	Absent	Absent	Significantly large	Significantly large
11.	Protection from microbial attack	No	No	Yes	Yes
12.	Cost factor	Low	High	Moderate	High

1.2.4. Applications of Enzyme Immobilization in Pharmacy

Immobilised enzymes are used in pharmaceutical industries for manufacturing drugs. These enzymes can be used for:

- 1) Production of antibiotics,
- 2) Production of steroids,
- 3) Production of amino acids,
- 4) Production of acids,
- 5) Production of other organic compounds, and
- 6) Analytical applications.

1.2.4.1. Production of Antibiotics

Immobilised enzymes are used for producing 6-aminopenicillanic acid, penicillins, cephalosporins, etc. on a commercial scale. This process is performed in a column, stirred tank, or a batch membrane reactor.

1) Penicillins

- i) **6-Aminopenicillanic Acid (6-APA):** It is manufactured on a large -scale from penicillin G (benzyl penicillin) or penicillin V (phenoxymethyl penicillin) through deacylation with penicillin amidase. To produce semi-synthetic penicillins, 6-APA acts as a significant intermediate. Fermentation process is required for producing these antibiotics. Conventional processes utilising soluble enzymes has been replaced by the processes utilising immobilised enzymes.
- ii) **Penicillin G:** It is manufactured on a large -scale from glucose using conidia, mycelium, and protoplasts of *Penicillium chrysogenum* immobilised with K-carrageenan, polyacrylamide, and calcium alginate.

A continuous flow bioreactor (of 150ml capacity) is used for this process. Conidia of *P. chrysogenum* immobilised with K-carrageenan remains useful for 16 days. A yield of 1.2mg/gm, cells/hour from glucose (7.0mg/gm glucose) is obtained.

iii) Ampicillin and Amoxicillin

- a) These two antibiotics can be manufactured with a yield of 50% from 6-APA and D-phenylglycine methyl ester, respectively by continuous flow reaction. In this reaction, cellulose triacetate fibre immobilised with penicillin amidase (obtained from *E. coli*) is used.
 - b) Ampicillin can be obtained with a yield of 67% in a stirred batch reactor by using DEAEsephadex immobilised with succinylated penicillin amidase.
- 2) **Cephalosporins:** These can be obtained by fermentation using *Cephalosporium acremonium*. Various methods are used to immobilise cephalosporin amidase (obtained from various microorganisms). Various cephalosporin derivatives are produced by using the immobilised enzyme systems. Enzymatic deacylation of cephalosporin is done using compounds with 7-ADCA nucleus. The commonly used reaction substrates are 7-phenylacetamidodesacetoxycephalosporanic acid (phenylacetyl) and 7-phenoxycetamidodesacetoxycephalosporinic acid (phenoxyacetyl-7-ADCA) obtained through ring expansion reaction involving penicillin G and penicillin V.

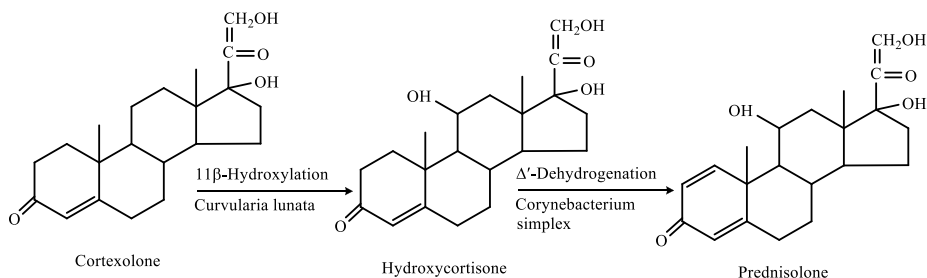
Celite or alumina immobilised with an enzyme obtained from *Bacillus megaterium* is useful in the acylation of 7-ACA or 7-ADCA. Cephaloglycine and cephalothin rich in trade are synthesised from 7-ACA and D-phenylglycine methyl ester or 2-thiophene acetic acid by passing the substrate solution continuously through the immobilised enzyme column.

- 3) **Cephalexin:** Cellulose triacetate fibres immobilised with an enzyme obtained from *E. coli* are used for manufacturing cephalexin from 7-ADCA and D-phenylglycine methyl ester. At 25°C temperature, 75% of the 7-ADCA transforms into cephalexin, in an hour. Immobilised whole cells of *Achromobacter sp.* dried using acetone and adsorbed on DEAE-cellulose or hydroxylapatite can also be used for producing cephalexin.
- 3) **C-Bacitracin:** Polyacrylamide gel lattice immobilised with enzyme obtained from the cells of *Bacillus sp.*, are useful in batch and continuous culture systems.
- 4) **D-Tylosin and Nikkomycin:** The living cells of *Streptomycin spp.* and *S. tendae* immobilised with calcium alginate are used for producing tylosin (macrolide antibiotic) and nikkomycin (nucleoside peptide antibiotic). Air bubbled reactor is used for continuous production.

1.2.4.2. Production of Steroids

Biocatalytic conversions are used in steroid transformations. Enzymes utilised for steroid transformations need cofactors. Whole cells of microorganisms with cofactors are immobilised to be used for large-scale steroid transformations.

Method 1: Hydrocortisone and prednisolone can be synthesised from cortisone achieved by immobilising the enzyme by entrapment with polyacrylamide.



Whole cells of *Corynebacterium simplex* are used for Δ^1 -dehydration reaction; and for 11 β -hydroxylation reaction, mycelia of *Curvularia lunata* are used. Prednisolone from cortisone can be produced by combining these immobilised systems.

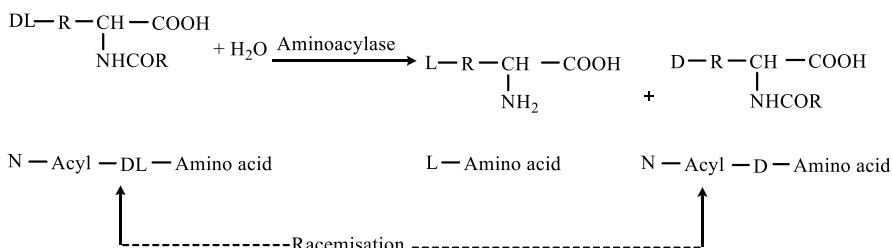
Method 2: To obtain prednisolone from hydrocortisone, whole cells of *C. simplex* entrapped in collagen membrane are employed. For continuous operation, chips of collagen cell complex packed in column are used.

Method 3: By combining *C. lunata* mycelia and immobilised *Arthrobacter simplex* cells the two step transformation (i.e., cortisone to its Δ^1 -dehydro-11-hydroxy derivative) can be carried out.

1.2.4.3. Production of Amino Acids

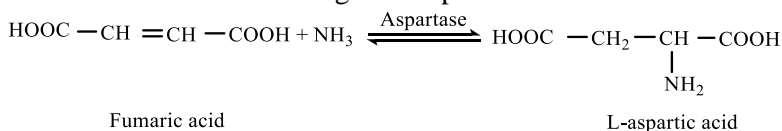
Pharmaceutical industries employ amino acids for various purposes. There are several existing large -scale processes employing immobilised enzymes. Production of amino acids by enzymatic resolution involving amino acid acylase and fructose syrups obtained from glucose isomerase is an **example**.

- 1) **Optical Resolution of DL -Amino Acids:** L-amino acid and unhydrolysed acyl-D-amino acid is produced by the asymmetric hydrolysis of acyl -DL- amino acid using aminoacylase. Both the products are separated through solubilisation. Unhydrolysed acyl-D-amino acid is further racemised to be reused in the resolution procedure.



Immobilised aminoacylase obtained from *Aspergillus oryzae* is employed in continuous optical resolution of DL -amino acids. Amino acylase can be immobilised by ionic binding to DEAEsephadex (commonly used in industrial process), covalent binding to lidoacetyl cellulose, and entrapment in polyacrylamide gel. Acetyl-DL-amino acid solution is continuously fed in the enzyme column through a filter and heat exchanger. The enzyme reaction takes place while moving through the column. During the reaction, concentrated effluent crystallises out the L-amino acid. The acyl-d-amino acid present in the mother liquor is racemised by heating and used for optical resolution.

- 2) **Optically Active Amino Acids – L-Aspartic Acid:** L-aspartic acid is industrially synthesised by fermentation or enzymatic batch process using fumaric acid and ammonia along with aspartase.



Whole cells of *E. coli* immobilised with K -carrageenan are treated with glutaraldehyde and hexamethylenediamine. These immobilised cells with highest productivity are packed into column and have a half -life period of 680 days at 37°C temperature.

1.2.4.4. Production of Acids

Immobilised enzymes yield better productivity of organic acids. There are many processes available for the production of acetic acid by *Acetobacter aceti* immobilised with porous ceramics, of citric acid by *A. niger* immobilised with calcium alginate, of lactic acid by *L. casei* immobilised with polyacrylamide, of L-malic acid by *Bravibacterium flavum* immobilised with carrageenan, of 12 -ketochoodeoxycholic acid by *B. fuscum* immobilised with carrageenan, of 2 -ketogluconic acid by *Serratia marcescens* immobilised with collagen, etc.

1.2.4.5. Other Organic Compounds

Other organic compounds that can be produced by immobilised enzymes are:

- 1) **Coenzyme A:** It can be produced continuously from pantothenic acid, L - cysteine, and ATP using *Bravibacterium ammoniagenes* cells immobilised on polyacrylamide gel.
- 2) **Flavin Adenine Dinucleotide (FAD):** It can be produced from flavin-mono-nucleotides and ATP using whole cells of *Arthrobacter oxydans* immobilised on a film of polyvinyl alcohol cross -linked with tetraethylsilicate. The FAD pyrophosphorylase activity is high in these cells.
- 3) **Pyridoxol 5'-Phosphate:** It can be produced from pyridoxine 5'-phosphate using whole cells of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* immobilised on a film of polyvinyl alcohol cross-linked with tetraethylsilicate. Pyridoxol 5'-phosphate has a high enzyme activity.
- 4) **Adenine Arabinoside:** The cells of *Enterobacter aerogenes* bear transglycosylation activity. These cells are immobilised with hydrophilic photocrosslinkable resin, and used to produce adenine arabinoside from uracil arabinoside and adenine in a proper water-organic solvent system.
- 5) **Vitamin B₁₂:** It can be produced using cells of *Propionibacterium* sp. immobilised.
- 6) **Dihydroxy Acetone:** It is a pharmaceutical intermediate, and can be produced through glycerol oxidation with cells of *Acetobacter xylinum* immobilised on polyacrylamide gel.
- 7) **Proinsulin:** The plasmids of *Bacillus subtilis* cells having gene encoding for proinsulin can be immobilised on agarose beads. These immobilised cells can then be used for proinsulin production in a small continuous stirred tank reactor.
- 8) **Interleukin-2 and Monoclonal Antibodies:** These can be produced using animal cells (lymphoblastoid MLA 144 cells and hybridoma cells) immobilised on agarose beads.
- 9) **Prostaglandin:** It can be produced from arachidonic acids by using ram seminal microsomes immobilised on photocrosslinkable resin.
- 10) **Ajmalicine Isomers:** These can be produced from tryptamine using cells of the plant, *Catharanthus roseus* immobilised with calcium alginate.
- 11) **Anthraquinones:** These can be produced by De novo synthesis from secologanin using cells of the plant, *Morinda citrifolia* immobilised with calcium alginate.

1.2.4.6. Analytical Applications

Given below are the analytical applications of immobilised enzymes:

- 1) **Enzyme Electrodes:** These are probes which can generate an electrical potential when a reaction catalysed by an immobilised enzyme (fixed on or around the probe) occurs. In automated analysis, immobilised enzymes are used for replacing the soluble enzyme in an existing automatic analysis system.

- 2) **Affinity Chromatography and Purification:** Immobilised enzymes are also used in affinity chromatography. The species having a high affinity for the material to be removed from solution allows the purification or analysis of enzyme inhibitors, cofactors, antigens, antibodies, and other substances.
- 3) **Biosensors:** These are devices, probes, or electrodes having immobilised enzyme which on contact with a sample converts the presence of the desired analyte into physical, chemical or electrical signals which are measured. The sample concentration is measured in the form of electrical signals, or with a biological recognition system combined with an electrochemical transducer. Biosensors respond reversibly and specifically to the variation in the concentration of biochemical event of great practical utility.

1.2.5. Production of Enzymes

The production and use of enzymes is a major part in biotechnology. Various fields like microbiology, chemistry, process engineering, and biochemistry have contributed extensively in the growth of enzyme technology. Microbial enzymes are in use since many centuries even if complete information on them was not known. In 1896, in US, **taka-diastase** (a fungal amylase) was produced; this was the **first industrially produced enzyme**, and was used as a pharmaceutical agent for the treatment of disorders related to digestion.

1.2.5.1. Use of Microbes in Industry

Enzymes can be produced commercially making use of various microbes, which are the most significant and convenient sources. Rich quantities of enzymes can be produced under suitable growth conditions using the microorganisms. They can be produced using inexpensive media within a short time period. It is also easy to manipulate the microorganisms in genetic engineering techniques so that the production of desired enzymes can be increased. The processes of recovery, isolation, and purification are easy with microbial enzymes in comparison to that with enzymes obtained from animals and plants.

Most of the enzymes used industrially are obtained from microbes. A large number of fungi, bacteria, and yeasts are used for this purpose. **For example,** *Aspergillus niger* (a fungus) is an organism used extensively for the production of bulk enzymes. There are around 40 commercial enzymes suitably produced by *A. niger*, like α -amylase, cellulase, protease, lipase, pectinase, phytase, catalase, and insulinase.

Table 1.4 enlists some of the enzymes obtained from microbial sources, along with their applications:

Table 1.4: List of Industrially (Microbially) Produced Enzymes, Their Sources and Applications

Enzymes	Sources	Applications
α-Amylase	<i>Aspergillus oryzae</i> <i>Aspergillus niger</i> <i>Bacillus subtilis</i> <i>Bacillus licheniformis</i>	Production of beer and alcohol. Preparation of glucose syrups. As a digestive aid. Removal of starch sizes.

Amyloglucosidase	<i>Aspergillus niger</i> <i>Rhizopus niveus</i>	Hydrolysis of starch.
Cellulase	<i>Aspergillus niger</i> <i>Trichoderma koningi</i>	Production of a lcohol and glucose.
Glucoamylase	<i>Aspergillus niger</i> <i>Bacillus amyloliquefaciens</i>	Production of beer and alcohol. Hydrolysis of starch.
Glucose Isomerase	<i>Arthrobacter</i> sp. <i>Bacillus</i> sp.	Manufacture of high fructose syrups.
Glucose Oxidase	<i>Aspergillus niger</i>	Antioxidant in prepared foods.
Invertase	<i>Saccharomyces cerevisiae</i>	Inversion of sucrose. Preparation of artificia l honey, confectionaries.
Keratinase	<i>Streptomyces fradiae</i>	Removal of hair from hides.
Lactase	<i>Kluyveromyces</i> sp <i>Saccharomyces fragilis</i>	Hydrolysis of lactose. Removal of lactose from whey.
Lipase	<i>Candida lipolytica</i> <i>Asperigillus niger</i>	Preparation of cheese. Production of flavour.
Pectinase	<i>Aspergillus</i> sp <i>Sclerotina libertina</i>	Clarification of fruit juices and wines. Production of alcohol and concentration of coffee.
Penicillin Acylase	<i>Escherichia coli</i>	Production of 6-aminopenicillanic acid.
Penicillanase	<i>Bacillus subtilis</i>	Removal of penicillin.
Protease, Acid	<i>Aspergillus niger</i>	As a digestive aid. As a substitute for calf rennet.
Protease, Neutral	<i>Bacillus amyloliquefaciens</i>	As a fish and meat tenderiser.
Protease, Alkaline	<i>Aspergillus oryzae</i> <i>Streptomyces griseus</i> <i>Bacillus</i> sp	As a meat tenderiser. As a detergent additive. As a beer stabiliser.
Pullulanase	<i>Klebsiella aerogenes</i>	Hydrolysis of starch.
Takadiastase	<i>Aspergillus oryzae</i>	As a supplement to bread. As a digestive aid.

1.2.5.2. General Consideration

Figure 1.8 represents the flow chart for enzyme production by microorganisms:

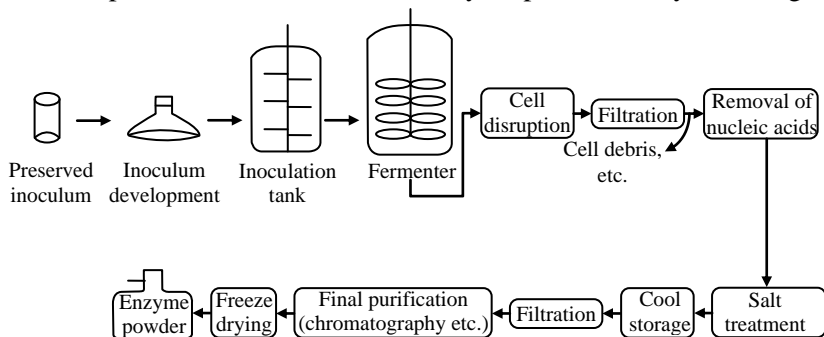


Figure 1.8: Flow Chart for the Production of Enzymes by Microorganisms

The techniques for microbial production of enzymes are comparable to the methods for manufacturing other industrial products. The salient features are discussed below:

- 1) **Selection of Organism:** Such microorganisms should be selected that can produce maximum quantities of desired enzymes within a short time period. Also, the metabolites produced by them should be minimal. After selecting the microorganism, strain improvement is done using mutagens and UV rays for optimising the enzyme production. From the selected microorganism, inoculum is prepared in a liquid medium.
- 2) **Formulation of Medium:** The selected culture medium should have all the nutrients that provide adequate support to microbial growth so that enzymes can be produced in sufficient quantities. The medium ingredients should be nutritionally safe, easily available, and of low cost. Starch hydrolysate, molasses, corn steep liquor, yeast extract, whey, soy bean meal, some cereals (wheat), and pulses (peanut) are some of the substrates used commonly for the medium. The medium pH should be optimal for adequate microbial growth and enzyme production.
- 3) **Production Process:** Industrial production of enzymes is carried out either by submerged cultured liquid or solid-substrate fermentation (to a lesser extent) technique. The former method is preferred as the yields are more and the chances of infection are less. However, the latter method was used traditionally and is still used in the production of fungal enzymes, e.g. amylases, cellulases, proteases, and pectinases.

The medium is sterilised by batch or continuous sterilisation techniques. Fermentation is started by inoculating the medium. Optimum levels of growth conditions (e.g., pH, temperature, oxygen supply, and nutrients) should be maintained. Anti-foaming agents are added to minimise froth formation.

Production of enzymes is carried out by batch fermentation process (mainly) and by continuous process (to a lesser extent). The bioreactor system should be sterile during fermentation, which is carried out for 2–7 days in most of the production processes. Apart from the desired enzymes, some other metabolites are also produced. Thus, the enzymes should be recovered and purified.

- 4) **Recovery and Purification of Enzymes:** The desired enzymes are either excreted into the culture medium (and are termed **extracellular enzymes**) or are present within the cells (and are termed **intracellular enzymes**). The commercial enzymes can be either crude or highly purified or in the solid or liquid form as per the requirement. The steps involved in recovery and purification processes depend on the enzyme nature and the desired degree of purity. An extracellular enzyme present in the broth can be recovered easily in comparison to the recovery of an intracellular enzyme. The intracellular enzymes can be released by disrupting the cell using special techniques. Microbial cells can be disrupted physically by methods like sonication, and using high pressure and glass beads. The bacterial cell walls can be lysed by

using lysozyme. Yeast cells can be lysed using β -glucanase enzyme. The most important consideration is to minimise the loss of desired enzyme activity.

1.2.5.3. Amylase

Amylase is an enzyme that breaks down the starch into sugar. It is present in human saliva, where it begins the process of chemical digestion. Amylase was the first enzyme to be discovered and isolated. All the amylases are glycoside hydrolases and act on α -1,4-glycosidic bonds. They are specifically used in the industrial starch conversion process. The **α -amylase** is obtained from plants (barley and rice), animals, or microbes. Cassava mash wastewater is also a source of α -amylase. This enzyme shows its activity in a wide range of pH and temperature. **Table 1.5** enlists the microbial sources and methods used for producing α -amylase:

**Table 1.5: Microbial Sources and the Mode of Fermentation
Used for Production**

Bacterial Sources	Methods
<i>Bacillus amyloliquefaciens</i>	SSF
<i>Bacillus licheniformis</i>	SSF
<i>Bacillus coagulans</i>	SSF
<i>Chromohalobacter</i> sp. TVSP-101	
<i>Bacillus polymyxa</i>	SSF
<i>Bacillus mesentericus</i>	SSF
<i>Bacillus vulgaris</i>	SSF
<i>Bacillus megaterium</i>	SSF
<i>Bacillus licheniformis</i> GCB-U8	SmF
<i>Bacillus</i> sp. PS-7	SSF
<i>Bacillus licheniformis</i> M27	SSF
<i>Halobacillus</i> sp. MA-2	SmF
<i>Halomonas meridiana</i>	SmF
<i>Rhodothermus marinus</i>	SmF
<i>Bacillus cereus</i> MTCC 1305	SSF
Fungal Sources	Methods
<i>Aspergillus oryzae</i>	SSF
<i>Penicillium fellutanum</i>	SmF
<i>Thermomyces lanuginosus</i>	SSF
<i>Aspergillus niger</i>	SSF, SmF
<i>Penicillium roqueforti</i>	SSF
<i>Streptomyces rimosus</i>	SSF, SmF
<i>Aspergillus kawachii</i>	SSF, SmF
<i>Penicillium chrysogenum</i>	SSF
<i>Penicillium janthinellum</i> (NCIM 4960)	SSF
<i>Aspergillus awamori</i>	SmF
<i>Pycnoporus sanguineus</i>	SSF

SSF-Solid State Fermentation
SmF-Submerged Fermentation

The **β -amylase** (or α -1,4-glycanmaltohydrolase) invariably belong to the plant origin. This enzyme can also be produced from microorganisms, e.g., *Bacillus polymyxa*, *Bacillus cereus*, *Bacillus megaterium*, *Streptomyces* sp., *Pseudomonas* sp., and *Rhizopus japonicus*.

Production of Amylase

α -Amylase can be commercially produced by submerged fermentation and solid state fermentation techniques. The former is a traditional method of enzyme production from microbes, while the latter is a new method.

Submerged Fermentation (SmF) utilises free flowing liquid substrates, such as molasses and broths. The products obtained from fermentation are secreted into the fermentation broth. Since the substrates are rapidly utilised, they need to be constantly replaced. This fermentation technique employs bacteria that require high moisture content for their growth.

SmF is used for the extraction of secondary metabolites to be used in liquid form. This method allows the utilisation of genetically modified organisms to a greater extent. The medium can be sterilised and the end products can be purified easily. The process parameters like temperature, pH, aeration, oxygen transfer, and moisture can also be easily controlled.

Solid State Fermentation (SSF) employs microbes that require less moisture content for their growth. Bran, bagasse, and paper pulp are the commonly used solid substrates. In this method, the nutrient-rich waste materials can be easily recycled and further used as substrates. The substrates are not utilised rapidly (like the SmF technique); rather they are used very slowly and steadily so that the same substrate can be used for a longer duration, and the need to constantly supply substrate is also eliminated.

Some other advantages of SSF technique over SmF technique are that it requires simpler equipments, has higher volumetric productivity, yields higher concentration of products, and generates lesser effluent. Thus, SSF is considered a promising method for commercial production of enzymes.

Importance of Amylase

- 1) It is used for the production of sweeteners in food industries, e.g., glucose syrup, high mannose sugar, high-fructose syrup, etc.
- 2) Dextrins (short-chain polymers) are produced by the hydrolysis of starch with amylase followed by maltose (disaccharide) and ultimately glucose (monosaccharide).
- 3) It has a good heat stability.
- 4) It does not undergo browning reactions.
- 5) It is used for converting glucose into fructose.
- 6) It is used commercially for the preparation of sizing agents, starch sizing pastes for use in paper coatings, for the removal of starch sizing from woven cloth, and for the liquefaction of heavy starch pastes.

Some highly significant **industrial applications** of **α -amylases** are summarised in the **table: 1.6**:

Table: 1.6 Extremely Important Industrial Applications of α -Amylases

S. No.	Name of Industry	Source		Applications
		Bacillus	Aspergillus	
1)	Alcohol [Ethanol]	+	+	Liquefaction of starch before incorporation of ‘malt’ for saccharification.
2)	Baked Products		+	Increase in the production of fermentable carbohydrates.
3)	Brewing		+	Improved fermentability of grains, and modification of beer characteristics.
		+		Barley preparation and liquefaction of additives.,
4)	Feed Products	+		Improvement in utilization of enzymatically treated barley in poultry and cattle up-bringing.
5)	Laundry and detergent	+		Enhancement in ‘cleansing power’ for soiled clothings mixed with starch and additive in ‘dishwashing detergents’.
6)	Milling		+	Supplementation of α -amylase deficient flour.
7)	Paper	+		Liquefaction of starch without sugar production for sizing of paper.
8)	Starch Products	+		Liquefaction of starch for production of glucose, fructose, and maltose.
9)	Sugar	+		Filterability improvement of cane sugar juice via cleavage of starch in juice.

1.2.5.4. Catalase

Catalase is an enzyme that catalyses the reaction by which hydrogen peroxide decomposes into water and oxygen. It is found in the organisms living in the presence of oxygen. The enzyme prevents the accumulation of peroxide (continuously produced by various metabolic reactions) and also prevents the damage of cellular organelles and tissues by peroxide. In mammals, liver is the rich source of catalase. Catalase is used in industries for various purposes. In food industries, it is used along with other enzymes for preserving foodstuffs and for manufacturing beverages and other food items. Commercial catalases are used for breaking down hydrogen peroxide in wastewater.

1.2.5.5. Peroxidase

Peroxidase is an enzyme that decomposes hydrogen peroxide by the oxidation of wide range of phenolic and non-phenolic substrates (RH). They are abundantly found in bacteria, fungi, algae, plants, and animals. Peroxidase enzyme is classified into heme and non-heme peroxidase based on the presence or absence of heme, respectively. More than 80% of known peroxidase genes can code for heme peroxidase; while the non-heme peroxidases, e.g., thiol peroxidase, alkylhydroperoxidase, and NADH peroxidase constitute only a small proportion.

Heme peroxidase enzyme is further assigned to two superfamilies:

- 1) **The Peroxidase-Cyclooxygenase Superfamily (PCOXs):** This superfamily contains animal peroxidase involved in the innate immunity, defense responses, etc. The Myeloperoxidase (MPO), Eosinophil Peroxidase (EPO), Lactoperoxidase (LPO), and Thyroid Peroxidase (TPO) belong to this family. In this superfamily, the prosthetic heme group is covalently bonded to the apoprotein.
- 2) **The Peroxidase -Catalase Superfamily (PCATs):** This is the most intensively studied superfamily of non-animal heme peroxidase.

Importance of Peroxidase

Application as Biosensor

- 1) **Horseradish Peroxidase (HRP)** has been used extensively in the development of biosensors.
- 2) HRP biosensors are made by applying various detection methods (such as amperometric immunosensor, mass balance, potentiometric methods, photovoltaic spectroscopy, optical and chemiluminescent methods, etc.).
- 3) **Potentiometric based biosensors** are developed by combining peroxidase enzyme with a transducer that can detect variations in protons.
- 4) Glucose, maltose, or lactate can be detected by peroxidase based biosensor using potentiometric methods.
- 5) **HRP-based biosensors** for antioxidant monitoring are used in the detection of superoxide radical, nitric oxide, glutathione, uric acid, and phenolic compounds.

Analytical Applications

- 1) Enzyme Linked Immunosorbent Assays (ELISA) technique is used for detecting antigens or antibodies by producing colour changes catalysed by peroxidase enzyme. In ELISA, an enzyme-linked antibody specific to the antigen is used along with a chromogenic substrate, which gives a coloured product in the presence of the enzyme; the product colour is proportional to the amount of the desired antigen/antibody. The most commonly used enzyme for linking with antibody is HRP.
- 2) This enzyme is used for screening monoclonal antibodies against dangerous mycotoxins of various fungal species like *Aspergillus*, *Penicillium* (ochratoxins), *Fusarium* (T-2 toxin, trichothecenes), etc.
- 3) Peroxidase enzyme is also used in the detection of Gonyautoxin, Chlamydia, *Fusarium* toxin, Dengue virus proteins, and Hepatitis-E virus.
- 4) **HRP-based immunoassays** are also used for the detection of undeclared milk proteins (e.g., bovine β -lactoglobulin) in foods.

Application in Analytical and Diagnostic Kits

- 1) Peroxidase is also used in the development of analytical and diagnostic kits.
- 2) **HRP** is most commonly used for analytical purposes. Other plant peroxidase having wide pH and temperature stability are also being used now.

- 3) Peroxidase enzyme can produce stable chromogenic products, thus are suitable for manufacturing various diagnostic kits based on enzyme conjugated antibody technology.
- 4) **Turnip root peroxidase** has been used in uric acid detection kits.
- 5) **Peroxidase enzyme** combined with **cholesterol oxidase** and **cholesterol esterase**, is used for developing cholesterol detection kits that aid in the quantification and monitoring of human serum cholesterol.
- 6) Peroxidase enzyme is also used in developing kits for the diagnosis of bladder and prostate cancers through the detection of 8-hydroxydeoxyguanosine and its analogues in urine.
- 7) **Lactose-containing monitoring strips** for determining hypoxia and ischemia have been developed to be used in combination with immobilised β -galactosidase, galactose oxidase, and HRP enzymes.
- 8) In biomedical sectors, peroxidase -IAA based **Gene-Directed Enzyme/Prodrug Therapy** (GDEPT) has been used for cancer treatment. This system of enzyme -prodrug is effective against hypoxic and anoxic tumour cells and also has anti-cancer potential.
- 9) **Antibody-Directed Enzyme/ Prodrug Therapy** (ADEPT), specific HRP -conjugated antibodies are also used.

1.2.5.6. Lipase

Lipase is an enzyme that breaks down dietary fats into fatty acids and glycerol. The cells in stomach produce a small amount of gastric lipase, which helps in the digestion of butter fat in food.

Lipase is extensively found in the pancreas, which produces pancreatic lipase (or steapsin) that acts in the small intestine. The bile made in the liver is released into the intestine and converts dietary fat into small fatty globules. Pancreatic lipase acts on these fat globules and converts them into fatty acids and glycerol (small, energy-dense molecules used by the cells). Fatty acids and glycerol travel in the blood and lymph vessels to reach all the body parts.

Importance of Lipase

- 1) Lipase mainly helps in the body processes and absorbs fat.
- 2) It manages triglycerides (a form of fat required for energy, thus some levels of triglycerides should be present in the body). Lipase helps in maintaining the levels of triglycerides in the body by breaking them down into smaller molecules to be used by the body for energy.
- 3) Microbial lipase is used to obtain PUFAs from animal and plant lipids (e.g., menhaden oil, tuna oil, and borage oil); and its mono and diacylglycerides are used to produce various pharmaceuticals.
- 4) PUFAs have metabolic benefits, thus are used as food additives, pharmaceuticals, and nutraceuticals.
- 5) Some of the PUFAs are required for the normal synthesis of lipid membranes and prostaglandins.

- 6) Profens is a class of NSAIDs and is synthesised as pure (s) -ibuprofen using lipase-catalysed kinetic resolution via hydrolysis and esterification. Efficient kinetic resolution processes using lipase are available for the preparation of optically active homochiral intermediates to synthesise nikkomycin-B, NSAIDs (naproxen, ibuprofen, suprofen, and ketoprox), lamivudine (anti-viral), and for the enantiospecific synthesis of alkaloids, antibiotics, vitamins, anti-arteriosclerotic, anti-tumour and anti-allergic compounds.
- 7) Novel biotechnology tools, like enzyme immobilisation, have also been applied for the isolation and incorporation of food components in ordinary foods. Many nutraceuticals have been synthesised by employing immobilised lipases, such as those from *C. Antarctica* and *Lactobacillus reuteri*.

1.2.5.7. Protease

Protease (or proteinase or proteolytic enzymes) is an enzyme which hydrolyses (i.e., breakdown) the peptide bonds [—CO—NH—] joining the array of amino acids in a protein. Thus, the protein is cleaved into amino acids (its basic building blocks). It differs in its ability to hydrolyse various peptide bonds. Each type of protease breaks a specific kind of peptide bond. Fungal protease, pepsin, trypsin, chymotrypsin, papain, bromelain, and subtilisin are some examples of protease enzyme.

Proteases are produced by various bacteria, **for example**, species belonging to *Bacillus*; *Pseudomonas*, *Clostridium*, *Proteus*, and *Serratia*; and by various fungi, such as *Aspergillus niger*, *Aspergillus oryzae*, *Aspergillus flavus*, and *Penicillium roquefortii*. However, the enzymes intimately associated with the above microorganisms are mixtures of proteinases and peptidases; and the former are excreted into the fermentation medium during the growth phenomenon, while the latter are liberated during autolysis of the cells.

Protease enzymes are classified according to the sites at which they catalyse the cleavage of proteins. The two major groups are the **exopeptidases** targeting the terminal ends of proteins and the **endopeptidases** having target sites within the proteins. Endopeptidases, **e.g.**, aspartic endopeptidases, cysteine endopeptidases, glutamic endopeptidases, metalloendopeptidases, serine endopeptidases, and threonine endopeptidases act via different catalytic mechanisms.

Importance of Protease

- 1) Protease enzymes are required in digestion as they breakdown the peptide bonds in the protein foods to release the amino acids which are utilised by the body.
- 2) They have also been used in various forms of therapy as they are beneficial in oncology, inflammatory conditions, blood rheology control, and immune regulation.
- 3) Protease can hydrolyse most of the proteins as long as they are not components of living cells.
- 4) Heavy metals (such as lead and mercury) bind to ionisable or sulfhydryl groups of proteins and exert their poisoning effect. On binding to an essential functional protein, such as an enzyme, they denature it and/or inhibit their

activity. This interaction between the heavy metals and proteins lead to degenerating diseases, nerve damage, or even death. It has been observed clinically that high intake of oral protease has decreased the heavy metal concentrations in the blood. The protease enzyme binds to α_2 -macroglobulin and forms an activated complex which alters the binding affinities and increases the clearance rate by the liver.

1.2.5.8. Penicillinase

Penicillinase is a bacterial enzyme that inactivates most of the penicillins. It is an extracellular enzyme produced by the members of the Coliform group of bacteria, by the *Bacillus* species, and some of the strains of *Staphylococcus*. The enzyme hydrolyses the penicillin into penicilloic acid, i.e., a dicarboxylic acid (figure 1.9).

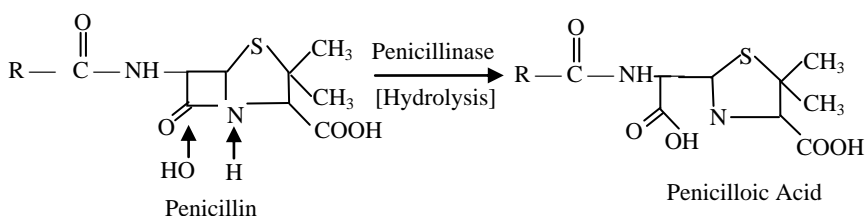


Figure 1.9: Hydrolysis of Penicillin to Penicilloic Acid by Penicillinase

Penicillinase obtained from *B. subtilis* and *B. cereus* is industrially produced and exerts action to some extent in the removal of penicillin via specific inactivation. Penicillinase has been categorised into two major classes based on its activity:

- 1) Penicillin amidase or penicillin acylase, and
- 2) β -lactamase or penicillinase.

Penicillinase inhibits the therapeutic activity of penicillins. **Penicillin amidase** enzyme specifically attacks the acyl group attached to the basic nucleus, i.e., 6-aminopenicillanic acid (figure 1.10), thus is also named as **penicillin acylase**. This enzyme is more specific against penicillin V and K. The **β -lactamase** enzyme acts on the basic nucleus by breaking the β -lactam bond and producing penicilloic acid. This enzyme is more specific against penicillin G and X, and to a lesser extent against penicillin V.

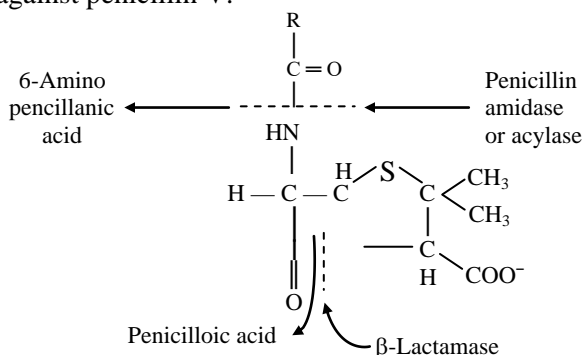


Figure 1.10: Structure of Penicillin and its Enzymatic Conversion to 6-Aminopenicillanic Acid and Penicilloic

Importance of Penicillinase

- 1) Penicillinase is a narrow spectrum β -lactamase which opens the β -lactam ring and inactivates Penicillin G and some closely related congeners.
- 2) Majority of *Staphylococci* and some strains of *Gonococci*, *B. subtilis*, *E. coli*, *H. influenza*, and few other bacteria produce penicillinase. The gram-positive penicillinase produces large quantities of the enzyme which diffuses into the surroundings and protects other inherently sensitive bacteria. The gram-negative penicillinase produces small quantities of the enzyme found between the lipoprotein and peptidoglycan layers of the cell wall.
- 3) Some resistant bacteria become penicillin tolerant and not penicillin destroying. Their target enzymes are altered to have low affinity for penicillin, e.g., highly resistant *Pneumococci* isolated in some areas have altered Penicillin Binding Proteins (PBPs).
- 4) The Methicillin Resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA) has acquired a PBP which has a very low affinity for β -lactam antibiotics.
- 5) The low level penicillin resistant *Gonococci* are less permeable to the drug, while high degree resistant ones produce penicillinase, as do highly resistant *H. influenzae*.
- 6) The gram-negative bacteria have porin channels formed by the proteins in their outer membrane. Various β -lactam antibiotics have different permeability through these channels. Ampicillin and other members active against gram-negative bacteria cross the porin channels much better than Penicillin G. Some gram-negative bacteria become resistant by loss or alteration of porin channels.

1.3. SUMMARY

The details given in the chapter can be summarised as follows:

- 1) **Biotechnology** is a branch of biology involving the use of living organisms and bioprocesses in engineering, technology, medicine, and other fields using bioproducts.
- 2) The term **pharmacogenomics** was derived from the words **pharmacology** and **genomics**, thus it involves studying the relationship between pharmaceuticals and genetics.
- 3) Enzymes are non-toxic and biodegradable biocatalysts synthesised by the living cells. They are complex protein molecules that bring about chemical reactions associated with life.
- 4) Enzyme technology involves production, isolation, purification and use of soluble or immobilised form of enzymes for benefiting humankind.
- 5) **Enzyme immobilisation** is a technique of restraining the enzymes in or on an inert support for their stability and functional reuse.
- 6) **Reactor Loading** is used for producing immobilised enzymes. In this process, the carrier is placed into the reactor and enzyme solution is transferred to the reactor loaded with carrier.

- 7) In **Electro-Deposition**, the carrier is placed in proximal vicinity of one of the electrodes in an enzyme bath and then electric current is passed.
- 8) In **cross-linking** method of enzyme immobilisation, a solid support is not required; instead cross-links are formed between the enzyme molecules.
- 9) **Glutaraldehyde**, the most **commonly used cross-linking reagent**, forms a Schiff's base by reacting with the lysyl residues of the enzymes. Irreversible cross-links are formed between the enzyme molecules and glutaraldehyde, and these cross-links can withstand extreme pH and temperature.
- 10) **Entrapment** is a phenomenon in which the enzyme molecules are held or entrapped within appropriate fibres or gels.
- 11) **Polymerisation** of bis-isocyanates with polyalcohols or polyamines to give urethanes and the cross-linking of inactive proteins with bifunctional glutaraldehyde are the common **examples** of polycondensation reactions.
- 12) **Encapsulation** (or **microencapsulation** or **membrane confinement**) is a versatile and effective method of enzyme immobilisation by entrapping.
- 13) **DRVs** involve the formation of lipid vesicles in which hydration fluid contains protein or enzyme to be incorporated.
- 14) Immobilised enzymes are used for producing 6-**-amino penicillanic acid**, penicillins, cephalosporins, etc. on a commercial scale. This process is performed in a column, stirred tank, or a batch membrane reactor.
- 15) In **REVs**, bioproteins (including enzymes) can be incorporated into liposomes.
- 16) **Biocatalytic conversions** are used in steroid transformations. Enzymes utilised for steroid transformations need cofactors. Whole cells of microorganisms with cofactors are immobilised to be used for large-scale steroid transformations.
- 17) Immobilised enzymes yield better productivity of organic acids.
- 18) **Enzyme electrodes** are probes which can generate an electrical potential when a reaction catalysed by an immobilised enzyme (fixed on or around the probe) occurs.
- 19) Immobilised enzymes are also used in affinity chromatography.
- 20) Various fields like microbiology, chemistry, process engineering, and biochemistry have contributed extensively in the growth of enzyme technology.
- 21) **Amylase** is an enzyme that breaks down the starch into sugar. It is present in human saliva, where it begins the process of chemical digestion. Amylase was the first enzyme to be discovered and isolated.
- 22) **Catalase** is an enzyme that catalyses the reaction by which hydrogen peroxide decomposes into water and oxygen. It is found in the organisms living in the presence of oxygen.
- 23) **Peroxidase** is an enzyme that decomposes hydrogen peroxide by the oxidation of wide range of phenolic and non-phenolic substrates (RH). They are abundantly found in bacteria, fungi, algae, plants, and animals.

- 24) **Lipase** is an enzyme that breaks down dietary fats into fatty acids and glycerol. The cells in stomach produce a small amount of gastric lipase, which helps in the digestion of butter fat in food.
- 25) **Protease** (or proteinase or proteolytic enzymes) is an enzyme which hydrolyses (i.e., breakdown) the peptide bonds $[-CO-NH-]$ joining the array of amino acids in a protein.
- 26) **Penicillinase** is a bacterial enzyme that inactivates most of the penicillins. It is an extracellular enzyme produced by the members of the Coliform group of bacteria, by the *Bacillus* species, and some of the strains of *Staphylococcus*.

1.4. EXERCISE

1.4.1. True or False

- 1) The term biotechnology indicates the use of living organisms or their products for modifying the human health and environment.
- 2) Robert Brown observed tiny microscopic structures under the first microscope and coined the word cell.
- 3) Pharmacogenomics is used for the treatment of genetic and acquired diseases like cancer and AIDS.
- 4) For increasing the crop yield, one or two genes are transferred to a highly developed crop variety for imparting a new character.
- 5) Electro-deposition is an adsorption method for enzyme immobilisation.

1.4.2. Fill in the Blanks

- 6) _____ is a bacterial enzyme that inactivates most of the penicillins.
- 7) _____ joins the array of amino acids in a protein.
- 8) _____ yield better productivity of organic acids.
- 9) _____ observed tiny microscopic structures under the first microscope and coined the word cell.
- 10) The term pharmacogenomics was derived from the words pharmacology and _____.

Answers

- 1) True 2) False 3) False 4) True 5) True
 6) Penicillinase 7) Protease 8) Immobilised enzymes 9) Robert Hooke
 10) Genomics

1.4.3. Very Short Answer Type Questions

- 1) Define biotechnology and give its historical background.
- 2) Give the applications of biotechnology in pharmaceutical sciences.
- 3) Give advantages of enzyme immobilisation.
- 4) What are the analytical applications of enzyme immobilisation?
- 5) Discuss the cross-linking method of enzyme immobilisation.

1.4.4. Short Answer Type Questions

- 1) Briefly discuss the applications of biotechnology in medicine.
- 2) What are the uses of microbes in industry?
- 3) Discuss any two methods of enzyme immobilisation.
- 4) Discuss the production and importance of protease.

1.4.5. Long Answer Type Questions

- 1) Discuss the production of amylase, catalase, and protease.
- 2) What is enzyme immobilisation? Give its advantages, disadvantages, and methods.
- 3) Give a brief account on the applications of enzyme immobilisation in pharmacy.

CHAPTER 2

Biosensors, Protein and Genetic Engineering

2.1. BIOSENSORS

2.1.1. Introduction

An analytical device used to change biological response into an electrical signal is called **biosensor** (figure 2.1). The term **biosensor** refers to sensor devices used for determining the concentration of substances and other biological parameters even where biological system is not directly involved.

Biosensors use a transducer to couple a biological sensing element with a detector. The first scientifically planned and successfully commercialised biosensors were the electrochemical sensors useful for multiple analytes.

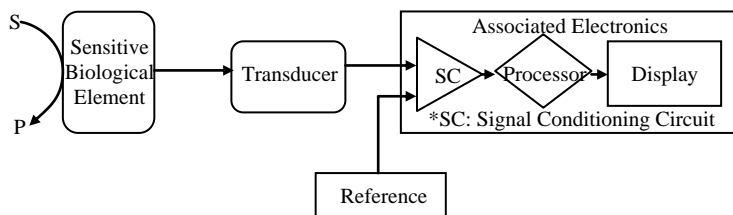


Figure 2.1: Schematic Diagram Showing Main Components of a Biosensor

The biosensor contains a biological sensing element (**e.g.**, tissues, microorganisms, organelles, cell receptors, enzymes, antibodies, nucleic acids, natural products , etc.), a material obtained biologically (**e.g.**, recombinant antibodies, engineered proteins, aptamers , etc.) or agents that mimic biological system (**e.g.**, synthetic receptors, biomimetic catalysts, combinatorial ligands, imprinted polymers , etc.) either closely associated to or integrated in a transducer.

2.1.2. Principle

The preferred biological material is generally a specific enzyme that is immobilised using conventional methods (**e.g.**, physical or membrane entrapment, non- covalent or covalent binding) and brought in close contact with the transducer.

The analyte on binding to the biological material forms a bound analyte that produces a measurable electronic response. Sometimes due to the release of heat, gas (oxygen), electrons or hydrogen ions, the analyte converts into a product; and changes associated to this product is transformed by the transducer to electrical signals that are amplified and measured.

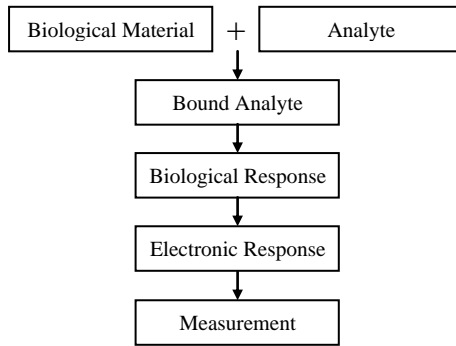


Figure 2.2: Measurement Flow for a Biosensor

2.1.3. Working

The electrical signal coming from the transducer is low and superimposed by high and noisy baseline (could be due to high frequency signal component of random nature, or electrical interference generated in transducer electronic components). A baseline signal derived from a similar transducer without any biocatalyst membrane is called a **reference baseline signal**.

In signal processing, this reference baseline signal is subtracted from the sample signal; the signal difference obtained is amplified and the unwanted noise signals are electronically filtered (i.e. smoothened). The biosensor response is slow and eases the electrical noise filtration. The analogue signal produced directly is the output; however, it is converted to a digital signal, passed to a microprocessor for processing and manipulating the data to desired units, and then the output is displayed or stored.

2.1.4. Types

A biosensor is of the following different types based on the type of sensor devices and the biological materials:

- 1) **Electrochemical Biosensor:** It is a simple device used to measure electronic current, ionic or conductance changes carried by bio-electrodes.
- 2) **Amperometric Biosensor:** It determines the movement of electrons or electronic current due to a redox reaction catalysed by enzyme. Usually, a normal contact voltage moves along the electrodes to be analysed. In the enzyme-catalysed reaction, the substrate or product obtained can transfer the electrons with the surface of electrodes to be reduced; hence, an alternate current flow is measurable.
- 3) **Blood Glucose Biosensor:** It is employed extensively for diabetic patients. It contains a watch pen-shaped disposable electrode for single use. This electrode has glucose oxide and derivatives of a mediator (Ferrocene). The electrodes are converted using hydrophilic mesh.
- 4) **Potentiometric Biosensor:** It measures the changes in the concentration of ionic species with the help of ion-selective electrodes present in it. It generally employs pH electrodes, thus in the release of hydrogen ions a large amount of enzymatic reactions are involved.

- 5) **Conductometric Biosensor:** Many reactions occurring in the biological system bring about a change in the ionic species. This change is helpful in measuring the electronic conductivity. Urea biosensor which utilises the immobilised areas is an **example** of conductometric biosensor.
- 6) **Thermometric Biosensor:** Several biological reactions involve production of heat and form the basis of thermometric biosensors. The diagram representing a thermal biosensor consists of a heat insulated box fitted with a heat exchanger.
- 7) **Optical Biosensor:** It works on the principle of optical measurements, like fluorescence, absorbance, etc., and is utilised in fibre optics and optoelectronic transducers. Optical biosensor can even be safely used for non-electrical remote sensing of materials. It is involved in enzymes and antibodies in the transducer elements. This biosensor generally does not require any reference sensor, and sampling sensor is used for generating comparative signals.
- 8) **Fibre Optic Lactate Biosensor:** It measures the change in oxygen concentration at molecular level by identifying the effects of oxygen in fluorescent dye.
- 9) **Optical Biosensor for Blood Glucose:** In diabetic patients, the blood glucose level is important to be monitored. It is based on a simple technique in which paper strips saturated with reagents, like glucose oxide, Horseradish Peroxidase and a chromogen are used. The intensity of the dye colour is measured using a portable reflectance meter. The calorimetric test strips of cellulose layered with suitable enzymes and reagents are also widely used for testing blood and urine parameters.
- 10) **Piezoelectric Biosensor:** It is also called **acoustic biosensor** as its principle relies on sound vibrations. It contains piezoelectric crystals and these characteristic frequencies vibrate with the positively and negatively charged crystals. With the help of electronic devices, certain molecules on the crystal surface can be measured. The response frequencies can be changed by using these crystals with attached inhibitors. **For example**, the biosensor for cocaine (in the gas phase) works by attaching the cocaine antibodies on crystal surface.

2.1.5. Applications in Pharmaceutical Industries

Biosensors are made up of a biological element and a physiochemical detector used for detecting analytes. These devices have a wide range of applications in fields ranging from clinical to environmental to agricultural and to food industries. Given below are some of the fields in which biosensor technology is used.

- 1) General healthcare monitoring,
- 2) Screening of diseases,
- 3) Clinical analysis and diagnosis of diseases,
- 4) Veterinary and agricultural applications,
- 5) Industrial processing and monitoring, and
- 6) Environmental pollution control.

Biosensors can be used for quantitative determination of numerous biologically important substances in body fluids , **e.g.**, glucose, cholesterol, urea. Glucose biosensor is widely used for regular monitoring of blood glucose in diabetic patients.

Also biosensors are used fo r blood gas monitoring for pH, pCO₂ and pO₂ during critical care and surgical monitoring of patients. Mutagenicity of a few chemicals can be determined by using biosensors. Presence of toxic compounds produced in the body can also be detected.

Thus, biosensors possess many applications in biomedical sciences . **Table 2.1** enlists some of the important applications:

Table 2.1: List of Biosensors with Their Applications

Transduction	Biosensor Type	Applications
Electrochemical	Acetylcholinesterase (AChE) inhibition biosensors	Pesticidal study
	Hba1c biosensor	Determining glycated haemoglobin
	Piezoelectric biosensors	Detecting carbamate and organophosphate
	Uric acid biosensors	Diagnosis of various clinical abnormalities (e.g. , diagnosis of CVS diseases)
	Glucose oxidase electrode biosensors	Measuring of glucose in biological sample of diabetic patient
	Quartz-crystal biosensors	Detection of proteins at ultrahigh-sensitive level in liquids
Optical	Polyacrylamide-based hydrogel biosensors	Immobilisation of biomolecules
	Silicon biosensor	For biosensing, bioimaging, and in cancer therapy
	Microfabricated biosensor	In novel drug delivery (e.g. , in optical corrections)
	Fluorescence tagged or Genetically encoded biosensor	Investigation of various biological process and molecular systems in the cell
Electrochemical or optical	Nanomaterial biosensors	For diagnosis and in drug delivery

2.2. PROTEIN ENGINEERING

2.2.1. Introduction

The process of developing proteins having desired functions by manipulating their stability and specificity is termed **protein engineering** . This can be done by taking two main approaches, i.e., **rational design** and **irrational design** (or **directed evolution**). In the former case, knowledge of the protein structure and function is considered and a rational gene mutation is planned (**figure 1**).

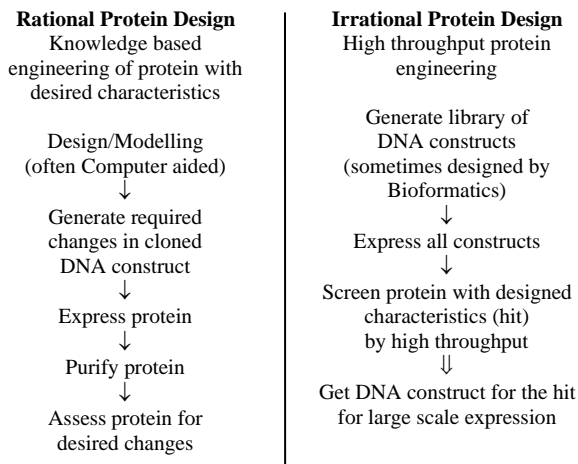


Figure 2.3: Two Different Approaches of Protein Engineering

This is done by making rationally designed changes in the gene of the protein cloned in expression vector of heterologous expression. The production of protein molecules is changed by site directed or site-specific mutagenesis of their genes. While there are cases in which protein structure is not available, and thus irrational design is required in which random changes (mutation) are made in the protein and a mutant with desired properties is selected.

2.2.2. Objectives

Enzymes, antibodies, hormones, receptor proteins, etc., are the protein classes chosen for engineering. Out of these, enzymes are the most widely used ones. Protein engineering mainly aims to get functionally more useful and efficient proteins and obtain economic gains from them.

Protein engineering has the objectives of:

- 1) Increasing the stability of enzymes,
- 2) Increasing the catalytic efficiency of enzymes,
- 3) Introducing new active sites and new catalytic activity in enzymes,
- 4) Altering pH dependence of enzymes,
- 5) Improving thermostability and modifying substrate specificity of enzymes,
- 6) Understanding structural and functional relationship for an enzyme for making predictions of actions,
- 7) Transferring the ability to make desirable enzyme in easy to cultivate and safer to use microbes,
- 8) Producing tailor -made enzymes in large quantities by increasing the expression of structural genes,
- 9) Producing hybrid enzymes,
- 10) Making isolation and purification of enzymes easy,
- 11) Making hormones resistant to attack by antibodies or stomach enzymes,
- 12) Getting more specific and potent biopharmaceuticals with altered pharmacological action, and
- 13) Getting humanised antibodies with less immunogenicity.

2.2.3. Increasing the Stability and Biological Activity of Proteins

The industrial applications or therapeutic uses of enzymes/proteins can be appropriately brought into use by increasing their half-lives or thermostability. Proteins with enhanced stability can be obtained by the following methods:

- 1) Addition of disulfide bonds,
- 2) Changing asparagine to other amino acids,
- 3) Reducing the free sulfhydryl groups,
- 4) Single amino acid changes, and
- 5) Improving kinetic properties of enzymes.

2.2.3.1. Addition of Disulfide Bonds

Introduction of disulfide bonds significantly increases the thermostability of enzymes. The disulfide bonds added should not disturb the normal functioning of enzymes. The new protein obtained after the addition of disulfide bonds does not unfold at high temperatures and also does not denature at non-physiological conditions (i.e., high pH and presence of organic solvents). These features of the new protein facilitate the use of certain enzymes for industrial applications.

T4 Lysozyme

This is an enzyme of bacteriophage T4. Disulfide bonds in T4 lysozyme were introduced by changing two, four or six amino acids (in close proximity) to cysteine residues to form one, two or three disulfide bonds, respectively. In the native T4 lysozyme, two cysteine residues (not held together by a disulfide bond) are present. By oligonucleotide-directed mutagenesis, cysteine residues created disulfide bonds between positions 3 and 97, 9 and 164, and 21 and 142 (numbered from N-terminal end) of the enzyme.

On adding disulfide bonds, the folded structure and thermostability of the enzyme increases. Thus, it can be said that T4 lysozyme with three disulfide bonds has high stability and good biological activity.

Xylanase

This is an enzyme used for manufacturing paper from wood pulp. Xylanase should be catalytically active at high temperature. When added with disulfide bonds (one, two or three), it becomes thermostable and more functionally efficient.

2.2.3.2. Changing Asparagine to Other Amino Acids

The amino acids asparagine and glutamine undergo deamidation (i.e., release ammonia) to form aspartic acid and glutamic acid, respectively at high temperature. These alterations are associated with changes in the protein folding and loss of biological activity.

Triose Phosphate Isomerase

This is a dimeric enzyme with identical subunits, each having two thermosensitive asparagine residues which undergo deamidation. Oligonucleotide-directed mutagenesis was used for introducing threonine or isoleucine

instead of asparagine to obtain a new thermostable enzyme. While on replacing the asparagine residues with aspartic acid, an enzyme unstable even at low temperature and having reduced activity is obtained.

2.2.3.3. Reducing the Free Sulfhydryl Groups

The presence of a large number of free sulfhydryl groups (contributed by cysteine residues) may lower the activity of proteins. In this case, the stability and activity of the protein or enzyme can be improved by reducing the number of sulfhydryl groups.

Human β -Interferon (IFN- β)

IFN- β is produced in *E. coli* by genetic engineering. Its antiviral activity was found to be only 10% of the original glycosylated form. It was found to exist as inactive dimers and oligomers. Cysteine residues were involved in intermolecular disulfide bonding, thus forming dimers and oligomers.

However, this is the case only in *E. coli* cells and not in human cells; and this problem was also overcome by replacing the cysteine residues with serine. The structures of these two amino acids (cysteine and serine) are also similar, with the only difference that the sulphur of cysteine has been replaced with oxygen in serine (and this consequently reduces free sulfhydryl groups). This process helps in the production of IFN- β with increased stability and good biological activity.

2.2.3.4. Single Amino Acid Changes

The stability and biological activity of recombinant proteins can be improved by a second generation variant. This is achieved by a single amino acid change.

α_1 -Antitrypsin

This amino acid binds to and inhibits the action of neutrophil elastase (an enzyme that damages the lung tissues, and causes emphysema, i.e., abnormal distension of lungs by air). In this process, α_1 -antitrypsin is cleaved into serine and methionine (figure 2.4 a); and the free methionine is oxidised to methionine sulfoxide, thus making α_1 -antitrypsin a poor inhibitor of elastase.

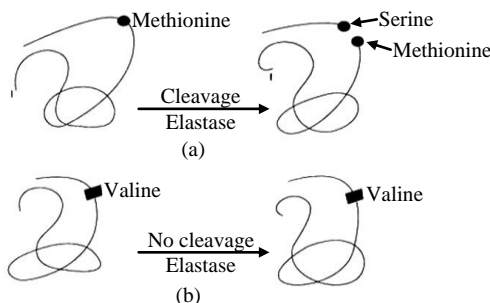


Figure 2.4: (a) Cleavage of α_1 -Antitrypsin by Binding to Elastase; (b) No Cleavage Occurs when Methionine is Replaced by Valine

Methionine is replaced with valine (an oxidative -resistant variant of α_1 -antitrypsin) (figure 2.4 b) and the new enzyme obtained is used for treating patients having genetic deficiency of α_1 -antitrypsin.

Insulin

In neutral solution, therapeutic insulin is present as zinc -containing hexamer. On introducing single amino acid substitutions, insulin exists in monomeric state with good stability and biological activity.

Tissue Plasminogen Activator (tPA)

This is therapeutically used for the lysis of blood clots causing myocardial infarction. The tPA has a shorter half -life of around 5 minutes, thus has to be administered recurrently. The half -life of tPA can be increased by replacing asparagine residue with glutamine as it is less glycosylated than asparagine, thus making a difference in the half-life of tPA.

2.2.3.5. Improving Kinetic Properties of Enzymes

The functional activities of enzymes can be improved by improving their kinetic properties (K_m , specificity, etc.) through oligonucleotide-directed mutagenesis. This is required for enzymes having industrial and therapeutic benefits.

Subtilisin

This is a serine protease enzyme secreted by gram -positive bacteria of *Bacillus* species. It is extensively used in industries as an enzyme detergent (i.e., cleaning agent in laundries). However, its large scale industrial use is restricted as it becomes inactive when the methionine lying close to the active site gets oxidised. This problem is overcome by replacing methionine with other amino acids.

Subtilisin enzyme has also been used for genetic manipulations over the past 15 years. As a result of which about 50% of the native amino acids of this enzyme have been changed by *in vitro* mutagenesis, and most of the features of subtilisin (including its stability, substrate specificity, thermal and alkaline inactivation) has been altered.

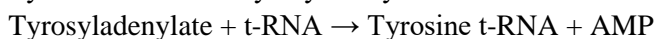
Asparaginase

This enzyme is used for controlling leukaemia (i.e., uncontrolled growth of WBCs). On intravenous administration, asparaginase cleaves asparagine to aspartate (the reduced availability of asparagine restricts cell proliferation).

Asparaginase obtained from different sources shows different effectiveness in controlling leukaemia due to their different kinetic properties. Asparaginase having a low K_m (Michaelis constant) value has a high affinity for asparagine (hence more breakdown), thus should be selected to be used therapeutically for controlling leukaemia.

Tyrosyl t-RNA Synthetase

This enzyme is obtained from *Bacillus stearothermophilus*, and its K_m value has been modified with regard to substrate binding. Tyrosyl t-RNA synthetase enzyme catalyses the following two reactions, to yield tyrosine t-RNA:



Replacement of threonine with either alanine or proline has yielded variants of tyrosyl t-RNA synthetase. Alanine variant has a low K_m value, thus possesses twofold binding affinity for ATP; while proline variant has a very low K_m value, and thus ATP binds about 100-fold more tightly.

Restriction Endonucleases

This enzyme has been modified by oligonucleotide -directed mutagenesis. Most of the restriction endonucleases enzymes recognise the same DNA sequence for their action. There are only 200 different recognition sites, and thus an overlap in the recognition sites of several restriction enzymes has been observed.

There are **two types** of restriction endonucleases, i.e., the **frequent cutters** which recognise a sequence of 4 -6 bp and **rare cutters** which recognise a sequence above 8 bp. The latter ones are more useful for producing large DNA fragments, and therefore protein engineering techniques have been utilised to modify the existing restriction endonucleases and produce rare cutters.

2.2.4. Applications

Protein engineering is used for **cancer treatment** studies. Pre -targeted radioimmunotherapy is a potential cancer treatment, as pre -targeting minimises radiation toxicity by separating the rapidly cleared radionuclide and the long -circulating antibody. Advances in protein engineering and recombinant DNA technology have increased the use of **pre-targeted radioimmunotherapy**. The use of **novel antibodies as anti-cancer agents** is also an important field, wherein the ability of antibodies to select the specific antigens with high affinity is employed; thus, protein engineering techniques are used for modifying the antibodies which can be targeted to cancer cells.

Protein engineering techniques are also used for **producing therapeutic proteins**. In 1996, recombinant protein production for therapeutic purposes was reviewed, and stated that protein engineering by mutation and deletion of fusion resulted in a second generation of therapeutic protein products with application-specific properties.

Other studies on therapeutic protein production include single-chain Fv designs for protein, cell and gene therapy; DNA shuffling and recursive genetic recombination studies to improve therapeutic proteins; development of secreted proteins such as insulin, interferon, erythropoietin as biotherapeutic agents; combinatorial protein biochemistry for therapeutics and proteomics; meganucleases and DNA double-strand break induced recombination for gene therapy; use of protein cationization techniques for future drug discovery and development; protein display scaffolds for protein engineering of new therapeutics; and polymer-based therapeutics for drug delivery and tissue regeneration.

Due to the advances in recombinant DNA technology, **antibody engineering** is possible. Combinational approaches (such as bacteriophage display libraries) have been introduced as an alternative to hybridoma technology for producing

antibodies with desired antigen binding characteristics. **Phage display** has become a powerful technique in protein engineering, immunology, oncology, etc. Phage display of antibody fragments, mainly the production of artificial epitopes by phage antibodies is an important application.

Antibody modelling studies to produce antibody-like molecules and increase their stability and specificity has also become common. Antibodies are also being used as vectors for molecular imaging. Pharmacokinetic properties of antibodies have been improved by protein engineering and antibody variants of different size and antigen binding sites have been produced to be used as imaging probes specific to target tissues. **Examples** include antibody fragments conjugated to bioluminescence, fluorescence, quantum dots for optical imaging, and iron oxide nanoparticles for magnetic resonance imaging.

2.3. GENETIC ENGINEERING

2.3.1. Introduction

Genetic engineering involves deliberate DNA manipulation in organisms to alter their genes. Although the organisms whose genes are being altered may not be microbes, but the substances and techniques involved are obtained from microbes and adapted for use in more complex organisms.

2.3.2. Historical Background

The term **genetic engineering** initially was used for various techniques used for modifying or manipulating organisms through heredity and reproduction processes. Genetic engineering involves artificial selection and also all the interventions of biomedical techniques (artificial insemination), *in vitro* fertilisation (e.g., test-tube babies), cloning, and gene manipulation. In the 20th century, the term **genetic engineering** was used to indicate more specific methods of recombinant DNA technology (or gene cloning), in which DNA molecules obtained from two or more sources are combined *in vivo* (within cells) or *in vitro* (outside cells) and then inserted into the host organisms for propagation.

The techniques of recombinant DNA technology were developed with the discovery of restriction enzymes by **Werner Arber** (a Swiss microbiologist) in **1968**. The next year **Hamilton O. Smith** (an American microbiologist) purified type II restriction enzymes having the ability to cleave a specific site within the DNA (in contrast to type I restriction enzymes that cleave DNA at random sites), and thus essential to genetic engineering. **Daniel Nathans** (an American molecular biologist) helped in modifying the DNA recombination technique in **1970-71** and demonstrated that type II enzymes could be useful in genetic studies. Genetic engineering based on recombination was pioneered in **1973** by **Stanley N. Cohen** and **Herbert W. Boyer** (American biochemists), who were the first to cut DNA into fragments, rejoin different fragments, and insert the new genes into *E. coli* bacteria, which then reproduced.

2.3.3. Basic Principles

Gene cloning involves inserting a specific piece of 'desired DNA' into a host cell in such a manner that the inserted DNA is replicated and handed onto the daughter cells during cell division. The **factors** involved in gene cloning are:

- 1) Isolation of the gene to be cloned.
- 2) Insertion of the gene into a vector (piece of DNA) which allow it to be taken by bacteria and replicate within them as the cells grow and divide.
- 3) Transfer of the recombinant vector into bacterial cells by transformation or infection with viruses.
- 4) Selection of the cells containing the desired recombinant vectors.
- 5) Growth of the bacteria, that can be continued indefinitely, to give the required cloned DNA.
- 6) Expression of the gene to get the desired product.

2.3.4. Process

The recombinant DNA technology mainly involves insertion of foreign genes into the plasmids (small rings of DNA) of common laboratory strains of bacteria. Plasmids are not the part of bacterium's chromosome (the main source of genetic information in the organisms). However, they can direct protein synthesis, and are reproduced and passed on to the bacterium's progeny (like chromosomal DNA). Thus, foreign DNA (**e.g.**, a mammalian gene) can be inserted into a bacterium to obtain immeasurable number of copies of the inserted gene. Also if the inserted gene has the ability to direct protein synthesis, the modified bacterium will produce the protein specified by the foreign DNA.

A subsequent generation of genetic engineering techniques that emerged in the early 21st century centred on gene editing. Gene editing is based on CRISPR - Cas9 technology, and the researchers by using it can customise a living organism's genetic sequence by making specific alterations in its DNA. Gene editing can be used for the genetic modification of crop plants and livestock and of laboratory model organisms (**e.g.**, mice). It is also used in gene therapy for humans as it can correct the genetic errors associated with disease in animals.

2.3.5. Applications

Genetic engineering has improvised the understanding of many theoretical and practical aspects of gene function and organisation. Through recombinant DNA techniques, researchers can produce bacteria which can synthesise human insulin, human growth hormone, α -interferon, hepatitis B vaccine, and other medically useful substances. Plants can be genetically altered to enable them to fix nitrogen. Genetic diseases can be corrected by replacing the dysfunctional genes with normally functioning genes.

However, special attention has been paid on such achievements as they might introduce unfavourable and dangerous traits into microorganisms that were earlier free of them, **e.g.**, resistance to antibiotics, production of toxins, or a tendency to cause disease. Genetic engineering in humans has raised ethical concerns regarding its use to alter traits, like intelligence and beauty.

Genetically Modified Organisms (GMOs or transgenic organisms) contain genes from different organisms, and are the sources of:

- 1) **DNA:** GMOs can be made such that a DNA piece can be easily replicated, thus providing a large source of that DNA. **For example**, a gene associated with breast cancer can be cut into the genome of *E. coli*, allowing the rapid production of the gene so that it may be sequenced, studied, and manipulated, without requiring repeated tissue donations from human volunteers.
- 2) **RNA:** Antisense RNA is ssRNA that is complementary to the mRNA that will code for a protein. In cells, it is made to control target genes. The use of antisense RNA for preventing diseases caused by the production of a particular protein is increasing.

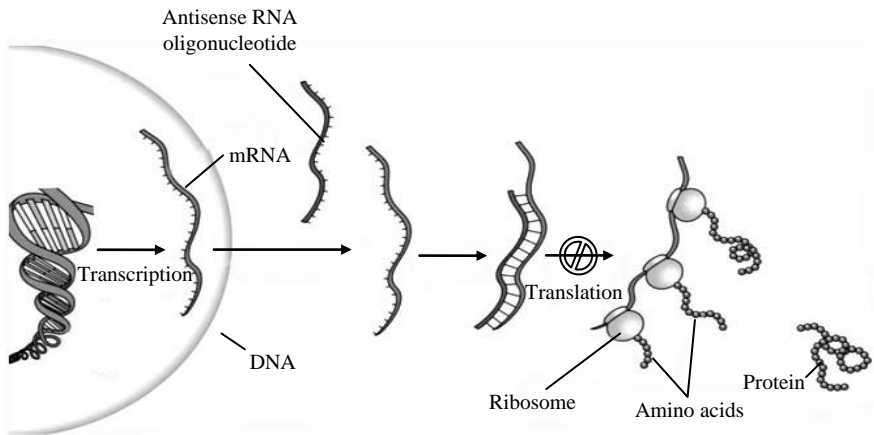


Figure 2.5: Manufacturing RNA Using GMOs

- 3) **Protein:** Since microbes replicate rapidly, it can be advantageous to use them for manufacturing the desired proteins. Given the right promoters, bacteria will express genes for proteins not naturally found in bacteria, such as cytokine. Genetically engineered cells are used to make various proteins essential for humans, **e.g.**, insulin or human growth hormone.

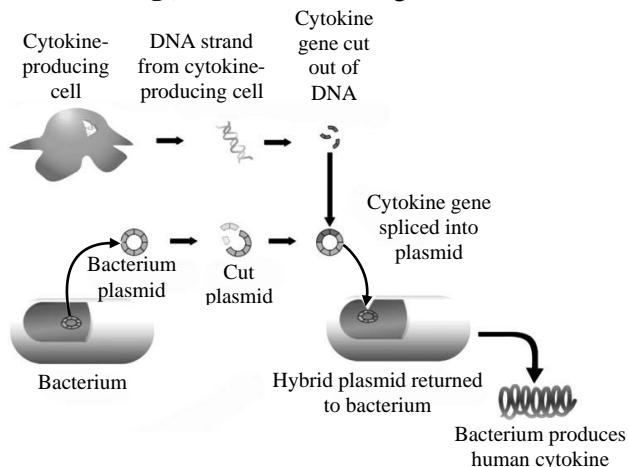


Figure 2.6: Manufacturing Proteins Using GMOs

2.4. SUMMARY

The details given in the chapter can be summarised as follows:

- 1) An analytical device used to change biological response into an electrical signal is called **biosensor**.
- 2) Biosensors use a transducer to couple a biological sensing element with a detector.
- 3) **Electrochemical biosensor** is a simple device used to measure electronic current, ionic or conductance changes carried by bio-electrodes.
- 4) **Amperometric biosensor** determines the movement of electrons or electronic current due to a redox reaction catalysed by enzyme.
- 5) **Blood Glucose biosensor** is employed extensively for diabetic patients.
- 6) **Piezoelectric biosensor** is also called **acoustic biosensor**.
- 7) **Potentiometric biosensor** measures the changes in the concentration of ionic species with the help of ion-selective electrodes present in it.
- 8) **Optical biosensor** works on the principle of optical measurements, like fluorescence, absorbance, etc., and is utilised in fibre optics and optoelectronic transducers.
- 9) The process of developing proteins having desired functions by manipulating their stability and specificity is termed **protein engineering**.
- 10) The industrial applications or therapeutic uses of enzymes/proteins can be appropriately brought into use by increasing their half-lives or thermostability.
- 11) The amino acids, asparagine and glutamine undergo deamidation (i.e., release ammonia) to form aspartic acid and glutamic acid, respectively at high temperature.
- 12) The presence of a large number of free sulfhydryl groups (contributed by cysteine residues) may lower the activity of proteins.
- 13) **Subtilisin** is a serine protease enzyme secreted by gram-positive bacteria of *Bacillus* species.
- 14) **Asparaginase** enzyme is used for controlling leukaemia (i.e., uncontrolled growth of WBCs).
- 15) Protein engineering is used for **cancer treatment** studies.
- 16) Protein engineering techniques are also used for **producing therapeutic proteins**.
- 17) Genetic engineering involves deliberate DNA manipulation in organisms to alter their genes.
- 18) Genetic engineering involves artificial selection and also all the interventions of biomedical techniques (artificial insemination), *in vitro* fertilisation (e.g., test-tube babies), cloning, and gene manipulation.
- 19) The techniques of recombinant DNA technology were developed with the discovery of restriction enzymes by **Werner Arber** (a Swiss microbiologist) in **1968**.
- 20) Gene cloning involves inserting a specific piece of 'desired DNA' into a host cell in such a manner that the inserted DNA is replicated and handed onto the daughter cells during cell division.

2.5. EXERCISE

2.5.1. True or False

- 1) Biosensors use a transducer to couple a biological sensing element with a detector.
- 2) Piezoelectric Biosensor is employed extensively for diabetic patients.
- 3) Piezoelectric Biosensor is also called optic biosensor.
- 4) Protein engineering is used for cancer treatment studies.
- 5) Protein engineering increases the catalytic efficiency of enzymes.

2.5.2. Fill in the Blanks

- 6) _____ techniques are also used for producing therapeutic proteins.
- 7) _____ involves inserting a specific piece of 'desired DNA' into a host cell.
- 8) _____ enzyme is used for controlling leukaemia.
- 9) Piezoelectric Biosensor is also called _____ biosensor.
- 10) _____ measures the change in oxygen concentration at molecular level.

Answers

- | | | | |
|-------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1) True | 2) False | 3) False | 4) True |
| 5) True | 6) Protein engineering | 7) Gene cloning | 8) Asparaginase |
| 9) Acoustic | 10) Fibre optic lactate biosensor | | |

2.5.3. Very Short Answer Type Questions

- 1) What are biosensors? Give their principle.
- 2) What is protein engineering?
- 3) Define genetic engineering? Give its basic principle.
- 4) Discuss the working of biosensors.
- 5) Give some applications of biosensors in pharmaceutical industries.

2.5.4. Short Answer Type Questions

- 1) Briefly discuss the types of biosensors.
- 2) Write the process of genetic engineering.
- 3) Give the historical background of genetic engineering.
- 4) Give the applications of biosensors in pharmaceutical industries.

2.5.5. Long Answer Type Questions

- 1) Discuss the methods for increasing the biological activity of proteins.
- 2) Give a detailed account on the applications of protein engineering.
- 3) Write the applications of genetic engineering.

CHAPTER 3

Recombinant DNA Technology

3.1. RECOMBINANT DNA TECHNOLOGY (GENE CLONING)

3.1.1. Introduction

In recombinant DNA (rDNA/rec DNA) technology, DNA molecules from two different sources are joined and inserted into a host organism to get products useful for human use (**figure 3.1**). A clone refers to a group of cells or organisms obtained from one progenitor, thus indicating that the members of a clone are genetically same. This is because each time identical daughter cells are formed by cell replication. The word **clone** associated with recombinant DNA technology provides the ability to produce several copies of a single DNA fragment, like a gene, creating identical copies producing a DNA clone.

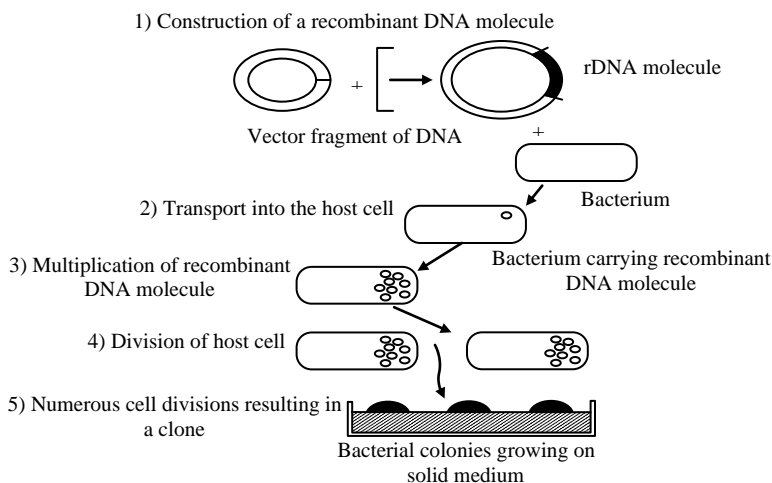


Figure 3.1: Basic Steps of Recombinant DNA Technology Using the Bacterial Plasmid as Cloning Vector

Steps Involved

Strategies for gene cloning along with the techniques commonly employed are mentioned below:

- 1) Isolation of target DNA by:
 - i) Restriction endonuclease digestion,
 - ii) cDNA clones,
 - iii) Mechanical shearing, and
 - iv) Chemical synthesis.
- 2) Insertion of target DNA into a vector by:
 - i) Direct ligation of cohesive termini,
 - ii) Blunt end ligation,

- iii) Linkers and adapters, and
- iv) Homopolymer tailing.
- 3) Cloning vectors:
 - i) Plasmids,
 - ii) Bacteriophages,
 - iii) Cosmids,
 - iv) Phagemids,
 - v) Vectors for cloning larger DNA fragments,
 - vi) Vectors for preparing single-stranded DNA, and
 - vii) Expression vectors.
- 4) Identification and isolation of recombinant genes.
- 5) Expression of cloned genes within the host.

3.1.2. Isolation of Target DNA

The very first step in rDNA technology is selecting a desired DNA segment for cloning. This DNA segment, known as **DNA insert** or **foreign DNA** or **target DNA** or **cloned DNA** is isolated enzymatically. Several isolation methods were adopted for the desired gene. This gene generated should be obtained from bacteria, plant, or animal.

3.1.2.1. Restriction Endonuclease Digestion

Restriction endonuclease enzymes aid in cutting the DNA molecules at specific sites. These enzymes form internal cuts (cleavage) in DNA strands, only within or near some specific sites called **recognition sites** or **recognition sequences** or **restriction sites** or **target sites**. Each restriction enzyme works on specific recognition sequences. Restriction endonuclease enzymes are important for DNA technology.

W. Arber in **1962** first reported the presence of restriction enzymes when he observed that on inserting the phage DNA into a host bacterium, it fragmented into small pieces. In **1970s**, **Meselson** and **Yuan** isolated the first true restriction endonuclease enzyme from the bacterium *E. coli*.

The **three main categories** of restriction endonuclease enzymes are:

- 1) **Type-I Restriction Endonucleases:** This type includes complex endonucleases, and cut one strand of DNA only. The recognition sequence for these enzymes is about 15 bp length (**table 1**). They function properly by utilising Mg^{++} ions and ATP. These types of restriction endonucleases cut DNA about 1000 bp away from the 5' end of the sequence 'TCA' within the recognition site. EcoK, EcoB, etc. are some **examples** of type-I restriction endonuclease enzyme.

Table 3.1: Recognition Sequences of Several Restriction Endonucleases

Enzymes	Source Organisms	Recognition Sequences 5' ... 3'	Blunt or Sticky Ends
EcoRI	<i>Escherichia coli</i>	GAATCC	Sticky
BglII	<i>Bacillus globigii</i>	AGATCT	Sticky
HindII	<i>Haemophilus influenzae</i>	GTPyPuAC	Blunt

HindIII	<i>Haemophilus influenzae</i>	AAGCTT	Sticky
HinfI	<i>Haemophilus influenzae</i>	GANTC	Sticky
HpaI	<i>H. parainfluenzae</i>	GTTAAC	Blunt
HaeIII	<i>H. aegyptius</i>	GGCC	Blunt
Sau 3A	<i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>	GATC	Sticky
PvuI	<i>Proteus vulgaris</i>	CGATCG	Sticky
BamHI	<i>Bacillus amyloliquefaciens</i>	GGATCC	Sticky
TaqI	<i>Thermus aquaticus</i>	TCGA	Sticky
SmaI	<i>Serratia marcescens</i>	CCCGGG	Blunt
SfiI	<i>Streptomyces funbriatus</i>	GGCCNNNNNGGCC	Sticky
SalI	<i>Streptomyces albus</i>	GTCGAC	Sticky

- 2) **Type-II Restriction Endonucleases:** This type is most stable and is significant for gene cloning and rDNA technology. They cleave specific sites and produce DNA fragments of definite lengths. They can cleave at each strand of DNA, immediately outside the recognition sequences. They utilise Mg^{++} ions for working. These enzymes do not require ATP for cleavage and cleaves both the strands of DNA, thus are advantageous. Only these enzymes are used for gene cloning due to their appropriateness.

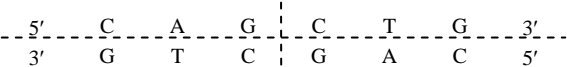


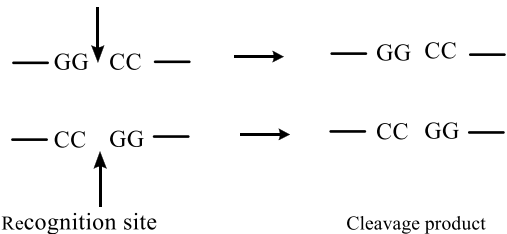
Figure 3.2: A Palindrome with Rotational Symmetry

Type-II restriction endonuclease has recognition sequences in the form of palindromic sequences with rotational symmetry. This means that the base sequence in the first half of one DNA strand is the mirror image of the second half of other strand of DNA double helix (**figure 3.2**). HinfI, EcoRI, PvuII, AluI, HaeIII , etc. are some **examples** of type -II restriction endonuclease enzyme.

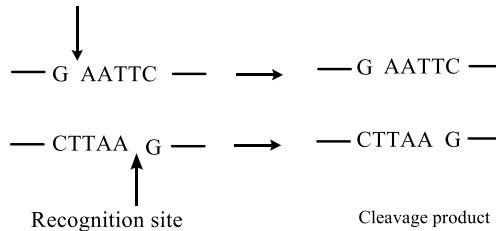
- 3) **Type-III Restriction Endonucleases:** This type is not employed in gene cloning. They are intermediate enzymes between TypeI and Type-II restriction endonuclease. They need Mg^{++} ions and ATP for cleavage and cleave DNA at specific sites in the immediate vicinity of recognition sequences. Hinf III is a common example of typeII restriction endonuclease enzyme.

The DNA is cut in two patterns by the restriction enzyme:

- 1) **Blunt End Pattern:** Some restriction endonuclease enzymes cleave both the DNA strands at the same position. This pattern helps during the joining of DNA fragments. Any pair of ends can be joined together regardless of sequence. Two defined sequences can be linked without introducing any material between them.



- 2) **Sticky or Cohesive End Pattern:** Restriction endonuclease enzymes cut some nucleotide pairs apart in the opposite strands of DNA, forming fragments with protruding ends.



These DNA fragments either join through base pairing with hydrogen bond between the overlapping ends, or the fragments circularise by intermolecular reaction, and hence the fragments are termed sticky or cohesive ends.

3.1.2.2. cDNA Clones

The cDNA clones are preferably used when the target DNA to be isolated has been obtained from eukaryotic organisms and the aim is to express it in a prokaryotic cell. Expressing the DNA of a eukaryotic cell into a prokaryotic cell is difficult since both the cells vary in gene organisation and regulation. Introns (segments of non-coding DNA) in eukaryotic gene (**figure 3.3**) disrupt the exons (coding sequence) of the gene.

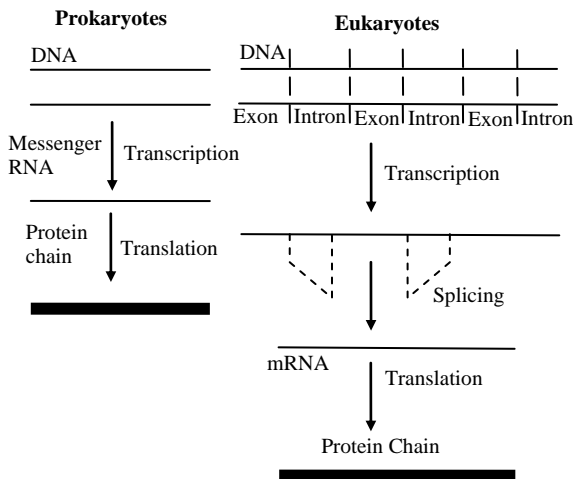


Figure 3.3: Expression of DNA in Prokaryotes and Eukaryotes

Transcription of introns into mRNA takes place. The eukaryotic cell machinery process (splicing off introns) these mRNAs before reaching the cytoplasm for translation. Since prokaryotic cell is devoid of introns, it cannot process the precursor mRNA. Hence, a complementary DNA copy (cDNA) is suitable for genomic DNA as the target gene is in eukaryotic cell. For the enzymatic synthesis of complementary DNA (cDNA), mRNA is used as the template along with reverse transcriptase acting as a catalyst. The primer DNA is needed in this process. Poly A tail is present in mRNA at its 3' end (**figure 3.3**). Poly T is added to mRNA, and it base pairs with poly A tail of the mRNA.

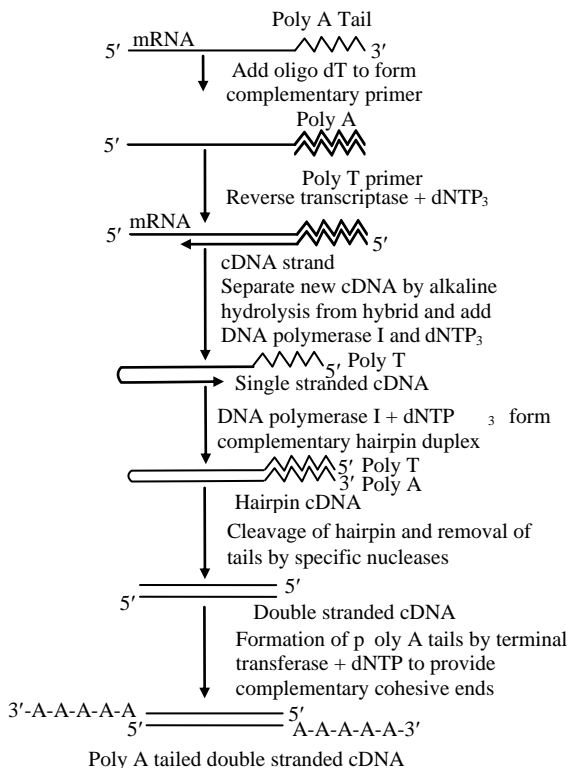


Figure 3.4: Construction of a Double Stranded cDNA from a mRNA

This base pair now acts as a primer for reverse transcriptase and transcribes the mRNA utilising a mixture of dATP, dTTP, dGTP and dCTP to make a complementary strand of cDNA (**figure 3. 4**). Alkaline hydrolysis separates mRNA from mRNA -cDNA hybrid. The single strand cDNA left behind is replicated by DNA polymerase I, producing a 'hairpin' double stranded DNA. Cleavage of hairpin yields a synthetic double stranded cDNA, coding for specific gene for desired protein. The prepared cDNA is then inserted into a plasmid or viral vector, and thus should bear appropriate tails or cohesive ends.

3.1.2.3. Mechanical Shearing

Mechanical shearing forms random fragments of DNA. Sonication or high speed mixing also generates the target fragments. By varying the intensity of the treatment, the average size of the fragments (with 5' and 3' overhangs, and blunt ends) can be managed. The produced fragments have no cohesive ends. Therefore, the process of homopolymer tailing is required to facilitate ligation with the vector.

3.1.2.4. Chemical Synthesis

The gene of interest can be synthesised chemically if the amino acid sequence of the concerned protein is known for which the nucleotide sequences in mRNA and DNA can be determined. Short nucleotides produced are spliced into larger fragments. This process is more practicable with the existing triester method and automatic synthesisers.

3.1.3. Insertion of Target DNA Into a Vector

The target DNA or the DNA insert isolated and enzymatically cleaved by the selective restriction endonuclease, are ligated (joined) through the action of ligase enzyme to the vector DNA. As a result, an rDNA molecule known as **cloning-vector-insert DNA construct** is produced.

3.1.3.1. Direct Ligation of Cohesive Termini (DNA Ligase)

The target gene can be inserted into a vector when both are cleaved with the same restriction enzyme, producing identical cohesive ends. A staggered two stranded cut ends complementary to each other in sequence, are produced (**figure 3.5**). When performed annealing, the joint linking two DNAs bear one pair of staggered nicks on each strand. The two DNAs are connected with DNA ligase under suitable conditions to create a phosphodiester linkage among the adjacent nucleotide.

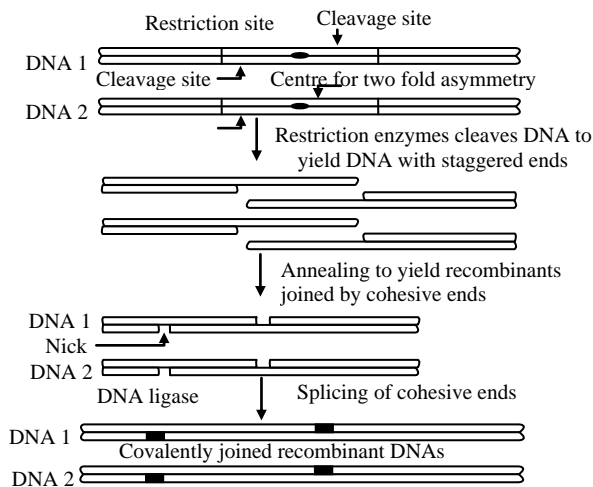


Figure 3.5: Ligation of Cohesive Termini

Generally, ligation is performed for 12 -24 hours at 4 -15°C temperature and is catalysed by either T_4 DNA ligase or *E. coli* DNA ligase. The former uses ATP as a cofactor, while the latter uses NAD^+ . The ligated fragments thus produced have a mixture of DNA fragments and linear vector, undesirable circularised vector with no inserts, length of DNA formed from two or more fragments, circularised fragments, two or more vector molecules connected together, etc.

DNA Ligase

DNA ligase (or **molecular glue**) forms phosphodiester bond to join two DNA fragments. They repair the single stranded nicks in DNA double helix. In rDNA technology, they seal the nicks between adjacent nucleotides.

3.1.3.2. Blunt End Ligation

It is possible to transform any cohesive ends into blunt ends, by eliminating the protruding nucleotides using SI nuclease that will break the single stranded protruding DNA. The cohesive ends can also be transformed by filling in the single stranded ends by DNA polymerase. The blunt end ligation has a **disadvantage** that once ligated (using T_4 DNA ligase), the DNA cannot be detached and becomes less efficient.

3.1.3.3. Linkers and Adapters

The blunt end molecules can be ligated through single strands of synthetic oligonucleotides with previously formed restriction sequences. The ligation conditions remain the same as required by blunt ended ligation. Upon annealing to each other these single stranded linkers become ligated to the DNA ends. After ligation each end of DNA molecules carries several linkers. When treated with restriction endonuclease, the pieces of restricted linker are separated, and the linker terminated DNA is ready for ligation.

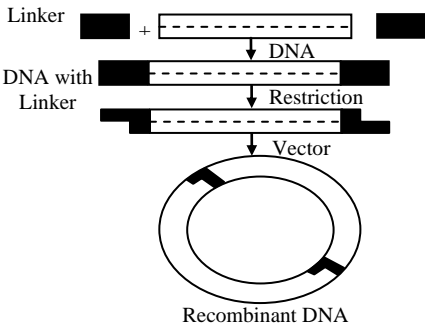


Figure 3.6: Use of Linkers

Adapters

Linkers and adapters resolve the problem of compatibility. Adapters are synthetic oligonucleotides of double stranded molecules. They have a blunt end on one side and a cohesive single strand tail on the other side.

3.1.3.4. Homopolymer Tailing

Oligonucleotide is attached to the end of a DNA strand through terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase in order to join the blunt ended molecules. This forms intermolecular bonds between the vector and insert. The reaction of terminal transferase adds a tail to blunt ended DNA with protruding hydroxyl terminus.

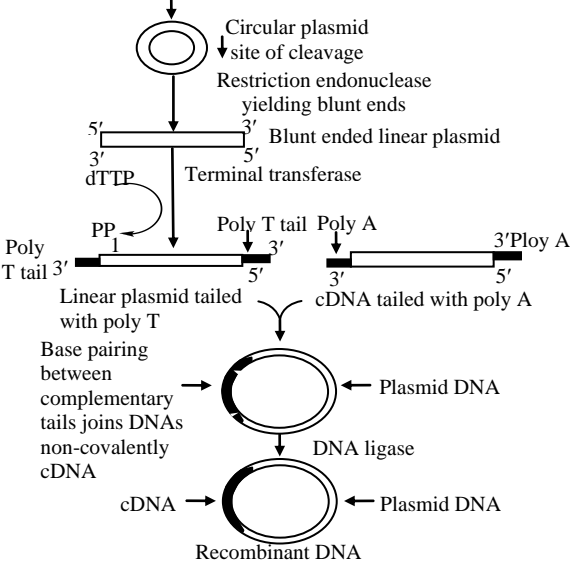


Figure 3.7: Homopolymer Tailing

Vector and inserts are separately treated with terminal transferase and dATP or TTP (**figure 3.7**). This builds up poly dA tails on one 3'-termini and poly T tails on the other. When these complementary tails are mixed, stable, hybrid molecules that can be used for transformation are produced. In the absence of ligation, the homopolymer tails result in a stable recombinant.

3.1.4. Study of Cloning Vectors

Cloning vector is a DNA molecule in which when a foreign DNA is integrated achieves the capability to replicate it within itself to produce many clones of recombinant DNA.

Characteristics of a Cloning Vector

- 1) Its size should be small.
- 2) It should bear the capability to self-replicate within the host cell.
- 3) It should carry a restriction site for the action of restriction endonuclease.
- 4) Its replication property should not be compromised by the insertion of donor DNA fragment.
- 5) To ease the identification of recombinant cell it should possess some marker gene.
- 6) It should bear multiple cloning sites.

3.1.4.1. Plasmids

Plasmids are naturally derived, extra chromosomal, double-stranded DNA molecules that replicate autonomously in bacterial cells. Their size ranges across a few thousand base pairs to more than 100 kilo-bases (kb).

Plasmid DNA forms replica prior to each cell division just as the host chromosomal DNA does. One copy of the plasmid DNA is divided into individual daughter cell during the cell division. This daughter cell propagates the plasmid through successive generations of the host cell. Plasmids mostly are circular; however, *Streptomyces* and *Borrelia burgdorferi* bacteria provide linear plasmids.

The naturally occurring plasmids bear genes that aid the host cells. **For example**, certain bacterial plasmids encode enzymes responsible for inactivating antibiotics; hence, a bacterial cell with such plasmid develops resistance to the antibiotic and is capable of replicating in antibiotic-rich environment; and if the same bacterium lacks the drug-resistant plasmid, it cannot survive. This property of plasmid favours them to act as cloning vectors.

Properties required in plasmids to serve as cloning vectors are:

- 1) Their isolation from the host cells should be easy.
- 2) They should possess a restriction site for one or more restriction enzyme(s).
- 3) Their replication properties should not be changed upon insertion of a linear foreign DNA at one end of the restriction sites.
- 4) They can be reintroduced into the host bacterial cells. Cells bearing plasmid with or without the insert should be identifiable.

Given below are some of the **examples** of plasmids:

- 1) **pBR Vector Plasmids:** The name **pBR** was derived from the name of its discoverer, i.e., **Bolivar** and **Rodriguez**. Modification of the former plasmids of *E. coli* (i.e., pBR318 and pBR320) produced pBR322 plasmid of 4362 bp length. Its origin of replication (ori) is derived from ColEI (a naturally occurring plasmid).

The pBR322 plasmid contains genes conferring resistance to antibiotics, like ampicillin (amp^r) and tetracycline (tet^r). More than 10 enzymes are present with distinctive cleavage sites on the pBR322 genome. The tetracycline resistant gene (tet^r) carry the target sites of these enzymes and the promoter of that gene carry sites for further two (ClaI and HindIII). In the amp^r gene, six specific restriction sites are present. With the help of these enzymes cloning in pBR322 causes insertional inactivation of either the amp^r or the tet^r markers. The host cells with recombinant plasmid grow in the medium either containing ampicillin or tetracycline but not both. Easy selection of recombinants is not favoured by cloning in other unique sites, since none of the antibiotic resistance determinants are inactivated.

The 3' tetra-nucleotide extensions formed upon digestion are ideal for terminal transferase; therefore the PstI site in the amp^r gene in pBR322 plasmid is important for cloning by the homopolymer tailing method. When cloning occurs at HindIII site of pBR322 plasmid, tetracycline resistance is lost. In certain recombinants however, tet^r is retained or increased as the HindIII site is present in the promoter rather than the coding sequence. Thus, the occurrence of insertional inactivation depends on whether or not the cloned DNA carries a promoter-like sequence that may initiate transcription of the tet^r gene.

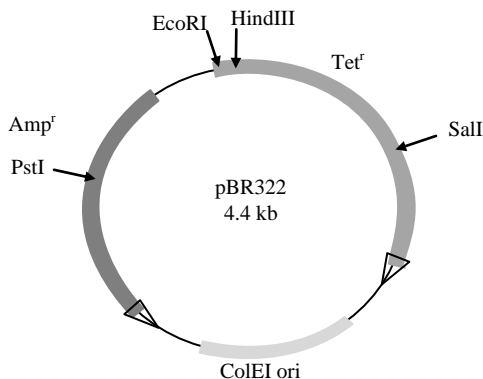


Figure 3.8: pBR322 Vector Plasmid

- 2) **pUC Vector Plasmids:** The name **pUC** stands for Plasmid University of California as these genetically modified plasmids were first developed in the University of California. **Advantages** of these plasmids as a vector for cloning are:
 - i) They are smaller in size but still can hold relatively large DNA inserts.
 - ii) In a host cell, pUC (like pUC18) can replicate to form 500 copies per cell, producing numerous clones or copies of inserted DNA fragments.

- iii) They bear an ampicillin resistance gene, and an origin of replication (derived from *E. coli* plasmid pBR322).
- iv) They bear a *lac Z* gene obtained from *E. coli*. In the *lac* region, many restriction enzyme sites, known as multiple cloning poly-linker sites have been engineered.
- v) They have a selection system to differentiate between recombinant (plasmid with inserted DNA fragment) and non-recombinant plasmids.

3.1.4.2. Bacteriophages

Bacteriophages (or phages) are viruses infecting bacterial cells and are used as cloning vectors. Since plasmids are small in size, they are used for single gene insertion with inserts not larger than about 2 kb. However, plasmids are avoided for cloning large DNA pieces (e.g., for genomic library preparation), since larger inserts make the plasmids unsuitable for transformation by expanding their size.

The bacteriophage has a linear DNA molecule that forms two fragments on a single break. A foreign DNA is used to join these fragments. The so produced chimeric phages can be isolated after allowing them to infect bacteria and collecting progeny particles after a lytic cycle. To optimise the insertion capacity, phage DNA has to be modified as per the purpose.

Bacteriophage λ as Vector

Bacteriophage λ (Lambda) is the broadly explored bacterial virus employed in DNA cloning. The λ phage virion (virus particle) bears a head containing viral DNA genome, and a tail that infects its host, the *E. coli* (figure 3.9).

The genome of a wild-type λ virion is a 50 kb linear double-stranded DNA packed within a protein coat. As the virion attaches to the host bacterial cell, the protein coat degrades and the DNA enters the cell.

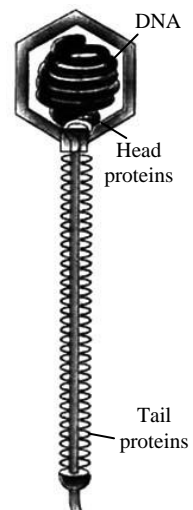


Figure 3.9: Structure of Bacteriophage λ

The extreme end of the λ DNA has overhanging 5' ends that are 12 nucleotides long. The se large 5' overhangs are sticky ends and form base pair. They are although similar to the small sticky ends formed by restriction nucleases but are more cohesive in nature, thus are named as **cos sequence**.

A double-stranded circular DNA is formed when the cos sequences enter the bacterial cell, forms base-pair and seal the nicks with cellular ligases. Thereafter, the λ DNA choose either of the **two alternative pathways**:

- 1) **The Lytic Cycle:** In this cycle, replication of the viral DNA occurs, firstly bi-directionally, and then as a rolling circle model making linear multi-mers of the virion. The λ multi-mers are trimmed at cos sites forming unit lengths of λ genomes packed in the synthesised coat protein. A few λ gene products cause lysis of the host cell wall, thus the virions escape and infect the new bacteria (figure 3.10).

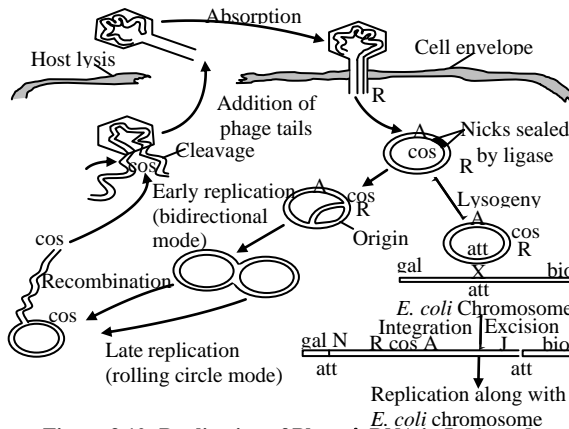


Figure 3.10: Replication of Phage λ DNA in Lytic and Lysogenic Cycles

- 2) **The Lysogenic Cycle:** An att gene present in the lambda genome contains a homolog in the *E. coli* chromosome. Recombination occurs between the λ and *E. coli* genomes by apposition of the two att genes. This integrates the λ DNA within the *E. coli* chromosome. Now the phage DNA is termed **provirus** and the host cell as **lysogen**. A central segment of the λ genome carries the genes controlling the lysogenic cycle of the phage.

Two regulatory and mutually antagonistic genes (i.e., *cl* and *cro*) decide whether the phage would enter the lytic or lysogenic cycle. The *cro* gene is dominant in the lytic state, and represses the *cl* gene; while the *cl* gene dominates in the lysogenic state and suppresses the transcription of some λ genes along with the *cro* gene. Generally, the lysogenic state prevails, and the phage genome replicates along the host chromosomal DNA.

The recombinant λ phages effectively transform the *E. coli* cells. This is possible with an *in vitro* packaging system similar to wild-type λ DNA packaging in a protein coat, thus causing high infection efficiency (**figure 3.11**). In this manner many cloning vectors are developed through modification in the λ phage genome.

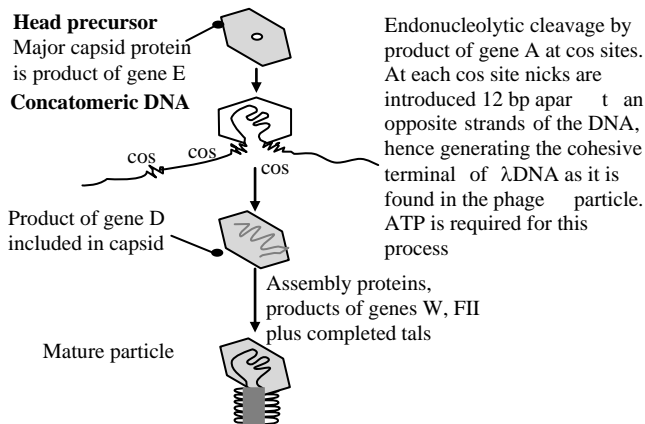


Figure 3.11: Packaging of Phage λ DNA into Phage Particles

3.1.4.3. Cosmids

Insertion of the cos sequence of a phage into a small plasmid vector produces cosmid vectors. The cos-sites allow the DNA to be packed in λ particle, thus the cosmids enable *in vitro* packaging of DNA in phage particle. This is useful in their selection and purification.

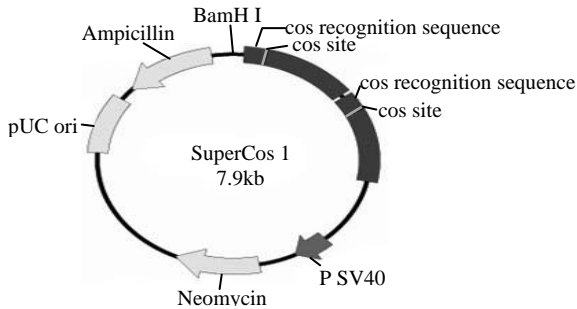


Figure 3.12: Cosmid

Similar to plasmids, the cosmids propagate in bacteria. The genes for lytic development are not carried by them. Use of cosmids for cloning is **advantageous** as they efficiently produce a complete genomic library of 10^6 – 10^7 clones from just 1 μ g of insert DNA. Cosmids have a **disadvantage** of unable to accept more than 40-50 kbp of DNA.

3.1.4.4. Phagemids

Like cosmid s, phagemid vectors are prepared artificially by combining the features of phages with plasmids (thus the name phagemids). The **characteristics** of phagemids are:

- 1) They contain multiple cloning sites.
- 2) They have an inducible lac promoter.
- 3) They bear an origin of replication (obtained from both phage and plasmid).

pBluescript IKS

It is 2961 bp long and is obtained from plasmid pUC19. The KS indicates the orientation of poly-linker to facilitate transcription of lac Z gene from the restriction site for KpnI to SacI. It is an artificial vector with multiple cloning sites flanked by T₃ and T₇ promoters. It has an inducible lac promoter (Lac I), upstream of lac Z site complementary with *E. coli* (lac Z⁻).

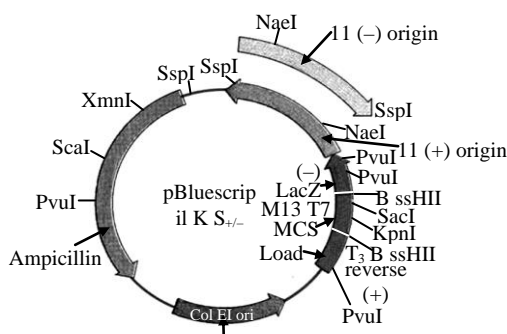


Figure 3.13: Phagemid pBluescript IKS^{+/–}

pBluescript IISKs is useful to select t chimeric vector through criterion of white colonies formed against blue colonies if no foreign DNA is ins erted. This vector has –fl (+) and fl (–) origin of replication derived from a filamentous phage responsible for sense (+) and antisense (–) strands of lac Z gene, upon co-infection of host with a helper phage; an origin of replication (ColEI ori) originated from plasmid used when helper phage is not present; an ampicillin-resistant gene for antibiotic selection of chimeric phagemid vectors (figure 3.13).

3.1.4.5. Vectors for Cloning Larger DNA Fragments

Human and other mammalian genomes are very large, therefore, vectors are needed to clone large DNA fragments. Many vectors have been prepared that aid in the characterisation and expression of large genes or gene complexes. These vectors exhibit varied cloning capacity (table 3.2).

Table 3.2: Maximum DNA Insert Possible with Different Cloning Vectors

Vectors	Hosts	Insert Size
λ phage	<i>E. coli</i>	5-15kb
λ cosmids	<i>E. coli</i>	35-45kb
P1 phage	<i>E. coli</i>	70-100kb
PACs	<i>E. coli</i>	100-300kb
BACs	<i>E. coli</i>	≤ 300kb
YACs	<i>Saccharomyces cerevisiae</i>	200-2000kb

Bacterial Artificial Chromosome (BAC) Vectors

Vectors used for DNA cloning in bacterial cells have high to moderate number of replicons. Greater number of DNA clones is formed by these vectors depending on the replication efficiency of its replicon.

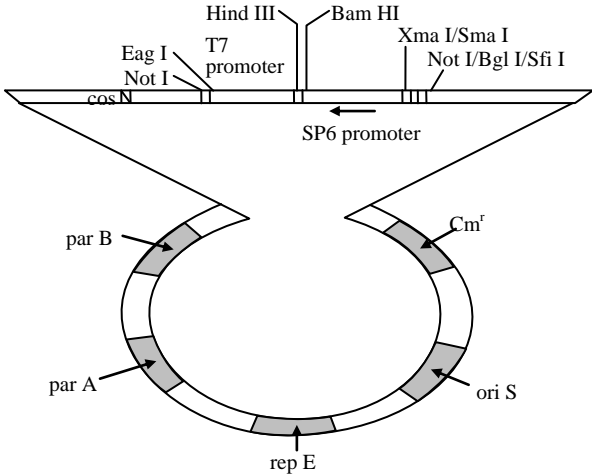


Figure 3.14: Structure of a BAC Vector Derived from A mini-F Plasmid. Its oriS and repE genes mediate the unidirectional replication of the F factor, while par A and par B maintain the copy number at a level of one or two per genome. Cm^r is the chloramphenicol resistance gene, cosN and loxP are the cleavage sites for λ terminase and P1 cre protein. HindIII and BamHI are cleavage sites for inserting foreign DNA.

Disadvantage regarding these vectors is structural instability of the inserts, causing deletion or rearrangement of a segment of cloned DNA. This is observed in DNA inserts of eukaryotic origin where repetitive sequences frequently occur. Hence, cloning and maintaining large DNA in bacterial cells is not easy.

This limitation is however overcome by vectors with low copy number of replicons. An **example** is a vector prepared from the *E. coli* fertility plasmid or the F-factor. It has two genes (par A and B) to sustain the copy number for F - factor at 1-2 per *E. coli* cell.

This vector accepts large foreign DNA fragment (>300kb). Thus, the recombinant vector can be transferred into bacterial cells through electroporation method (in which cells are exposed to high voltage to relax selective permeability of the plasma membrane). Such vectors provide a low yield of recombinant DNA from the host cells (**figure 3.14**).

Bacteriophage P1 and P1-derived Artificial Chromosome (PAC) Vectors

Certain bacteriophages carry large genomes and hold larger DNA fragments. An **example** is bacteriophage P1 that packages linear DNA (110 -115kb) in P1 protein coat. The P1 cloning vectors are prepared from components of P1 phage provided in a circular plasmid.

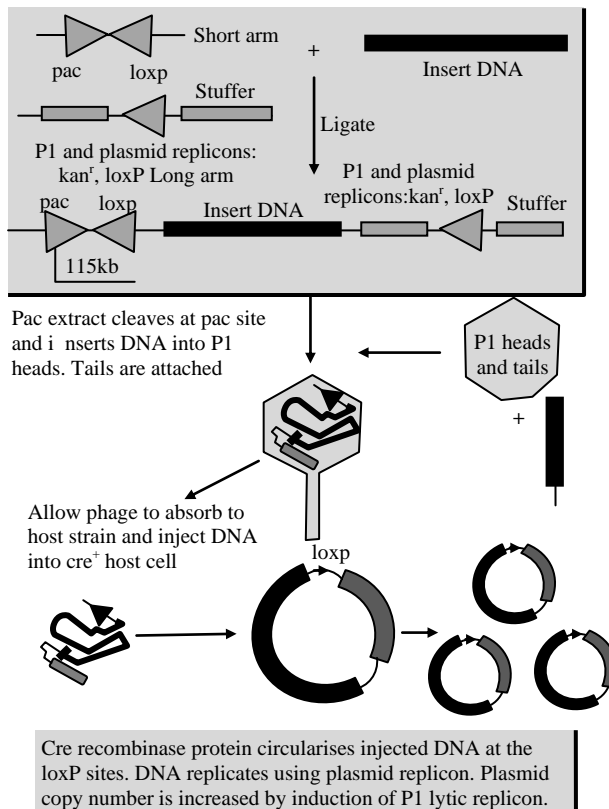


Figure 3.15: Phage P1 Vector System. The P1 Vector Ad10 is Digested to Generate Short and Long Vector Arms

The plasmid vector when cleaved generates two vector arms that allow *in vitro* ligation and packaging of ~100kb of foreign DNA into a P1 protein coat. This recombinant P1 phage is then adsorbed onto a suitable host, and then the recombinant P1 DNA is injected into the cell, circularised and amplified (**figure 3.15**). Employing bacteriophage T₄ *in vitro* packaging system with P1 vectors aid in the recovery of inserts (of around 122kb). The features of P1 and F'-factor systems when assembled together develop P1-derived Artificial Chromosome (PAC) cloning system.

Yeast Artificial Chromosome (YAC) Vectors

Yeast artificial chromosomes are advantageous in cloning of bacterial cells as it can clone very large DNA fragments.

A YAC has the following **features**:

- 1) At each end of YAC a yeast telomere (TEL) is present.
- 2) In order to facilitate regulated segregation during mitosis, a yeast centromere sequence (CEN) is present.
- 3) Each arm has a selectable marker to detect the YAC in yeast (**for example**, TRP1 and URA3 for tryptophan and uracil independence in trp1 and ura3 mutant strains respectively).
- 4) To allow the replication of vector in a yeast cell, an origin of replication ARS (Autonomously Replicating Sequence) is present.
- 5) For inserting foreign DNA, restriction sites unique to the YAC are present (**figure 3.16**). To have a successful cloning, a restriction enzyme is used to cut a circular YAC in multiple cloning sites and another restriction enzyme is used to cut between the two TELs ; thus, the left and right arms are formed. The DNA with high molecular weight is ligated to the two arms.

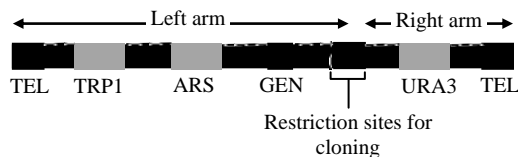


Figure 3.16: Structure of Yeast Artificial Chromosome (YAC) Cloning Vector. It contains a telomere (TEL) at each end, a yeast centromere sequence (CEN), a yeast selectable marker for each arm (TRP and URA3), a sequence that allows autonomous replication in yeast (ARS) and restriction sites for cloning

The transfection of so produced YAC into yeast cells cannot be achieved directly. So yeast cells are treated appropriately to eradicate the external cell wall. The yeast spheroplasts obtained accept the exogenous fragments, and are yet osmotically unstable and thus embedded in agar.

3.1.4.6. Vectors for Preparing Single-Stranded DNA

For conventional DNA sequencing, templates of single-stranded DNAs are used. PCR-based methods can be employed to manufacture them. Also vectors based on certain bacteriophages whose genomes assume a single-stranded DNA at some stages in their life-cycle can be used.

M₁₃ Bacteriophage

M₁₃ is a filamentous bacteriophage. Its genomes bear single -stranded circular DNA (~6.4kb long), associated to each other in DNA sequence. A protein coat covers the genomes forming a long filamentous form. The single -stranded form of genome of the phage converts into a double stranded or replicative form in the host cell after getting adsorbed on the host *E. coli*.

Later a phage genome product triggers DNA synthesis to obtain single-stranded DNA, which is surrounded by a protein coat and migrates towards the cell membrane. Likewise many mature phage particles are extruded from the host cell without lysis.

M₁₃ Vectors

M₁₃ vectors are synthesized by double -stranded replicative form with multiple cloning sites that can produce double -stranded recombinant DNA circles. These vectors transfect the host, *E. coli*. Later the phage particles are harvested, and their protein coat is removed to liberate the single -stranded recombinant DNA. These DNA serves as templates for DNA sequencing.

3.1.4.7. Expression Vectors

There are many conditions where apart from amplification and propagation of the cloned DNA, expression of the gene is also needed. For this, the cloning system should provide appropriate expression signals. Various expression cloning vectors have been designed for use in different host cell systems, i.e., bacterial and mammalian cells.

An **ideal expression vector** to be used for producing bioactive molecules should have the following **features**:

- 1) It should have a high plasmid stability.
- 2) The plasmids should not exert any harmful effects on the host.
- 3) Vector re-arrangements and deletions should occur at low frequency.
- 4) The plasmids should transform cells at high frequency.
- 5) The expression vector should be capable of incorporating and maintaining large quantities of foreign DNA.
- 6) Recovery of the intact plasmid from the transformed cell should be easy.
- 7) The copy number for high level expression of genes should be high.
- 8) Large varieties of host should be available.
- 9) The transcriptional and translational elements should show compatibility with the host organisms.

The expression vectors comprise of a **strong promoter** (which is subjected to external conditions of temperature), the level of **specific inducer** or **repressor**, and a **ribosomal binding site sequence**. In the vector a restriction site is incorporated where the gene to be expressed is inserted. The origin of replication and a marker gene resistant to antibiotic are also incorporated. Expression vectors are made using a few promoters, namely, lambda PL promoter, lac Z promoter, trp promoter, and lac promoter. Each of these promoters has been incorporated in different vector systems, regulated by their corresponding repressors.

By placing the inserted gene in the expression vector in correct phase with respect to initiation codon, the correct polypeptide product can be obtained. However, the eukaryotic proteins within the prokaryotic cells are not always stable, and thus the proteins should be protected using vectors which contain a prokaryotic structural gene so that it will be expressed. This results in a hybrid polypeptide, in which the part of the prokaryotic product is attached to the N-terminus of the foreign polypeptide. This extra sequence at the N-terminus stabilises the polypeptide.

General Design Features of an Expression Vector

To simplify manipulation, plasmids are mainly preferred to construct an expression vector. Plasmids have been modified to incorporate control elements [such as strong promoters, efficient ribosome binding site (rbs), multi-restriction insertion sequences, and terminator sequence] intended for high level expression of inserted target gene. The genes for origin of replication (ori) and for selectable markers (antibiotic resistance) were also retained.

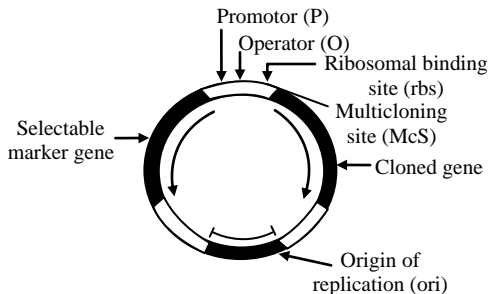


Figure 3.17: An Expression Vector

This expression vector includes multi-cloning short segment (McS) that encodes several restriction sites where foreign gene coding segments are to be inserted. Initiation codon (ATG) is positioned downstream from rbs. This excludes the inclusion of rbs and initiation codon on insert segment. Prokaryotes do not have these sequences. Downstream McS is a strong transcription terminator signals sequences.

3.1.5. Identification and Isolation of Recombinant Genes

Detecting a desired recombinant clone from different clones of cells each containing a DNA segment from the source material, is difficult. This is because the desired gene may be present in only one or a few clones. Identification of a cloned gene for the desired protein depends on the use of protein sequence information in the assay for the gene, the biological activity of the gene product, or specific antibodies detecting the presence of gene product.

3.1.5.1. Colony Hybridisation (or Nucleic Acid Hybridisation) by Replica Plate Method

The replica plate method is used in genetic engineering for identifying transformed bacterial cells (i.e., cells containing foreign DNA). Only some of the cells transformed with a specific DNA may actually have foreign DNA. Thus, it is essential to screen those cells having foreign DNA by the technique of colony hybridisation (only for bacterial cells) (figure 3.18). A similar technique named **plaque hybridisation** is used for screening transformed bacteriophages.

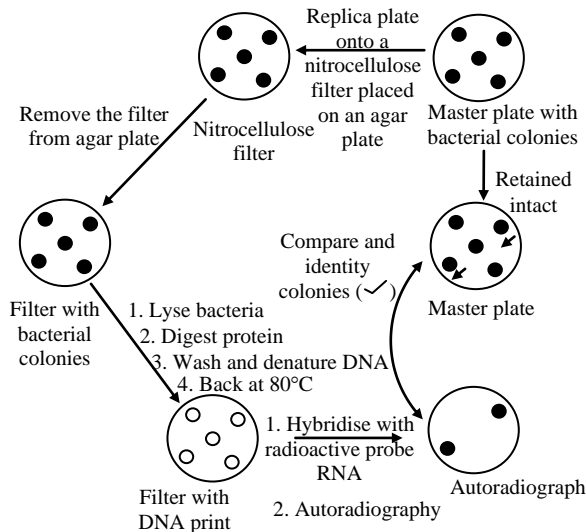


Figure 3.18: Steps in Colony Hybridisation Technique

The principle of colony hybridisation involves in-situ hybridisation of transformed bacterial cells with a radioactive probe sequence. Due to the specificity of probe, a single colony can be rapidly identified (through radioactivity) amongst thousands of colonies.

3.1.5.2. Hybrid Released Translation (HRT) Method

The HRT method is utilised for recombinants without introns. The most difficult step in applying hybridisation is obtaining a suitable probe. If the target DNA is represented with highly abundant mRNA, a small number of cDNA clones can be screened and the target gene can be identified by sequencing or hybrid released translation.

In HRT, the mRNA is hybridised to membrane bound cDNA. After washing with unbound mRNA, the bound mRNA is released and used in translation (*in vitro*). The translation products obtained are analysed by polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis. The cDNA clones can now be correlated with their protein product, and used as probes for isolating the recombinant target gene.

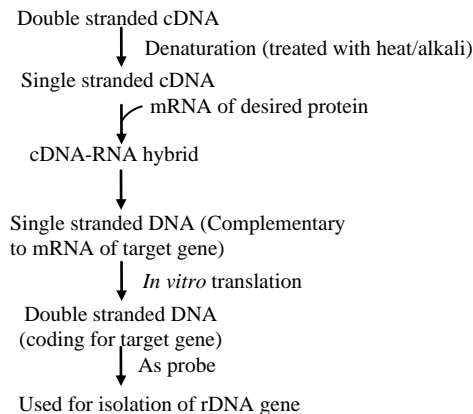


Figure 3.19: Hybrid Released Translation

3.1.5.3. Immunochemical Detection

Immunochemical detection relies on the ability of the desired gene to produce its protein; however, in this method the presence of protein is detected by a specific antibody (and not by an assay for biological activity). There are many gene cloning procedures in which eukaryotic genes are identified in prokaryotic hosts by antibody recognition; while immunochemical detection involves challenging the fixed cells lysate with a primary antibody and then exposing to a labelled secondary antibody.

In this method, the primary antibody is bound to a polyvinyl sheet, on which the lysed, antigen-producing colonies or plaques are replica plated. The polyvinyl sheet is then exposed to labelled secondary antibody, which although is specific for the same antigen as the primary, but binds to different epitope. Colonies in which the target genes are produced are identified by autoradiography or by a colour change.

3.1.6. Expression of Cloned Gene Within the Host

To express a cloned gene (for a desired product) in a transformed cell means that it has to transcript and translate. Sometimes functional proteins are produced by post-translation modifications. Protein synthesis is based on the encoded information in the sequence of the DNA strand bases. Structural gene directs the cells machinery for sequential linear arrangements of linear amino acid units to form a particular protein. Base sequences lying adjacent to the structural genes, control expression.

In prokaryotes and eukaryotes, the mechanism of transcription and translation is the same, but control signals are different. Many eukaryotic genes having coding and non-coding sequences (i.e., exons/introns), were transcribed (but not expressed). This mRNA processed, before its release from nucleus, is made up of exons. Proper expression of a cloned eukaryotic gene in bacteria can be done only if the gene lacks introns. The generation of cDNA to remove introns would also remove the upstream sites.

Also, the eukaryotic transcript would not carry rbs; therefore, eukaryotic genes should be supplied at minimum a prokaryotic promoter and rbs for expression. Many prokaryotic operon genes are organised in inducible or repressible groups of related genes whose expression is regulated co-ordinately. The controlling element in the expression of these groups is the operator, which is a sequence between the start of the gene and the promoter. When expression is turned off, a specific repressor protein binds to the operator site and prevents transcription.

3.1.7. Techniques Used In Recombinant DNA Technology

In recombinant DNA technology, many different techniques are used to achieve different requirements or to obtain proper information so that an exact inference can be drawn out during genetic engineering. Gel electrophoresis, blotting techniques, dot-blot hybridisation, DNA sequencing, artificial gene synthesis, polymerase chain reaction, colony hybridisation, etc. are some of the important techniques used.

3.1.7.1. Gel Electrophoresis

Gel electrophoresis involves separation of charged molecules (in aqueous phase) under the influence of an electrical field so that the molecules move on the gel towards the oppositely charged electrode, i.e., the cations move towards the negative electrode (anode) and anions move towards the positive electrode (cathode).

The genomic DNA is obtained from the desired host and then fragmented with restriction endonucleases. Gel electrophoresis is used for separating these cut fragments and isolating the desired DNA fragment. Agarose gel is most commonly used for separating the large segments of DNA, while the small DNA fragments (only a few base pairs long) are separated using polyacrylamide gel.

In gel electrophoresis, a buffer system is used which is a gel medium and a source of direct current. Samples having DNA fragments are applied on the gel and current is passed through for desired time period. Under the influence of the current applied, the DNA fragments move up to different distances on the gel on the basis of their charge to mass ratio. The heavier DNA fragments travel a smaller distance, while the lighter ones travel a larger distance. After the migration of molecules, the gel is treated with certain stains so that the location of the separated molecules can be detected in the form of bands.

3.1.7.2. Blotting Techniques

Blotting is the transfer of macromolecules from the gel to the surface of an immobilising membrane. During this transfer, the bands of macromolecules on the membrane appear on the same positions as those on the gel. Nitrocellulose membrane, nylon membrane, carboxymethyl membrane, diazobenzyl -oxymethyl (DBM) membranes, etc. are the **examples** of some immobilising membranes which may be used in blotting.

Blot transfer technique is of three basic types, i.e., **Southern blotting**, **Northern blotting**, and **Western blotting**. Southern blotting is named after **E.M. Southern** (who developed this technique in **1975**), and is used for transferring DNA from gel onto the membrane. Northern and Western blotting techniques are used for transferring RNA and protein bands, respectively. **South-western blotting** is another blotting technique which is used for examining the protein-DNA interactions.

3.1.7.3. Dot Blot Hybridisation

The procedure of dot blot hybridisation is nearly the same as blotting technique, with the only difference that the DNA fragments are separated by directly applying them as dots on the nitrocellulose membrane (instead of electrophoresis). Thereafter, the radioactively labelled DNA probes having the complementary base sequences to the desired DNA are applied on this membrane for its hybridisation. The position of this hybridisation is detected by autoradiography.

3.1.7.4. PCR (Polymerase Chain Reaction)

PCR technique discovered by **Kary Mullis in 1985** is important in molecular biology (**figure 3.20**). It is employed for the amplification (or cloning) of a target DNA sequence. Sometimes it is also referred to as ***in vitro* gene cloning** (without expression of that gene) as it is carried out *in vitro*. Around billion copies of the target DNA sequence can be obtained from a single copy within few hours only using PCR.

PCR results in selective amplification of a selected DNA molecule. It has a limitation that the border region sequences of the DNA to be amplified should be known so that the appropriate primers can be selected to be annealed (attached) at its 3' ends. Primer annealing is important as the DNA polymerase enzyme requires double stranded (ds) primer regions for initiating DNA synthesis.

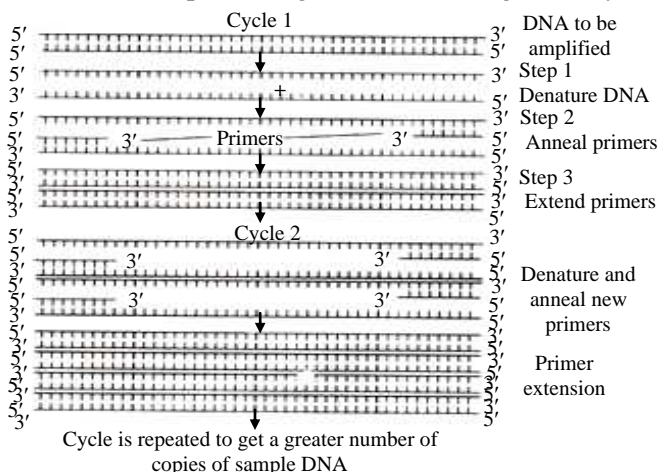


Figure 3.20: Polymerase Chain Reaction (PCR)

The PCR reaction takes place in eppendorf tube. The technique is used by the scientists in various disciplines since it is a quick, simple and extremely accurate technique. The major **limitation** of PCR is that being highly sensitive it may produce inaccurate results caused by several inhibitors or contaminating DNA segments that may be present in the sample DNA preparation.

Main Requirements of PCR

- 1) Two nucleotide primers complementary to 3' ends of target DNA strands,
- 2) Target DNA sequence,
- 3) A heat stable DNA polymerase, **e.g.**, Taq polymerase,
- 4) Deoxy Adenosine Triphosphate (dATP),
- 5) Deoxy Thymidine Triphosphate (dTTP),
- 6) Deoxy Cytidine Triphosphate (dCTP),
- 7) Deoxy Guanosine Triphosphate (dGTP), and
- 8) A thermal cycler in which PCR is carried out.

Steps in PCR

- 1) The target DNA sequence, excess of primers, dATP, dTTP, dCTP, dGTP, and Taq polymerase are mixed together in eppendorf tube, and the tube is placed in thermal cycler.

- 2) The reaction mixture is provided with high temperature (90 -98°C) for a few seconds for denaturing the DNA. Consequently, the double stranded DNA becomes single stranded.
- 3) Temperature is lowered to 55°C for 20 seconds so that the primers are annealed at 3' ends of DNA.
- 4) Temperature is now maintained at 72°C for 30 seconds to facilitate the functioning of Taq polymerase and to synthesise the complementary strand of DNA.
- 5) One cycle of PCR completes resulting in the formation of two ds DNA molecules from one ds DNA.
- 6) The same cycle is repeated to obtain the required number of DNA copies.

Uses of PCR

- 1) For DNA amplification,
- 2) For detecting mutations,
- 3) For diagnosing genetic disorders,
- 4) For producing *in vitro* mutations,
- 5) For preparing DNA for sequencing,
- 6) For analysing genetic defects in single cells from human embryos,
- 7) For identifying virus and bacteria in infectious diseases, and
- 8) For characterisation of genotypes.

3.1.8. Applications of rDNA Technology and Genetic Engineering in Medicine

Genetic engineering has an important role to play in the production of medicines. Microorganisms and plant -based substances are used for producing various drugs, vaccines, enzymes, and hormones at low costs. Genetic engineering involves the study of inheritance pattern of diseases in man and collection of human genes that provide a complete map for inheritance of healthy individuals.

Vaccines

Recombinant DNA technology is used for producing vaccines against diseases by isolating antigen or protein present on the surface of viral particles. Vaccines contain a form of an infectious organism that does not cause disease but allow the body immune system to form antibodies against the infective organism.

When an individual receives vaccination against any viral disease, the antigens produce antibodies to act against and inactivate the viral proteins. The scientists with the help of recombinant DNA technology have transferred the genes for some viral sheath proteins to vaccinia virus which was used against small pox. Vaccines produced by gene cloning are non -contaminated and safe as they contain only coat proteins against which antibodies are produced. Vaccines against viral hepatitis influenza, herpes simplex virus, virus -induced foot and mouth disease in animals are being produced by gene cloning.

Hormones

Insulin was commercially produced in 1982 through biogenetic or recombinant DNA technology. Its medicinal use was approved by Food and Drug Administration (FDA) of the USA in the same year. The human insulin gene has been cloned in large quantities in *E. coli* bacterium that can be used for synthesising insulin.

Humulin is the commercially available genetically engineered insulin.

Lymphokines

Lymphokines are proteins regulating the immune system in human body. **α -**

Interferon is an **example** of lymphokines that is used to fight viral diseases (such as hepatitis, herpes, and common cold) and cancer. Such drugs can be manufactured in large quantities in bacterial cell. Lymphokines are also helpful in AIDS. **Interleukin-II** is a commercially available genetically engineered substance that stimulates the multiplication of lymphocytes.

Somatostatin

Somatostatin is used in some of the growth related abnormalities. This drug appears to be species specific and the polypeptide obtained from other mammals has no effect on human, hence it is extracted from the hypothalamus of cadavers. Genetic engineering has helped in the chemical synthesis of gene which is joined to the pBR 322 plasmid DNA and cloned into a bacterium. This transformed bacterium is converted into somatostatin synthesising factory.

Production of Blood Clotting Factors

Blockage of coronary arteries by cholesterol or blood clots causes heart attack. Plasminogen is a substance found in blood clots. Genetically engineered tissue Plasminogen Activator (tPA) enzyme is used to dissolve these clots in individuals who have suffered heart attacks.

Cancer

Antibodies cloned from a single source and targeted for a specific antigen (monoclonal antibodies) have proved useful in the treatment of cancer. Monoclonal antibodies have been targeted with radioactive elements or cytotoxins (e.g., Ricin from castor seed) to make them more deadly. Such antibodies seek cancer cells and kill them with their radioactivity or toxin.

3.1.9. Application of rDNA Technology and Genetic Engineering in the Production of Interferon

Interferons are low molecular weight proteins produced by virus infected cells, which in non-infected cells can induce the formation of a second protein. This protein has the ability to prevent transcription of any viral mRNA produced in that cell. Interferons exhibit antiviral activity, antiproliferative activity, and many effects on the immune system. Interferons on the basis of their source, biological, physicochemical and antigenic properties are grouped into the following **three classes**

- 1) IFN- α (leukocytes),
- 2) IFN- β (fibroblasts), and
- 3) IFN- γ (immune).

IFN- α can be effectively used in the treatment of some melanomas and renal cell cancers, while IFN- β can be used in solid tumours. Trials of IFN- γ have proved it a potential stimulator of the immune system with enhanced anti-tumour properties. IFN- α with 865 nucleotide (166 amino acids) sequences and IFN- β with 836 nucleotide sequences can be expressed in *E. coli*. The genomic DNA sequences of both IFN- α and IFN- β lack introns; while IFN- γ codes for 146 amino acids and include introns. Production of interferons encoded by DNA sources involves the synthesis of cDNA to the mRNA isolated from a cell line, tissue or organ followed by screening and selection of cDNA clone.

Synthesis of interferon gene can also be done chemically if the sequence of the gene encoding that particular interferon is known. Thus, a variety of interferon molecules, i.e., IFN- α (IFN- α_1 , IFN- α_2 , IFN- α_A , IFN- α_B , IFN- α_C), IFN- β and IFN- γ , can be produced. Synthetic genes have the advantage over the natural gene sequence for high level expression in microorganisms.

IFN synthesis in bacteria depends on the transcription of genes to mRNA and translation of mRNA to produce the protein. Transcription requires suitable promoters, adjacent operator region, ribosome binding site, and a start or initiation codon. In additional processes, the primary translated IFN is manipulated to functionally active IFN, i.e., the signal sequence is removed and glycosylated in case of IFN- β and IFN- γ . Intramolecular disulphide bridges are essential for the biological activity of IFN- α and IFN- β .

Human IFN- α

Synthesis of IFN- α_1 gene involves assembly of 67 oligonucleotide fragments to give a double stranded molecule, in which each strand contains 514 base pairs. Natural gene sequence obtained by cDNA prepared from 125 fractions of mRNA from IFN producing human leukocytes can be cloned in *E. coli* using pBR322 vector. The cDNA inserted in the β -lactamase gene at the PstI site expresses a fusion protein. An mRNA hybridisation translation assay is used for identifying the cDNA clone containing an IFN- α .

The colonies are screened using ^{32}P -labelled 320 bp PstI fragments as probe. Constructed plasmids can be used for synthesising IFN molecules fused to β -lactamase. Biologically active material hybrid with the IFN gene in three different reading frames can be produced. The various molecules of human IFN- α are expressed in *E. coli*, utilising different promoter or construct expression systems (i.e., β -lactamase, trip, lac UV5, lac, etc.).

Human myeloblastoid line KG-1 also serve as a source of mRNA for IFN coding sequences. A gene coding for a complete IFN- α_A can be isolated after the formation of double stranded cDNA and cloning in *E. coli*. Inserting this gene in a plasmid vector (containing a part of the trp operon) results in a biologically active fusion product of amino acid and IFN- α_A .

Human IFN- β

In an approach to form mRNA from cDNA, production of human IFN- β involves insertion of cDNA into pBR 322, followed by transformation into *E. coli*. Identification follows hybridisation to cDNA, enriched for IFN- β -containing sequences. The cDNAs hybridising to total mRNA (containing sequence for human IFN- β) are isolated. Various molecules of human IFN- β in *E. coli* cloned from cDNA are expressed by incorporating various promoters or expression systems (i.e., lac or trp).

Human IFN- γ

The DNA fragment encoding IFN- γ with a sequence coded for a polypeptide of 166 amino acids (of which 20 constitutes signal sequence) can be produced from mRNA to cDNA approach. Bacterial clones can be screened from cDNA library by using 32-labelled cDNA probe prepared from either induced or unstimulated peripheral blood lymphocytes. cDNA can be expressed by transforming the fragment containing vector to *E. coli*. A restriction site at codon -4 of the mature coding sequence is used for cleaving the signal peptide. Two synthetic oligonucleotides are induced for restoring the codons or amino acids 1-4, incorporating an initiation codon ATG, with a restriction site cohesive terminus for joining a trp promoter. The product contains only a single gene, cross hybridising with IFN- γ -cDNA sequence.

Since the genomic DNA contains three introns, it cannot be expressed directly in prokaryotes; rather can be expressed from cDNA sequence in yeast cells and higher eukaryotic cells [like Ap⁸ monkey cells, Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO cell line)]. Chemically synthesised gene for IFN- γ can be expressed in *E. coli* from a lac UV₅ promoter. Anti IFN- γ serum can be used for neutralising antiviral cell lysate. IFNs can be purified by High Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC) or reverse phase liquid chromatography.

3.1.10. Application of rDNA Technology and Genetic Engineering in the Production of Hepatitis Vaccine

The Recombivax HB (Merck) is a hepatitis B vaccine and one of the most significant developments in recombinant DNA technology field. This vaccine comprises of highly specific antibodies. Hepatitis causes a severe acute infection that ultimately results in chronic infection and permanent liver damage. It is caused by Hepatitis B Virus (HBV) which is an enveloped and double-stranded DNA virus. Hepatitis B infection can be prevented with a vaccine made using recombinant DNA technology.

In **figure 3.22**, the steps followed in the **production of Hepatitis B vaccine** using recombinant DNA technology are enlisted:

- 1) The DNA (genetic material) of the hepatitis virus is extracted. At this stage the surface proteins incite an immune response.
- 2) The individual genes are analysed and identified.
- 3) The specific gene which directs production of surface protein is located.

- 4) The gene is then removed from the viral DNA and inserted into the plasmid.
- 5) The plasmids are accurately inserted into the corresponding yeast cells.
- 6) This cell is then allowed to grow via fermentation. Thus, the cells reproduce and generate more quanta of surface proteins.
- 7) After 2 days the yeast cells are ruptured to release the surface proteins.
- 8) The resulting mixture is processed to extract and purify the surface proteins.
- 9) A large amount of pure surface proteins are obtained which provoke an immune response.
- 10) The resulting surface proteins are mixed with other ingredients under optimum conditions to obtain the vaccine.

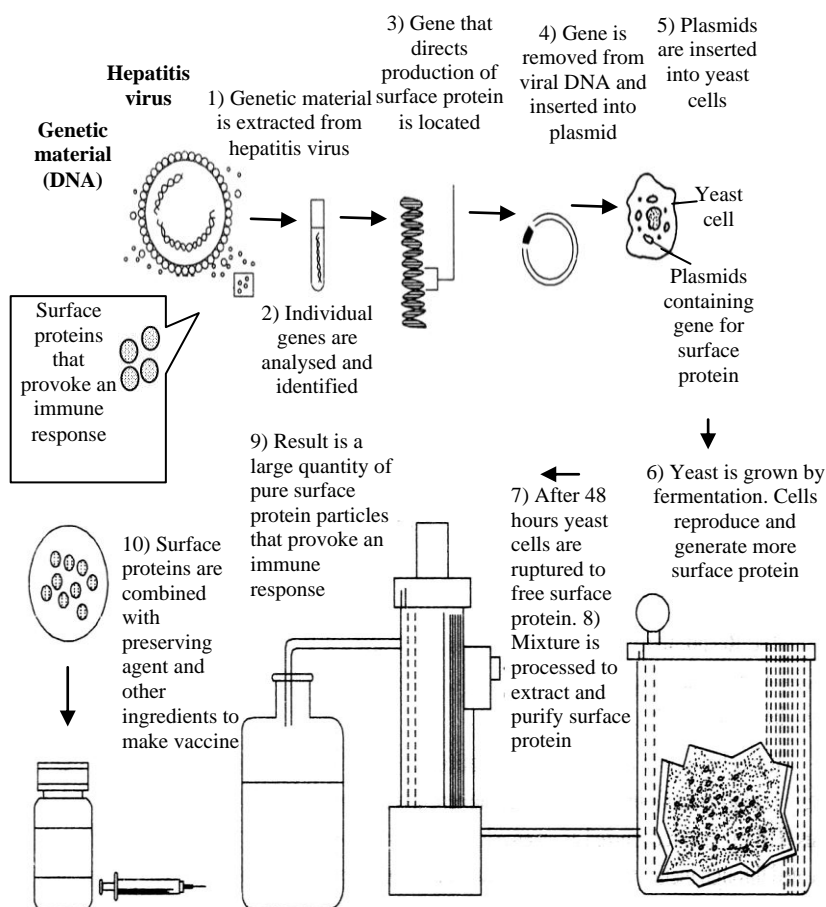


Figure 3.21: Production of Hepatitis B Vaccine

Source: Adapted from *Remington: The Science and Practice of Pharmacy* Volume I (20th ed.), by Alfonso G. (2000), (Lippincott Williams & Wilkins).

Antigenic Markers for HBV-Infection

The following three antigenic markers have been identified for the HBV infection:

- 1) **HBsAg:** It is a surface antigen found on the viral envelope. It represents one of the earliest marks and appears in the blood during incubation.

- 2) **HBeAg:** It is obtained from the prote in capsid surrounding the DNA. It is a marker for causing active infection.
- 3) **HBc:** It is a core antigen which does not circulate in the blood, and stimulates the production of the primary antibodies against HBV. These antibodies are not protective, and hence, do not provide immunity.

3.1.11. Application of rDNA Technology and Genetic Engineering in the Production of Insulin

Human insulin was the first recombinant -derived product. It is used for the treatment of diabetes. **Fredrick Sanger** and his co-worker identified the insulin structure stating that it is made up of two polypeptide chains of A and B with a total 51 amino acid units (i.e., 21 in A -chain and 30 in B -chain) held by disulphide cross bridges.

Insulin was produced by the chemical synthesis of genes, i.e., chains A and B. Both the chains were separately cloned and attached to β -galactosidase, resulting in the synthesis of a fusion polypeptide that is relatively stable in *E. coli*. Two bacterial strains were created, each producing a fused protein with A and B chains. The genes synthesised lacked promoters. To express the cloned genes into functional protein, a gene is cloned into a plasmid vector close to the bacterial promoter.

A synthetic gene lacks ribosomal binding site, therefore, the gene should be inserted downstream from a promoter and ribosomal binding site of the vector. During the production of synthetic genes, a signal sequences are to be cloned with additional 15 -30 amino acids at the N -terminus. These sequences have a central core of hydrophobic amino acids lined with polar or hydrophilic residues. While passing through the membrane, the signal sequence is cleaved off. The synthetic gene does not contain any methionine residue (initiation codon), thus it is constructed by incorporating methionine residue at the junction of fusion peptide. The accurate insulin can be obtained by cleaving the methionine residue with cyanogen bromide, purifying, and then linking the two chains chemically *in vitro* (figure 3.22).

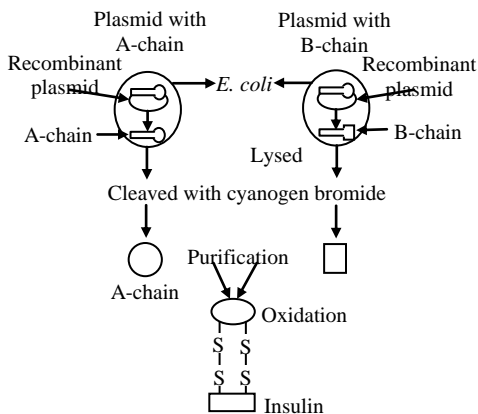


Figure 3.22: Production of Human Insulin

In another approach to obtain insulin, the gene for precursor molecule was constructed synthetically. The proinsulin gene is cloned to produce a β -galactosidase proinsulin hybrid protein. The proinsulin is chemically cleaved from β -galactosidase with cyanogen bromide. Then *in vitro* proteolytic digestion with trypsin cleaves out amino acids (c-chain) in the middle of the molecule to obtain insulin. The quality assurance of the recombinant insulin involves purity and identity tests.

The insulin obtained from bacterial cell should be identical to human insulin. By sequencing the cloned cDNA, the accuracy of the nucleotide sequence can be established. The primary structure of insulin can be determined from the quantitative amino acid data, and its purity can be established by HPLC.

3.2. SUMMARY

The details given in the chapter can be summarised as follows:

- 1) A **clone** refers to a group of cells or organisms obtained from one progenitor.
- 2) The very first step in **rDNA technology** is selecting a desired DNA segment for cloning.
- 3) Restriction endonuclease enzymes aid in cutting the DNA molecules at specific sites.
- 4) In **1970s**, **Meselson** and **Yuan** isolated the first true restriction endonuclease enzyme from the bacterium *E. coli*.
- 5) **Type-I Restriction Endonucleases** includes complex endonucleases, and cut one strand of DNA only.
- 6) **Type-II Restriction Endonucleases** are most stable and are significant for gene cloning and rDNA technology.
- 7) **Type-III Restriction Endonucleases** are intermediate enzymes between Type-I and Type-II restriction endonuclease.
- 8) Expressing the DNA of a eukaryotic cell into a prokaryotic cell is difficult since both the cells vary in gene organisation and regulation.
- 9) Mechanical shearing forms random fragments of DNA.
- 10) DNA ligase (or **molecular glue**) forms phosphodiester bond to join two DNA fragments.
- 11) **Adapters** are synthetic oligonucleotides of double stranded molecules.
- 12) **Plasmids** are naturally derived, extra chromosomal, double-stranded DNA molecules that replicate autonomously in bacterial cells.
- 13) **Bacteriophages** (or phages) are viruses infecting bacterial cells and are used as cloning vectors.
- 14) Insertion of the cos sequence of a phage into a small plasmid vector produces cosmid vectors.

- 15) **Yeast artificial chromosomes** are advantageous in cloning of bacterial cells as it can clone very large DNA fragments.
- 16) **Plaque hybridisation** is used for **screening transformed bacteriophages**.
- 17) The most difficult step in applying hybridisation is obtaining a suitable probe.
- 18) **Protein synthesis** is based on the encoded information in the sequence of the DNA strand bases.
- 19) Gel electrophoresis involves separation of charged molecules (in aqueous phase) under the influence of an electrical field.
- 20) **Blotting** is the transfer of macromolecules from the gel to the surface of an immobilising membrane.
- 21) Blot transfer technique is of three basic types, i.e., **Southern blotting**, **Northern blotting**, and **Western blotting**.
- 22) Northern and Western blotting techniques are used for transferring RNA and protein bands, respectively.
- 23) **PCR technique** is employed for the amplification (or cloning) of a target DNA sequence.

3.3. EXERCISE

3.3.1. True or False

- 1) Restriction endonuclease enzymes aid in joining the DNA molecules at specific sites.
- 2) A clone refers to a group of cells or organisms obtained from one progenitor.
- 3) Plaque hybridisation is used for screening transformed bacteriophages.
- 4) Mechanical shearing forms random fragments of RNA.
- 5) Insertion of the cos sequence of a phage into a small plasmid vector produces phagemids.

3.3.2. Fill in the Blanks

- 6) Blotting is the transfer of _____ from the gel to the surface of an immobilising membrane.
- 7) _____ technique is employed for the amplification (or cloning) of a target DNA sequence.
- 8) _____ (or molecular glue) forms phosphodiester bond to join two DNA fragments.
- 9) _____ are used as cloning vectors.
- 10) _____ involves separation of charged molecules (in aqueous phase) under the influence of an electrical field.

Answers

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------------|---------|---------------|
| 1) False | 2) True | 3) True | 4) False |
| 5) Phagemids | 6) Macromolecules | 7) PCR | 8) DNA ligase |
| 9) Bacteriophages | 10) Gel electrophoresis | | |

3.3.3. Very Short Answer Type Questions

- 1) Write a short note on recombinant DNA technology.
- 2) Name the steps involved in gene cloning.
- 3) Write a short note on bacteriophages.
- 4) Briefly discuss gel electrophoresis.
- 5) Discuss the vectors used for preparing single-stranded DNA.
- 6) Discuss homopolymer tailing.

3.3.4. Short Answer Type Questions

- 1) Discuss restriction endonuclease digestion.
- 2) Write a short note on plasmids.
- 3) Write a short note on expression vectors.
- 4) Discuss expression of cloned gene within the host.

3.3.5. Long Answer Type Questions

- 1) Briefly discuss the steps involved in insertion of target DNA into a vector.
- 2) Write a note on identification and isolation of recombination genes.
- 3) Give the applications of rDNA technology and genetic engineering in the production of interferon.

CHAPTER

4

Immunology

4.1. IMMUNITY

4.1.1. Introduction

The word **immunity** (Latin *immunis* meaning **exempt**) describes the protection against diseases. It indicates that an individual has developed lifelong resistance to a certain disease after being infected with it only once. Thus, immunity is an individual's ability to respond to foreign substances and microbes.

Immune system includes cells and molecules responsible for immunity of the body; and a collective and coordinated response of cells and molecules to foreign substances is known as **immune response**.

4.1.2. Types of Immunity

The principle function of the immune system is to protect the body from any microbial infection or pathological conditions. During the immune response, the first step is recognition of the foreign substance (e.g., bacteria, viruses, parasites, and fungi). The defence mechanism of the body may be divided into two forms (figure 4.1):

- 1) Non-specific/innate/neutral immunity, and
- 2) Specific/acquired/adaptive immunity.

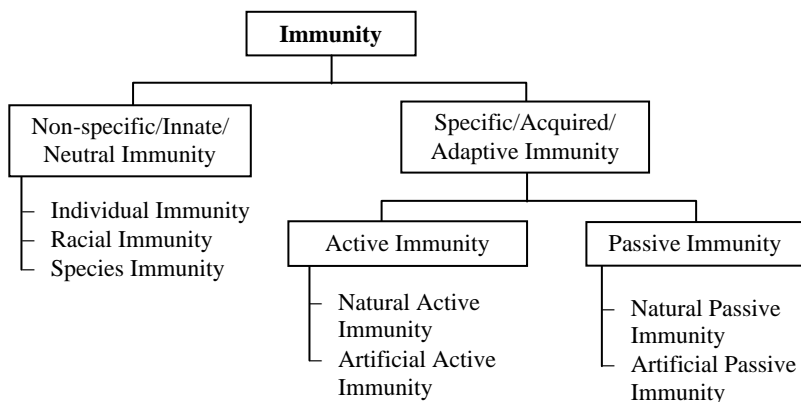


Figure 4.1: Classification of Immunity

4.1.3. Non-Specific/Innate/Neutral Immunity

Non-specific immunity is present in an individual since birth. This immunity is affected by the genetic and molecular structure of the genes; and is independent of previous contact with foreign antigen molecules. It may be non-specific when there is resistance to infections in general or may be specific when resistance to a particular pathogen is involved.

4.1.3.1. Types

Various types of non-specific immunity are as follows:

- 1) **Individual Immunity:** Different individuals of same race and species possess variable resistance against infection known as individual immunity. The genetic basis of individual immunity is evident from the observation that the homozygous twins show similar degrees of vulnerability or resistance to tuberculosis. However, this kind of correlation is not observed in heterozygous twins.
- 2) **Racial Immunity:** Different races within the same species show marked variation in the degree of resistance for different infections. This type of immunity that is exhibited by different races of same species is known as racial immunity, e.g., Algerian sheep is highly resistant to anthrax which is a common disease of other races of sheep. It is noticed that American Negroes are less resistant to tuberculosis, than the white race. In many instances, it is observed that the racial immunity is based on the genetic features.

Human races with sickle cell anaemia dominant in Mediterranean coast have developed immunity for *P. falciparum* infection. A genetic abnormality of RBCs (sickling) confers immunity to *P. falciparum* because such RBCs cannot be parasitised by these parasites. Individuals with hereditary glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency are less susceptible to *P. falciparum*.

- 3) **Species Immunity:** This immunity is found in all members of a particular species, such as many microbes are pathogenic for human but does not infect animals, e.g., *B. anthracis* infects human but not chickens. The mechanism behind species immunity is not clearly understood. Probably, the physiological and the biochemical differences between tissues of different host species are responsible for the species specific resistance or immunity.

4.1.3.2. Mechanisms

Some of the common mechanisms of non-specific immunity are as follows:

- 1) **Epithelial Surfaces**
 - i) **Skin:** Skin is a mechanical barrier to microorganisms and also provides a bactericidal secretion that kills the pathogens. The bactericidal properties are due to the presence of high content of salt in drying sweat, the sebaceous secretions, and long chain fatty acids. The skin itself may be freed of any bacterial depositions on it (transient flora), but sometimes bacterial flora (resident flora) is found on skin. Such bacterial flora is not easily removable even by washing and using disinfectants. The resident bacterial flora of skin and mucous surfaces help to prevent colonisation by pathogens. Alteration of normal resident flora may lead to invasion by extraneous microbes and thus cause serious diseases, e.g., invasion of *Clostridial enterocolitis* due to oral antibiotics.
 - ii) **Respiratory Tract:** The moist mucous secretion in the nasal passages traps the inhaled foreign particles. These particles are passed towards the pharynx by the hair-like cilia present on the mucous membrane surface. In the pharynx, the foreign particles are either swallowed or coughed out

(cough reflexes are important defence mechanism that expels out the foreign particles). However, some particles that reach the alveoli are phagocytised by the macrophages present there.

- iii) **Intestinal Tract:** The saliva has an inhibitory effect on many microorganisms. The acidic pH of the stomach kills many bacteria. Also, the presence of normal bacterial flora in the intestine prevents colonisation by pathogenic bacteria.
 - iv) **Conjunctiva:** Lysozyme present in the tears has a bactericidal action that plays a major role in antibacterial activity by flushing away bacteria and other dust particles.
 - v) **Genitourinary Tract:** Urine flushes away the bacteria from the urethra . The acidic pH of the adult vagina (due to the fermentation of glycogen by *Lactobacillus*) makes it unsuitable for many pathogens. On the other hand, the semen in males contains some antibacterial substances.
- 2) **Antibacterial Substances:** Several non-specific antibacterial substances have been found in blood and tissues. These substances include lysozyme, properdin, betalysin, interferon (shows antiviral activity), complement, and basic polypeptides (leukins from leukocytes, plakins from platelets). The pathogenic microorganisms attacking the blood and tissues are killed by complement system.
 - 3) **Cellular Factors:** If the epithelial surface is crossed by a pathogen, the tissue factors play a role of next line of defence. Due to the attack of the infective agents, exudative inflammatory reactions occur by the accumulation of phagocytes at the infection site. Fibrin molecules are deposited at this site and entangle the pathogenic organisms to check the spreading of infection.

The pathogenic organisms are killed and ingested by the phagocytic cells that are classified as:

- i) **Microphages, e.g.,** polymorphonuclear leukocytes (neutrophils).
- ii) **Macrophages, e.g.,** mononuclear phagocytic cells.

Phagocytosis involves four stages:

- i) **Chemotaxis:** Chemotactic substances attract phagocytes to reach the infection site.
- ii) **Attachment:** Pathogenic agents get attached to phagocytic membrane.
- iii) **Ingestion:** Foreign particles or infective agents present in the vacuole (phagosome) are engulfed by the phagocytic cells. The membrane of phagosome fuses with a lysosome to form a phagolysosome.
- iv) **Intracellular Killing:** By the hydrolytic enzymes of lysosomes, most bacteria are destroyed in the phagolysosome. But, a few bacteria (*M. tuberculosis* and *M. leprae*) resist such type of killing and multiply within the phagolysosome, thus causing disease. In such cases phagocytosis actually helps in spreading of infection to other body parts.

A class of lymphocytes called **Natural Killer (NK) cells** play a major role in non-specific defence against tumours and viral infections.

- 4) **Inflammation:** It is an important mechanism of non-specific defence system. It results from irritation and tissue injury initiated by the entry of pathogens or other irritants. Inflammation results in increased vascular permeability, cellular infiltration, and vasodilation.

Microorganisms are killed and phagocytised due to the increased vascular permeability. There is an outpouring of plasma which helps to dilute the toxic products present. A fibrin barrier is laid to wall off the site of infection.

- 5) **Fever:** Rise in temperature following infection is a protective natural defence mechanism. It kills the harmful infectious microorganisms. It stimulates the interferon production, helping in the recovery from viral infections.
- 6) **Acute Phase Proteins:** After any infection or injury, a sudden increase in plasma concentration of certain proteins [e.g., C Reactive Protein (CRP), mannose binding proteins, etc.] is observed; this phase is known as acute phase proteins. CRP and some other acute phase proteins activate the alternative pathway of complement, and prevent tissue injury and enhance the repairing of inflammatory lesions.

4.1.4. Specific/Acquired/Adaptive Immunity

Acquired immunity is also known as adaptive immunity because the potency of immune response is adapted by experience only. The difference between non-specific and specific immunity is summarised in table 4.1:

Table 4.1: Differences between Non-Specific and Specific Immunity

Features	Non-Specific Immunity	Specific Immunity
Definition	The resistance to infection that an individual possesses by virtue of genetic and constitutional structure.	The resistance that an individual acquires during life.
Types	Individual, racial, and species.	Active and passive.
Time taken to Develop	Hours	Days
Specificity	For structures shared by groups of related microbes.	For antigens of microbes and for non-microbial antigens.
Memory	None; repeated exposure brings primary response.	Yes; secondary response much faster than primary response.
Physical and Chemical Barriers	Skin, mucosal epithelia, and antimicrobial chemicals.	Lymphocytes in epithelia and antibodies secreted at epithelial surfaces.
Blood and Tissue Antimicrobial Substances	Complement; leukins from leukocytes, plakins from platelets, lactic acid in muscle tissue, lactoperoxidase in milk, and interferons.	Antibodies
Cells	Phagocytes (macrophages and neutrophils) and natural killer cells.	Lymphocytes

4.1.4.1. Active Immunity

Active immunity is the resistance acquired or developed by an individual after effective contact with an antigen. This contact may be in the form of either natural infection or by vaccination. This involves the active functioning of the immune apparatus leading to the synthesis of antibodies and/or the generation of immunologically active cells.

Immune system requires specific time -period known as **latent period** for the development of active immunity. During the latent period the immunity of the host is stimulated to act against the microorganism. Therefore, once the active immunity develops, it persists for a long time; this is the most important characteristic of the active immunity.

Active immunity is of **two types**:

- 1) **Natural Active Immunity:** This results from either clinical or natural sub-clinical infections. Such immunity is usually long-lasting. **For example**, individuals recovering from chicken pox infection acquire natural active immunity against it.
- 2) **Artificial Active Immunity:** This results from vaccination. **Vaccines** are preparations of live, attenuated or killed microorganisms, or their antigens or toxoids. For preparing vaccines, the organisms are killed by the application of formalin, phenol, alcohol, or by heat. They are preserved in alcohols, phenols, or N-merthiolate. **Toxoids** are immunogenic but not toxicogenic. For preparing toxoids, bacterial exotoxins are inactivated by using formalin (formol toxoid) or alum (Alum Precipitated Toxoid - APT).

4.1.4.2. Passive Immunity

Passive immunity occurs in an individual by readymade antibodies (usually in the form of antiserum) against infective agent or toxins. This antiserum is prepared by injecting infective agent or toxin in another host. In passive immunity, the immune system of the individual or host does not play any active role. As the immune serum is introduced into the host, it starts working and provides protection against the infection or injury. In passive immunity, there is no latent period; and it is effective for a very short duration. Passive immunity is important when immediate immune response is required, **e.g.**, anti-venom is used for snake bite.

Passive immunity is of **two types**:

- 1) **Natural Passive Immunity:** This is seen when antibodies are transferred from mother to the foetus (by placenta or milk) to protect it till its own immune system develops to function.
- 2) **Artificial Passive Immunity:** Convalescent sera, hyperimmune sera of animal or human origin and pooled human γ -globulin are used for inducing artificial passive immunity. These chemicals or agents are introduced in the body through parenteral route. One of the oldest methods of developing these agents is to employ horse hyperimmune sera. Antitetanus Serum (ATS) prepared by introducing a series of tetanus toxoid to horses, and bleeding them to separate the serum.

Comparison between Active and Passive Immunity

Table 4.2: Comparison between Active and Passive Immunity

Active Immunity	Passive Immunity
Developed immunity.	Produced immunity.
Develops slowly and is long-lasting.	Relatively fast and short-lived.
A booster dose, if required can be given to give lifelong immunity.	A booster dose also does not help in maintaining it for long.
Prevents a disease and is administered before infection.	Develops after the subject has been exposed to an infection.
Given in long-term prophylaxis.	Given in short-term prophylaxis and therapeutically.
Antigens are administered.	Antibodies are administered.

4.1.5. Cellular/Cell-Mediated/T-Cell Immunity

Cell-mediated immunity is an immune response that does not involve antibodies or complement, but rather involves the activation of macrophages, natural killer cells, antigen-specific cytotoxic T -lymphocytes, and the release of various cytokines in response to an antigen.

Historically, the immune system was separated into two branches, i.e., **cellular immunity**, for which the protective function of immunisation was associated with cells. CD4 cells or helper T cells provide protection against different pathogens and **humoral immunity**, for which the protective function of immunisation could be found in the humour (cell-free body fluid or serum).

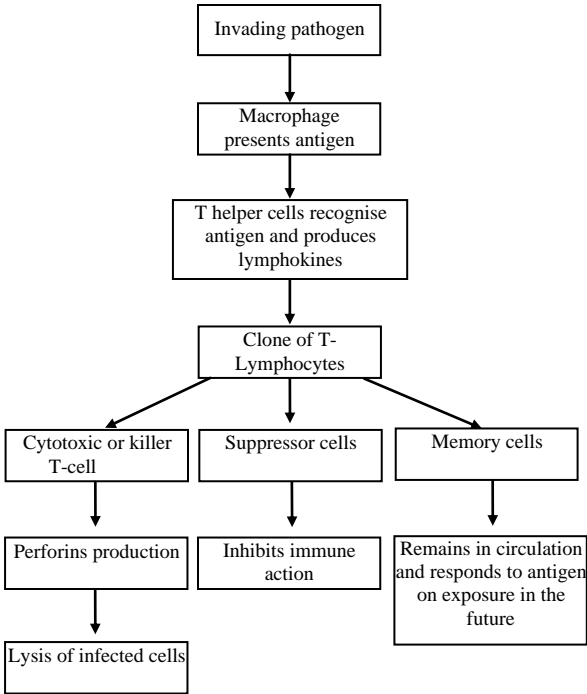


Figure 4.2: Flow Chart of Cell Mediated Immune Response

4.1.5.1. Mechanism

Cellular immune response is also called **T-cell immunity** as it occurs by the T -cells or T -lymphocytes (**figure 4.2**). This immune response defends against pathogens invading the host cells. The surface of T -cells has receptor molecule that binds with antigens. A single T-cell has about 100,000 receptor sites.

An antigen on entering the body is first attacked by the macrophages and gets fragmented into pieces. It then presents a piece of antigen to the T -helper cells, which recognise the antigen and trigger a series of cellular response. A clone of T-lymphocytes is first formed after getting activated by the T -helper cells. There are different kinds of T-cells, which are morphologically similar but functionally different.

The principal cells involved in cellular immunity and their functions are given in **table 4.3**:

Table 4.3: Different Cells Involved in Cell-Mediated Immunity and their Functions

Cell	Functions
Helper T cells (T _H)	Necessary for B-cells activation by T-dependent antigens.
Suppressor T cells (T _S)	Regulates immune response and helps in maintaining immune tolerance.
Delayed hypersensitivity T cells (T _D)	Provides protection against infectious agents; causes inflammation in association to tissue transplant rejection.
Cytotoxic T cells (T _C)	Destroys target cells on contact.
Killer cells (K)	Attacks antibody-coated target cells.
Natural Killer cells (NK)	Attacks and destroys target cells.

4.1.5.2. Importance

Cellular immunity protects the body by:

- 1) Activating antigen -specific cytotoxic T -lymphocytes that can induce apoptosis in body cells displaying epitopes of foreign antigen on their surface, such as virus -infected cells, cells with intracellular bacteria, and cancer cells displaying tumour antigens;
- 2) Activating macrophages and natural killer cells, enabling them to destroy intracellular pathogens; and
- 3) Stimulating cells to secrete a variety of cytokines that influence the function of other cells involved in adaptive and innate immune responses.

Cellular immunity is directed primarily at microbes that survive in phagocytes and microbes that infect non-phagocytic cells. It is most effective in removing virus -infected cells, but also participates in defending against fungi, protozoans, cancers, and intracellular bacteria. It also plays a major role in ~~transplant~~ rejection.

4.1.6. Humoral/Antibody-Mediated/B-Cell Immunity

Antibody-mediated immunity refers to the destruction of antigens by producing antibodies, and as the antibodies are present in body fluids (humours), this type of immunity is also called humoral immunity.

B-cells cannot bring about humoral immune response but needs the cooperation of other cells such as macrophages (f), T_H-helper cells (T_H), and dendritic cells possessing high levels of surface MHC class II molecules that process and present antigens to T-cells. Antibodies are immunoglobulin (Ig) molecules (e.g., serum proteins) and are usually comprised of several categories designated as IgM, IgA, IgE, and IgG.

4.1.6.1. Immunoglobulins Participating in Humoral Immunity

The various immunoglobulins participating in humoral immunity are:

- 1) **IgM:** It is the first class antibody generated invariably in most humoral responses but normally gets switched over to the corresponding IgA, IgE, or IgG at a very early stage in the immune response.
- 2) **IgG:** It is the most versatile, important and abundantly available class of antibodies taking part in largest humoral immune reactions. It can cross the placenta, thereby providing a new born baby absolute temporary immunity against the immunogens the mother had earlier against IgG.
- 3) **IgA:** It is invariably found in a plethora of secretions like tears, saliva, and mucous membranes. This immunoglobulin is frequently termed as the **first-line-of-defence mechanism** due to the fact that most bacteria, viruses and fungi that eventually gain entry into the body do cross a mucous membrane.
- 4) **IgE:** It is also important in the body's defence against the parasitic worm infections. Prominently and predominantly several allergic manifestations give rise to the release of histamine (e.g., allergy due to pollens, house dust, dust mite, human hair, food allergens etc.), which in turn afford the apparent discomforts resulting into extrinsic asthma, hay fever, hives, or excessive sneezing (during seasonal change and due to the presence of pollen grains in the air).

Immunoglobulins normally serve as surface receptors strategically located on certain immunologically active cells so as to enable them to bind immunogen.

4.1.6.2. Mechanism

Humoral immunity is also called **B-cell mediated immunity** since B-lymphocytes are involved in this response. This immune response defends the body against pathogens invading body fluids or humors. B-cells are antigen specific. During the immune response, B-cells specific for specific antigens enlarge to become lymphoblasts that differentiate into plasma cells. These mature plasma cells rapidly produce γ -globulins or immunoglobulins or antibodies (at a rate of about 2000 molecules/second) for each plasma cell. These immunoglobulins are secreted into the lymph and they eventually enter the blood.

The different types of cells or entities that are held responsible for contributing to the humoral immunity are:

- 1) B-Lymphocytes (or B-cells),
- 2) Immunodominant Peptides (IDPs),
- 3) Antigen-Presenting Cells (APCs),
- 4) T-cell subsets, and
- 5) Class II MHC (Major Histocompatibility Complex) proteins.

4.2. IMMUNOGLOBULINS

4.2.1. Introduction

Immunoglobulins are glycoprotein molecules. They are produced by plasma cells in response to an antigen or immunogen, and they function as antibodies. Antigens present in the foreign bodies (microorganisms or parasites) are protein molecules responsible for producing specific antibodies or immunoglobins in the host.

Some low molecular weight antigen molecules, called **haptens** do not bind to antibodies, but stimulate the formation of antibodies. Specific regions of antigen molecules having 5 -8 amino acids are called **epitopes** that are required for antibody production.

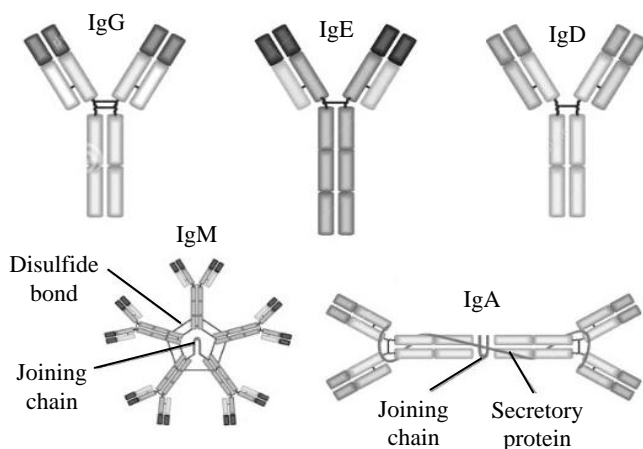


Figure 4.3: Types of Immunoglobulins

4.2.2. Classification

Immunoglobulins are classified on the basis of the nature of the heavy chain. Around 10,000 different antibodies formed by plasma cells have been found in a human body. These antibodies are categorised into IgG, IgM, IgA, IgD and IgE:

Name of Ig	Nature of Heavy Chain
IgG Immunoglobulin	G – Gamma (γ) H-chain
IgA Immunoglobulin	A – Alpha (α) H-chain
IgM Immunoglobulin	M – Mu (μ) H-chain
IgD Immunoglobulin	D – Delta (δ) H-chain
IgE Immunoglobulin	E – Epsilon (ϵ) H-chain

The five main types of immunoglobulins have been discussed below:

- 1) **IgG:** It is the most versatile immunoglobulin that is capable of carrying out all the functions of immunoglobulin molecules. In a normal human adult, approximately 75% of the total serum immunoglobulin is constituted by IgG. The IgG immunoglobulin is further sub-divided into IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, and IgG4. This is the only immunoglobulin which is capable of crossing placenta. Its transfer is mediated by the receptors present on the placental cells. Serum complements (e.g., found in serum and lymph) can also be fixed by IgG.

Properties

- i) It constitutes about 75% of serum immunoglobulin, thus is the major immunoglobulin in serum.
 - ii) It is the major immunoglobulin in extravascular spaces.
 - iii) It is the only immunoglobulin that can cross the placenta.
 - iv) It fixes complement, but all sub-classes do not fix equally well, as IgG4 class does not fix the complement.
- 2) **IgA:** It constitutes approximately 15% of the total immunoglobulin, and is the major immunoglobulin in body secretions. The secretory IgA is responsible for the primary defence mechanism, against some local infections as these are present in abundance in saliva, tears, bronchial secretions, and mucous secretions of small intestine. The IgA is present as dimer in secretions, while in serum secretion it exists as monomer. However, when IgA exists as a dimer, a J chain is aligned with it.

The IgA present in secretions has another protein associated with it known as **secretory** or **T-component**; however sometimes IgA is referred to as **11S immunoglobulin**. Opposite to the remainder of the IgA (which is formed in plasma cell), the secretory component is formed in the epithelial cells and can be added to the IgA as it passes into the secretions. The secretory component supports the IgA to be carried across the mucosa and also protects it against degradation in the secretions.

Properties

- i) It is the second most common immunoglobulin of serum.
 - ii) It is mainly present in body secretions, **e.g.**, saliva, tears, colostrum, mucus; therefore is responsible for local (mucosal) immunity.
 - iii) It is not involved in the fixation of complement, unless and until it is aggregated.
- 3) **IgM:** It is the most effective complement fixing immunoglobulin, present in serum and lymph. It is prominent in early immune responses to most antigens and predominates in certain antibody responses such as natural blood group antibodies.

IgM is found in pentamer (19S immunoglobulin) form, but also exists in the form of monomer. In the pentameric form, all the light as well as heavy chains are identical.

Properties

- i) It is the third most common serum immunoglobulin, and is the first immunoglobulin to be made by the foetus.
- ii) It is a good complement fixing immunoglobulin due to its pentameric structure; therefore, efficiently leads to the lysis of microorganisms.
- iii) It binds to the cells by Fc receptors.
- iv) Due to its pentameric structure, it is also a good agglutinating agent. It is very good in clumping microorganisms for elimination from the body.

- 4) **IgD:** It exists in monomeric form. Its main function has not been known. It is found in serum and on lymphocytes. However, in isolated cases IgD shows activity against certain antigens like milk proteins, diphtheria toxoids, penicillin, thyroid antigens, and insulin.

Properties

- i) It is present in serum in low concentration.
 - ii) It does not bind to the complement.
 - iii) It is present on the surface of B-cells where it functions as a receptor for antigen. On the surface of B-cells, IgD has extra amino acids at C-terminal end for attachment to the membrane. It is also attached to the Ig-alpha and Ig-beta chains.
- 5) **IgE:** It actively takes part in allergic reactions and is found in serum. It is found in monomeric form and has an extra domain in the constant region.

Properties

- i) It is found in serum in very low concentration, as it binds very firmly to Fc receptors on basophils and mast cells even before interacting with antigen.
- ii) It does not fix the complement.
- iii) It binds to basophil mast cells, therefore actively participates in allergic reactions. Binding of the allergen to the IgE on the cells releases many pharmacological mediators that result in many allergic symptoms.
- iv) It is actively involved in the control of helminthic diseases. The parasitic infection is diagnosed on the basis of IgE concentration in the serum, as its serum concentration rises when the infection occurs.

4.2.3. Structure

Structurally immunoglobulin of each class differs but all of them are formed of same basic unit (**figure 8.2**):

- 1) **Heavy and Light Chains:** Immunoglobulin is a tetramer made up of two similar high molecular weight or heavy chains and two low molecular weight or light chains. Heavy chain consists of 500 amino acids (having molecular weight of 50,000-70,000 Daltons). The 5 types of heavy chains in IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG, and IgM are designated as α (alpha), δ (delta), ϵ (epsilon), γ (gamma), and μ (mu) respectively.

Both the chains of antibody molecule have a variable (V) and a constant (C) portion. Half of each light chain consists of a variable region (V_L), one-quarter of each heavy chain consists of a variable (V_H) in different patients, and the remaining three-quarters of the heavy chain (C_H) are constant for all IgGs.

This constant portion of heavy chain is subdivided into three sections of equal length. Each of the sub-sections of C part of IgG heavy chain originated during evolution by the duplication of an ancestral gene that encoded for an Ig unit of around 110 amino acids. The variable regions (V_H or V_L) have originated by evolution from the same ancestral Ig units.

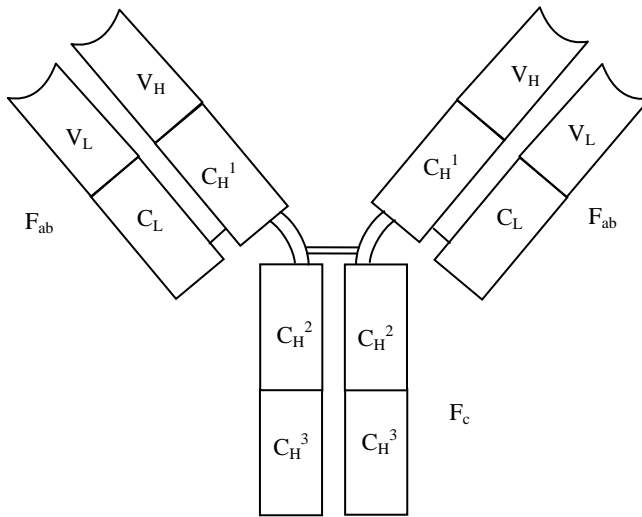


Figure 4.4: Immunoglobulin Structure. Heavy chains determine the isotype; light chains are identical in each molecule but may be kappa or lambda

Light chains are made up of two low molecular weight chains designated κ (kappa) and λ (lambda) present in five different antibodies. Each light chain consists of 200-250 amino acids (having molecular weight of 23,000 Daltons). Both the light chains have the following **domains**:

- i) **Antigen-Binding Domains:** They are made up of F_v and F_{ab} segments. The former is a heterodimer having variable domains of heavy chains (V_H) and light chains (V_L). The latter is also a heterodimer of entire light chain + V_H and C_{H1} parts of heavy chains.
- ii) **Effector Domains:** They are also called F_c segment which helps in the elimination of antigen. The F_c region is a homodimer having CH_2 and CH_3 domains of heavy chains.

The terminal regions of both heavy and light chains have three small hyper variable regions that form the **antigen binding sites** or **Complementarity-Determining Regions** (CDR). These hyper variable regions in the chains contain deletions and insertions of amino acids and also substitutions of one amino acid for another.

Each antigen binding site in the hyper variable regions is made up of about 5-10 amino acids. Therefore, an antibody molecule's combining site specificity is determined by the variable domains of the molecule.

The proximal remaining parts of the chains are constant (i.e., not variable) and are termed as **framework regions**. These constant domains facilitate the anchorage of antibody on the plasma membrane and activation of the complement system by which bacterial cells are punctured and destroyed.

- 2) **Variable (V) and Constant (C) Regions:** On examining and comparing the amino acid sequences of many different heavy and light chains, it becomes

clear that both the chains are divided into two regions, on the basis of the variability in their amino acid sequences:

- i) **Light Chain:** V_L (110 amino acids) and C_L (110 amino acids).
 - ii) **Heavy Chain:** V_H (110 amino acids) and C_H (330-440 amino acids).
- 3) **Disulfide Bonds:** Two types of disulphide bonds are present:
- i) **Intra-Chain Disulphide Bonds:** These disulphide bonds are present within the polypeptide chains.
 - ii) **Inter-Chain Disulphide Bonds:** Two heavy chains and two light chains are held to each other by inter-chain disulphide bonds and by non-covalent interactions. Different immunoglobulin molecules have different number of inter-chain disulphide bonds.

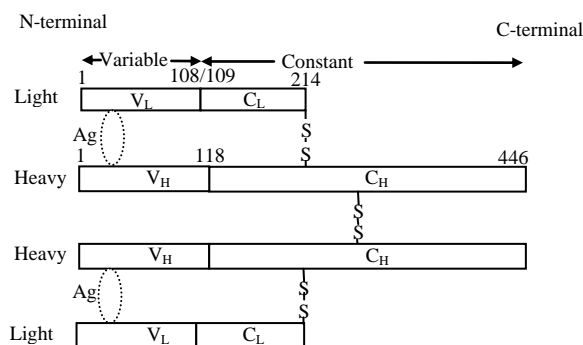


Figure 4.5: Basic 4 Polypeptide Chain IgG molecule. Two Heavy and Two Light Chains Joins together by Disulphide (S-S) Bonds

- 4) **Hinge Region:** At hinge region, the arm of the antibody molecule forms a Y-shaped structure. The name **hinge** is given due to the flexibility of molecule at this point.
- 5) **Oligosaccharides:** In most immunoglobulins, carbohydrate molecules are linked at CH_2 domain. But in few cases, carbohydrate molecules may be attached at other locations.

4.3. MAJOR HISTOCOMPATIBILITY COMPLEX (MHC)

4.3.1. Introduction

Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC) encodes the MHC proteins present on the plasma membrane of all human tissue/cells. MHC is a tightly linked group of genes located on chromosome 6 in humans. MHC proteins are involved in intercellular recognition of foreign substance (antigen) to T-lymphocytes.

Haplotypes is the term used for a group of linked MHC genes inherited as a unit from parents. Human MHC molecules are termed as **Human Leucocyte Antigens (HLA)**. MHC genes are polymorphic, i.e., many alleles are present for each gene and polygenic, i.e., many different MHC genes are present.

4.3.2. Classes

The classes I, II, and III of MHC genes express for molecules of classes I, II and III, respectively (**table 4.4**). Class I MHC genes have A, B and C gene loci. Glycoproteins (or class I MHC molecule) secreted by these genes are present on surface of nucleated cells. Class I MHC molecules present the peptide antigens to T_C cells.

The length of class I MHC gene in humans is ~2,000kb (about 20 genes) and is present at the telomeric terminus of the HLA complex. The length of class II MHC gene range is ~1,000kb and is present at the centromeric terminus of HLA. The length of class III genes is 10,000kb and is present between the class I and II genes.

Table 4.4: Organisation of Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC) HLA Genes in Chromosome 6 in Humans

Classes	Class II			Class III	Class I		
Regions	DP	DQ	DR	C ₄ , C ₂ , and B2F	B	C	A
Genes	DP	DQ	DR	C Proteins TNF-α	HLA-B	HLA-C	HLA-A
Products	αβ	αβ	αβ	TNF-β			

In humans, the class II MHC genes have the DP, DQ and DR regions encoding the class II MHC molecules (glycoproteins) expressed on antigen presenting cells like macrophages, dendritic cells and B-cells. Class II genes present the processed antigenic peptides to T_H cells, and class II molecules provide immune response.

Class I and II molecules share the same structural features, and both function in antigen processing. Class III MHC gene is flanked by the Class I and II regions and encodes molecules important for immune function. The complement components of Class III MHC molecules are C₄, C₂, BF, inflammatory cytokines, Tumour Necrosis Factor (TNF), and heat shock proteins.

4.3.3. Structure

The Class I molecule acts as a trans -membrane glycoprotein. It has two chains, i.e., α-chain (or heavy chain) of molecular weight 42KD, associated non-covalently with a β₂-microglobulin (or light chain) of molecular weight 12KD.

The α-chain has three extracellular domains (α₁, α₂, and α₃), a hydrophobic trans-membrane segment, and a short hydrophilic cytoplasmic tail (**figure 4.6A**). These are encoded by the A, B, and C regions of HLA complex, and are expressed on the plasma membrane of all cells (excluding erythrocytes).

Different chromosomes express the β₂-microglobulin molecule. The α-chain together with β₂-microglobulin is required for expressing class I molecules on the cell membrane. The α₁ and α₂ form the antigenic-binding cleft situated on the top of molecule surface.

Class II MHC molecules also serve as trans -membrane glycoprotein. Separate MHC genes encode them. They have two different α- (33KD) and β-chains (28KD) associated through non-covalent bond (**figure 4.6B**).

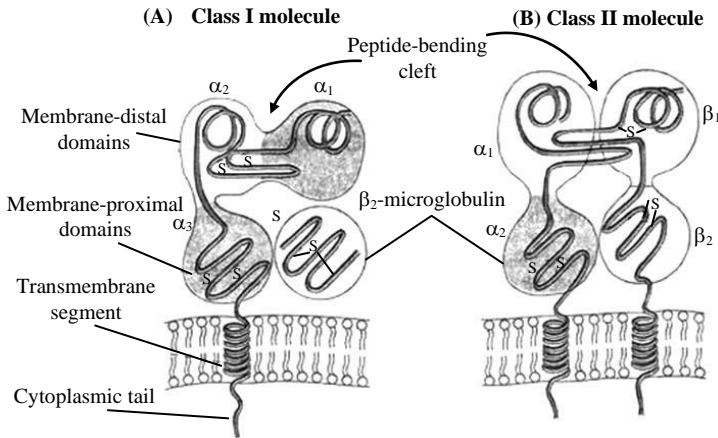


Figure 4.6: Structure of MHC Molecules

Two domains (β_1 and β_2 domains in other domain) are formed upon folding of the α - and β -chains. One domain is the **membrane-proximal domain**, and the other is **membrane-distal domain**. Similar to class I MHC molecules, trans - segment and a cytoplasmic anchor segment are present in class II molecules also. The chains of class II molecule bear two external domains (α_1 and α_2 domains in one chain, and β_1 and β_2 domains in the other chain).

4.3.4. Functions

MHC provides cell mediated as well as humoral immune responses. The antibodies selectively bind with antigens. T-cells recognise only those antigens combined with MHC molecule; therefore, MHC molecules are antigen-presenting structure.

MHC partially ascertains how an individual responds to antigens of infectious microorganisms. Hence, MHC is associated to disease susceptibility and autoimmunity. The natural killer cells also express receptors for MHC class I antigens. The interaction of receptor with MHC may cause inhibition or activation.

Class I and II MHC molecules provide processed endogenous antigen to CD8 T-cells. Class II molecules provide exogenous antigen to CD4 T-cells. Class I molecules identifies all the body cells as 'self' and induce antibodies synthesis that enter the host having different class I molecules. This forms the base for MHC typing in patients undergoing antigen transplantation.

Class II molecules have D group of MHC responsible for stimulating antibody formation. They also participate in T-cell communication with macrophage and B-cells. An important step in immune response is that prior to cytokine secretion by T cells, the class II molecules on the adjacent cell are identified by the T-cells receptor.

Microorganisms are identified by both class I and II molecules. These molecules engage in the susceptibility of an individual to specific non-infectious diseases, e.g., multiple sclerosis, acute glomerulonephritis, tuberculous leprosy, paralytic poliomyelitis, etc. During immune responses the class III molecules (e.g., C_2 , C_{4a} and C_{4b}) involve in the classical pathway and factor B (alternate pathway).

4.4. HYPERSENSITIVITY REACTIONS

4.4.1. Introduction

An elevated activity of normal immune system that damages the body tissues is known as **hypersensitivity**. Hypersensitivity, also termed as **hypersensitivity reaction** refers to inappropriate immune responses (like damaging, discomforting, and sometimes fatal). A pre-sensitised (immune) state of the host initiates hypersensitivity reactions.

4.4.2. Types

Different hypersensitive reactions are studied and differences in the effector molecules generated during the reaction are identified . Four types of hypersensitivity reactions (Types I, II, III and IV) were illustrated by **Gell** and **Coomb**. The initial three types are antibody-mediated and the last type is mediated by T-cell and macrophages (**table 4.5**).

Table 4.5: Gell and Coomb’s Classification of Hypersensitivity Reactions

Types	Descriptive Names	Initiation Time	Mechanisms	Typical Manifestations
I	IgE-mediated or anaphylactic hypersensitivity	2-30 min	Antigen (Ag) induces cross-linkage of IgE bound to mast cells and basophils, along with the release of vasoactive mediators.	Systemic and localised anaphylaxis, hay fever , asthma, hives, food allergies, and eczema.
II	Antibody-dependent cytotoxic hypersensitivity	5-8 hrs	Antibody (Ab) directed against cell surface ; antigens mediate cell destruction by complement activation or ADCC	Blood-transfusion reactions, erythroblastosis foetalis, and autoimmune haemolytic anaemia.
III	Immune complex-mediated hypersensitivity	2-8 hrs	Ag-Ab complexes deposited in various tissues induce complement activation and an inflammatory response.	Localised arthus reaction, generalised reactions, serum sickness, glomerulonephritis, rheumatoid arthritis, and systemic lupus erythematosus
IV	Cell-mediated or delayed type hypersensitivity	24-72 hrs	Sensitised T _{DTH} cells release cytokines that activate macrophages or T _C cells that mediate direct cellular damage.	Contact dermatitis, tubercular lesions, and graft rejection.
V	Stimulatory hypersensitivity	-	-	Thyroid hyperreactivity in Grave’s disease

4.4.2.1. Type I Hypersensitivity

The most common hypersensitivity reaction is the type I hypersensitivity. These are anaphylactic reactions induced by antigens (allergens). Anaphylaxis (opposite of protection) occurs when IgE antibodies interact with an allergen.

Mode of Action

Upon exposure of the individual to an allergen, the B-cells are activated and IgE-secreting plasma cells are formed. These cells attach with high affinity to F_C (Fragment crystallised) receptors present on the constant domains of mast cells (tissue) and basophils (blood). These mast cells and basophils are coated with IgE and are sensitised. Upon subsequent exposure to the same allergen, cross-linking of the bound IgE occurs. This results in the degranulation of the mast cells and basophils and release of pharmacologically active mediators from these cells (figure 4.7). The released mediators cause smooth-muscle contraction, increased vascular permeability, and vasodilation.

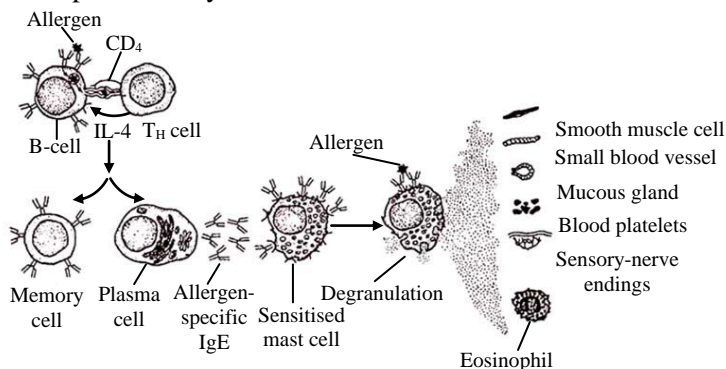


Figure 4.7: Mechanism of Type-I Hypersensitive Reaction

Biological Effects

- 1) Anaphylactic responses give rise to mild symptoms, like hay-fever, running nose, skin eruptions (hives) or breathing difficulties.
- 2) The granules release certain pharmacologically active mediators that impart biological effects on the surrounding tissues.
- 3) Sometimes anaphylactic shock may develop within 2-30 minutes which may lead to death if the individual is not attended with medical help.
- 4) The main effects of vasodilation and smooth muscle contraction can be systematic or localised.

Examples

Allergic asthma, allergic conjunctivitis, allergic rhinitis (hay fever), anaphylaxis, angioedema, atopic dermatitis (eczema), urticaria (hives), and eosinophilia.

4.4.2.2. Type II Hypersensitivity

The type II hypersensitivity reactions cause tissue or cell damage as a direct result of the actions of antibody and complement.

Mode of Action

The reaction during blood transfusion is an example of type II hypersensitivity reactions. In blood transfusion, reaction occurs between the host antibodies and

foreign antigens present on the incompatible transfused blood cells. This reaction mediates cell destruction.

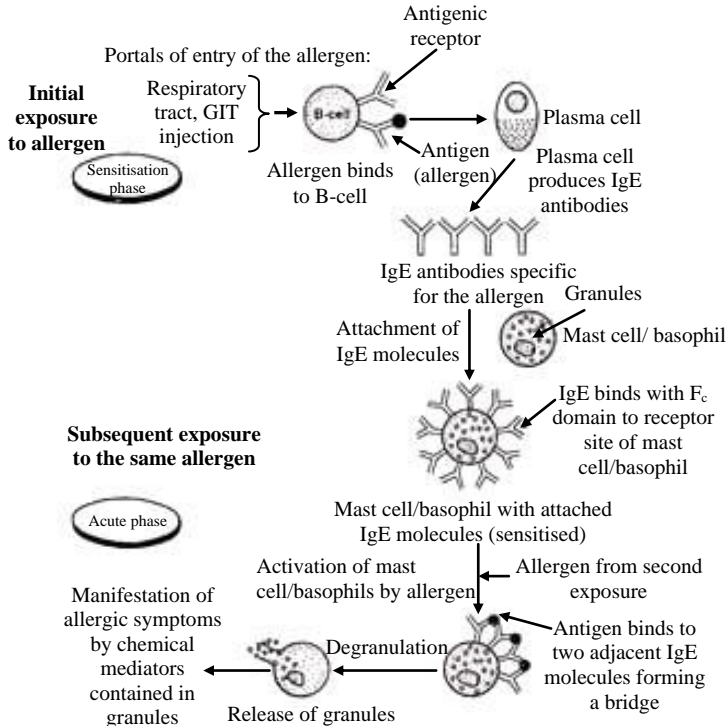


Figure 4.8: Events Following Initial and Subsequent Exposures to an Allergen Resulting in Sensitisation and Manifestation of Allergic Responses

Antibody-mediated cell destruction occurs through activation of complement system. This increases membrane porosity in foreign cell by forming Membrane Attack Complex (MAC). Cell destruction can also be mediated through Antibody Dependent Cell-Mediated Cytotoxicity (ADCC).

Haemolysis of the donor's erythrocytes occurs in the recipient's blood vessels as a result of faulty cross-matching in which the alloantigen of the donor's erythrocytes react with the serum antibodies of the recipient along with the activated complement (**figure 4.8**).

Biological Effects

- 1) When the maternal IgG antibodies specific for antigens of foetal blood-group cross the placenta and destroy the erythrocytes of foetus, haemolytic disease occurs in new-born.
- 2) A haemolytic medical condition affecting the new-borns is erythroblastosis foetalis in which the Rh^+ foetus expresses an Rh antigen on its blood cells that the Rh^- mother does not express.
- 3) Drug-induced haemolytic anaemia occurs when some antibiotics (e.g., penicillin, cephalosporin and streptomycin) get non-specifically absorbed to proteins on erythrocyte membranes and form a complex (like hapten-carrier complex) that induces anaemia.

Examples

Autoimmune haemolytic anaemia, Goodpasture syndrome, erythroblastosis foetalis, pemphigus, pernicious anaemia (if autoimmune), immune thrombocytopenia, transfusion reactions, Hashimoto's thyroiditis, Graves' disease, myasthenia gravis, rheumatic fever, and haemolytic disease of the newborn.

4.4.2.3. Type III Hypersensitivity

Upon invasion of an antigen in an individual, the antibody reacts with it to form an immune complex which aids in the removal of antigen through phagocytosis. Type III hypersensitivity reaction occurs as a result of tissue damage caused by large number of immune complexes. Hence, type III hypersensitivity reaction is also called **immune complex hypersensitivity**.

Mode of Action

When the complement system's array of immune effector molecules is activated by the immune complexes, type III hypersensitivity reactions develop. Splitting of complement components (C_{3a} , C_{4a} , and C_{5a}) produce anaphylatoxins leading to degranulation of localised mast cell and rise in local vascular permeability.

The so formed bulky antigen-antibody complexes aggregate and combine with the activated complement. This chemotactically attracts the polymorphonuclear leukocytes that release large quantities of lysosomal enzymes causing tissue damage.

Biological Effects

- 1) Antibodies are developed by the recipient of a foreign antiserum. These antibodies are specific for foreign serum proteins from circulating immune complexes. An individual develops serum sickness within days or weeks of exposure to foreign serum antigens. Symptoms of serum sickness include fever, weakness, vasculitis (rashes) with oedema, erythema, lymphadenopathy, arthritis and glomerulonephritis.
- 2) The IgG antigen complexes deposit in the blood vessels and cause local damage. When they deposit on blood vessels of kidney glomeruli, they cause Arthus Reaction.
- 3) Farmer's lung is a disease in which immune complexes are formed in the epithelial layers of the respiratory tract upon inhalation of bacterial and fungal spores.
- 4) Systemic lupus erythematosus is an autoimmune hypersensitive reaction (autoimmune) that occurs when IgG and the nucleoproteins of the disintegrated leukocytes (auto-antigens) interact.

Examples

Immune complex glomerulonephritis, rheumatoid arthritis, serum sickness, sub-acute bacterial endocarditis, symptoms of malaria, systemic lupus erythematosus, Arthus reaction, and Farmer's lung (Arthus-type reaction).

4.4.2.4. Type IV Hypersensitivity

Type IV hypersensitivity reaction is a type of delayed hypersensitivity controlled by T-cells, macrophages, and dendritic cells. It does not occur as an instant response but after the second exposure to an allergen. The allergic symptoms appear after sometime.

Mode of Action

The T-lymphocytes play a major role in maintaining delayed hypersensitivity. They are categorised into $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ cells. The former cells are required in type IV hypersensitivity reactions. The special group of $CD4^+$ cells called T-D cells (delayed), participate in this reaction. The T-helper cell (T_H cell) includes T-D cells that make the bulk of $CD4^+$ T-cells. The T_H cells are categorised into T_{H1} and T_{H2} type. The latter cells activate B-cells to produce immunoglobulins and the former cells initiate inflammatory responses like delayed hypersensitivity reactions (figure 4.9).

Biological Effects

- 1) Tuberculin is a purified protein derivative (PPD) of tubercle bacilli (*Mycobacterium tuberculosis*). It is a microbial agent that triggers delayed hypersensitivity. The microbial agents obtained from *Mycobacterium leprae* also stimulate delayed hypersensitivity.
- 2) The tuberculin skin test (or Mantoux test) determines whether a person presents T-cell mediated reactivity for tubercle bacilli (Koch's bacilli).

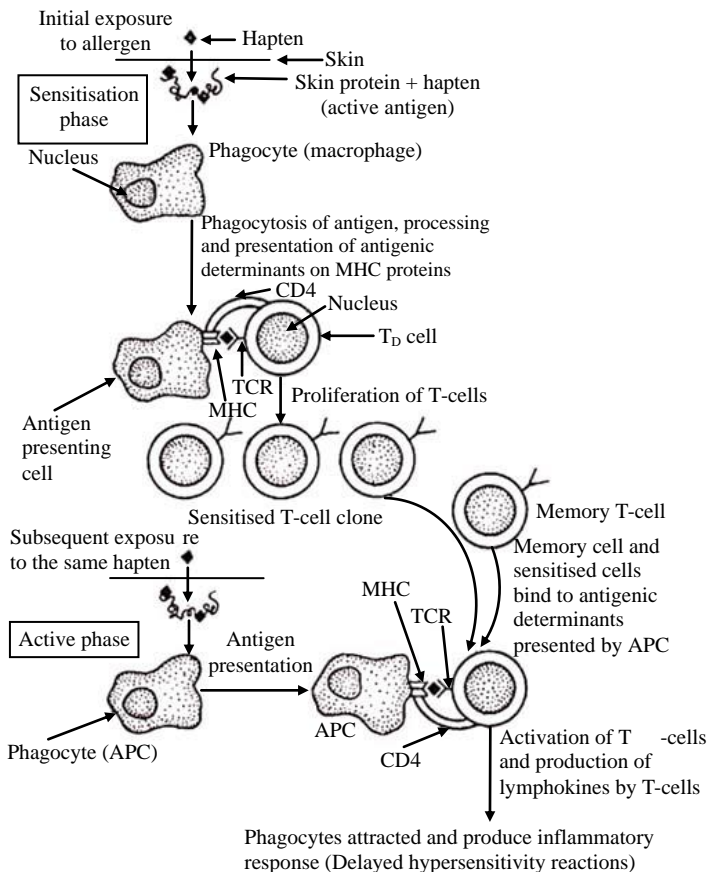


Figure 4.9: Delayed hypersensitivity reactions like skin contact sensitivity to small molecules acting as haptens. During the sensitisation phase, exposure leads to formation of sensitised T-cells. A subsequent exposure to the same hapten stimulates the sensitised T-cells to produce lymphokines which attract phagocytic cells and cause an inflammatory skin response (allergic dermatitis).

Examples

Contact dermatitis (poison ivy rash), temporal arteritis, symptoms of leprosy and tuberculosis, transplant rejection, and coeliac disease.

4.4.2.5. Type V Hypersensitivity

The type V-stimulatory hypersensitivity reactions occur when the antibody undergoes specific reactions with a key surface component, e.g., hormone receptor, and switches on the cell.

Examples

A typical example of type V-stimulatory hypersensitivity is thyroid hyperactivity in Grave's disease due to a thyroid-stimulating autoantibody.

4.4.3. Immune Stimulation

Stimulation of the immune system by an external source is termed **immune stimulation** or **immunostimulation**. This stimulation builds up a protective mechanism against microorganisms. Substances that induce or elevate the activity of one or more of the immune system components are termed **immunostimulants**.

Immunostimulants stimulate the immune system. These agents enhance the body's resistance against infections. They stimulate the immune system by fighting against immunodeficiencies (like AIDS), infections and cancers. Immunostimulants enhance the basal levels of immune response. Immunotherapeutic agents are given to individuals with impaired immune response.

Some commonly used **immunostimulating agents** are:

- 1) **Levamisole:** It is an anthelmintic drug that restores the functions of B-lymphocytes, T-lymphocytes, monocytes, and macrophages. Thus, it is used in combination with 5-FU in colon cancer.
- 2) **Thalidomide:** It produces different effects that are utilised in the following conditions:
 - i) Its anti-inflammatory effect is used in erythema nodosum leprosum.
 - ii) Its anti-angiogenesis effect is used in multiple myeloma.
 - iii) Its anti-TNF effect is used in rheumatoid arthritis.
- 3) **BCG:** It is used in bladder cancer.
- 4) **Recombinant Cytokines**
 - i) **Interferons:** They are used in tumours and chronic hepatitis B and C.
 - ii) **Interleukin 2 (Aldeslakin):** It is used in renal cell carcinoma and melanoma.

4.4.4. Immune Suppression

A phenomenon in which an organism's ability to form antibodies in response to an antigenic stimulus is reduced or suppressed is termed **immune suppression** or **immunosuppression**.

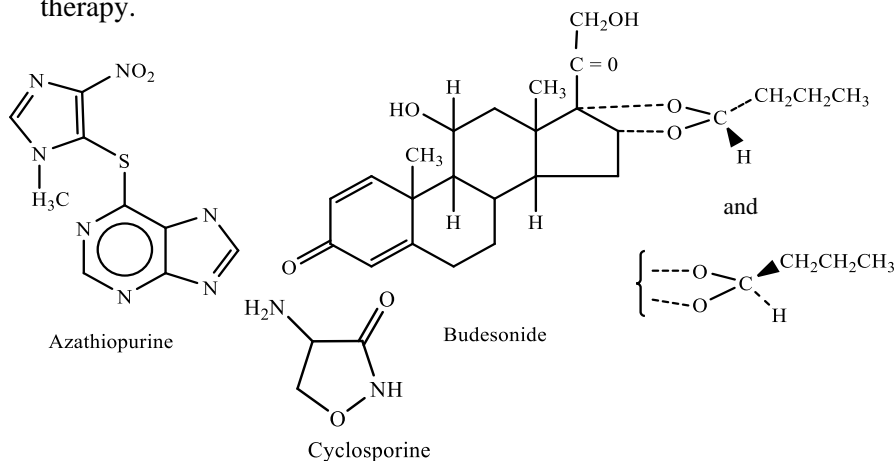
There are many available immunosuppressive drugs that are used for prolonging the life-expectancy of a transplanted organ, **e.g.**, heart, kidney, eyes, etc. When small doses of immunosuppressive drugs are administered to an individual, his/her immune system overcomes the drug and rejects it. This rejection is indicated by the gradual functional loss of an organ giving rise to the following **symptoms**:

- 1) Fibrous thickening of the inmost small arteries of the transplant.
- 2) Subsequent administration of larger doses of immunosuppressive drugs as an alternative measure, and
- 3) Scheduling a different immunosuppressive therapy programme for each individual.

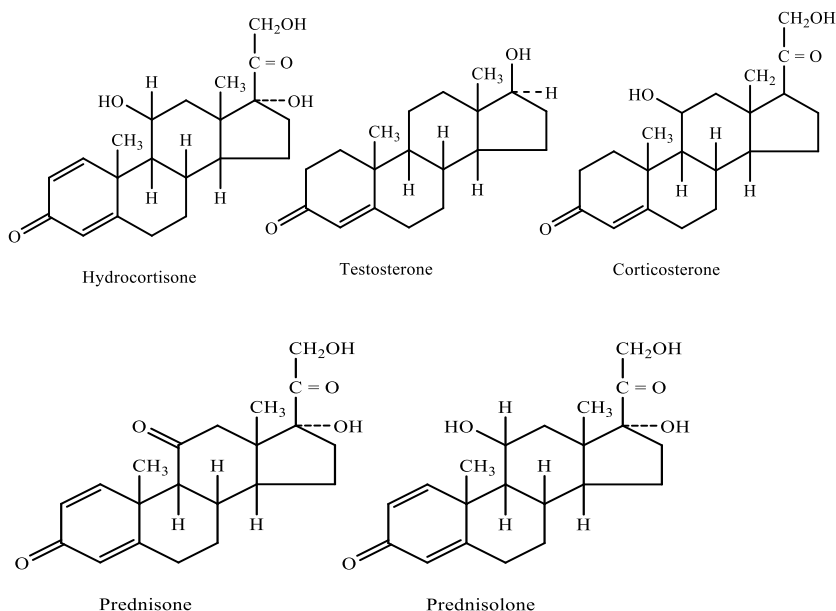
However, another perception of immunosuppression promulgates the resultant immune response as a coordinated mechanism involving antigen recognition by the immunocompetent cells, termed as **Anti-T-lymphocyte Serum (ATS)**; besides, macrophages found to serve as an **Antigen-Presenting Cells (APC)**.

Immunosuppression is of the following **two types**:

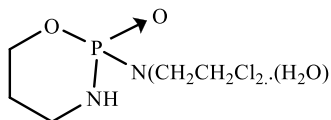
- 1) **Non-Specific Immunosuppression**: It occurs in the natural cases of immunodeficiency disorders, uremia, etc. It may also be induced by gradual depletion of lymphoid tissue, or by administering immunosuppressive drugs. A significant depletion in lymphocytes is observed on excessive exposure to radiation; thus the antigens present on the macrophages become impaired and give rise to immunosuppression. Non-specific immunosuppression can also be induced by Anti-Lymphocyte Globulin (ALG) that affects the T-cells by inhibiting their normal functions or by depleting T-cell dependent areas in the lymphoid tissue.
- 2) **Specific Immunosuppression**: It is induced by antigen (immunogen) or antibody. It has been proved experimentally that it is practicable and reasonable to induce the following **specific immunosuppression measures**:
 - i) Some drug combinations, **e.g.**, azathioprine and corticosteroid (Budesonide) are used in tissue transplantation to inhibit Cell-Mediated Immunity (CMI). Cyclosporine is widely used in immunosuppressive therapy.



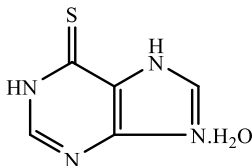
- ii) In some cases, in order to achieve tolerance the response of a host to a specific antigen is eradicated. Therefore, it is a particular case of immunosuppression where an antigen (immunogen) behaves as an immunosuppressive agent.
- iii) The body on being exposed ionising radiations suppresses the lymphocyte proliferation in the haemopoietic system. The overall effect is non-specific in nature, causes impairment of haemopoiesis, and periodical inoculation of the syngeneic bone marrow cells in the animal.
- iv) A specific class of endogenous corticosteroids, **e.g.,** hydrocortisone, testosterone, corticosterone, prednisone, and prednisolone are used to impair the prevailing immune response of the host, i.e., CMI.

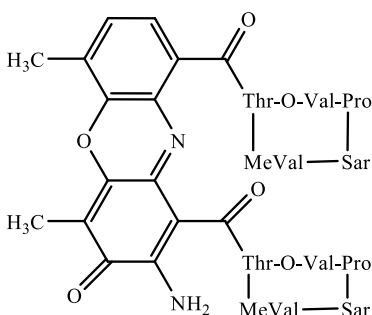
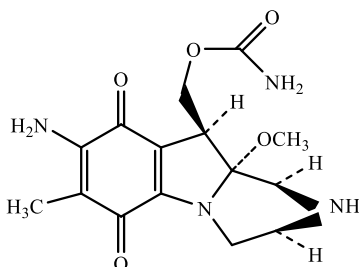


- v) Some other drug substances obtained from natural or synthetic sources that can be used as immunosuppressive agents are:
- a) **Antiproliferative Agent:** Cyclophosphamide.



- b) **DNA-Base Analogue:** 6-Mercaptopurine and its derivatives.



c) **Antibiotic:** Actinomycin-D.d) **Mitotic Poison:** Mitomycin C.

- vi) Anti-T-lymphocyte Serum (ATS) is also used to battle specific immunosuppression. It is a T-cell inhibitor restricted to the re-circulating peripheral lymphocytes; however, the lymphocytes within the lymphoid organs remain unaffected.
- vii) The procedure of inhibiting CMI with the help of homologous humoral antibody in tissue/organ transplantation is termed as **enhancement**. The survival period of transplants can be enhanced only by infusing a particular antibody to weaken the phenomenon of CMI, whereas the formation of the humoral antibodies is protected.

4.5. SUMMARY

The details given in the chapter can be summarised as follows:

- 1) The word **immunity** (Latin *immunis* meaning **exempt**) describes the protection against diseases.
- 2) The principle function of the immune system is to protect the body from any microbial infection or pathological conditions.
- 3) Non-specific immunity is present in an individual since birth.
- 4) Different individuals of same race and species possess variable resistance against infection known as **individual immunity**.
- 5) The type of immunity that is exhibited by different races of same species is known as **racial immunity**.
- 6) **Species immunity** is found in all members of a particular species, such as many microbes are pathogenic for human but does not infect animals.

- 7) Skin is a mechanical barrier to microorganisms and also provides a bactericidal secretion that kills the pathogens.
- 8) The moist mucous secretion in the nasal passages traps the inhaled foreign particles.
- 9) Lysozyme present in the tears has a bactericidal action that plays a major role in antibacterial activity by flushing away bacteria.
- 10) If the epithelial surface is crossed by a pathogen, the tissue factors play a role of next line of defence.
- 11) Inflammation is an important mechanism of non-specific defence system.
- 12) Acquired immunity is also known as adaptive immunity because the potency of immune response is adapted by experience only.
- 13) Active immunity is the resistance acquired or developed by an individual after effective contact with an antigen.
- 14) Immune system requires specific time-period known as **latent period** for the development of active immunity.
- 15) Passive immunity occurs in an individual by readymade antibodies (usually in the form of antiserum) against infective agent or toxins.
- 16) Cellular immune response is also called **T-cell immunity** as it occurs by the T-cells or T-lymphocytes.
- 17) Humoral immunity is also called **B-cell mediated immunity** since B - lymphocytes are involved in this response.
- 18) Immunoglobulins are glycoprotein molecules.
- 19) **Haplotypes** is the term used for a group of linked MHC genes inherited as a unit from parents.
- 20) Human MHC molecules are termed as **Human Leucocyte Antigens (HLA)**.
- 21) An elevated activity of normal immune system that damages the body tissues is known as **hypersensitivity**.
- 22) Stimulation of the immune system by an external source is termed **immune stimulation** or **immunostimulation**.
- 23) A phenomenon in which an organism's ability to form antibodies in response to an antigenic stimulus is reduced or suppressed is termed **immune suppression** or **immunosuppression**.

4.6. EXERCISE

4.6.1. True or False

- 1) Lysozyme present in the tears has a bactericidal action.
- 2) Specific immunity is present in an individual since birth.
- 3) B-cells are glycoprotein molecules.
- 4) Human MHC molecules are termed as Human Leucocyte Antigens (HLA).
- 5) The word immunity describes the protection against diseases.

4.6.2. Fill in the Blanks

- 6) _____ present in the tears has a bactericidal action.
- 7) The word _____ describes the protection against diseases.
- 8) _____ is the term used for a group of linked MHC genes inherited as a unit from parents.
- 9) _____ immune response is also called T -cell immunity as it occurs by the T - cells or T-lymphocytes.
- 10) Some low molecular weight antigen molecules, called _____ do not bind to antibodies.

Answers

- | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1) True | 2) False | 3) False | 4) True |
| 5) True | 6) Lysosome | 7) Immunity | 8) Haplotypes |
| 9) Cellular | 10) Haptens | | |

4.6.3. Very Short Answer Type Questions

- 1) Define immunity and give its types.
- 2) What is active immunity? Explain.
- 3) Define cell-mediated immunity and give its mechanism.
- 4) What are immunoglobulins? Classify them.
- 5) Define antibody-mediated immunity.

4.6.4. Short Answer Type Questions

- 1) Briefly discuss non-specific immunity.
- 2) Write a short note on the types of immunoglobulins.
- 3) What are the functions of Major Histocompatibility Complex (MHC).
- 4) Discuss Type I and Type II hypersensitivity.

4.6.5. Long Answer Type Questions

- 1) Give the mechanism of innate immunity.
- 2) Classify and explain the types of immunoglobulins.
- 3) Write a detailed note on the types of hypersensitivity reactions.

CHAPTER 5

Immunisation

5.1. VACCINES

5.1.1. Introduction

The term **vaccine** has been derived from the Latin word **vacc** which means **cow**. But according to medical definition, vaccines are **pharmaceutical suspensions or solutions of immunogenic substances intended to induce active immunity**. Previously, the term vaccine had limited use only for specialised compound which necessarily consist of whole microorganisms; however, nowadays the term vaccine is applied to all the agents of active immunisation. The process of active immunisation is known as **vaccination**.

According to British Pharmacopoeia , ‘vaccines are preparations containing antigenic substances capable of inducing a specific and active immunity in man’.

Vaccines may also be considered as curative agents , which are predominantly derived either by direct or indirect means from disease-causing microorganisms.

5.1.2. Classification

Vaccines are classified as follows based on the type of preparation involved in their manufacture:

- 1) **Inactivated-Killed Vaccines:** These vaccines are prepared either by killing or inactivating the pathogen using heat or some chemical , thus altering its antigenicity. These vaccines are first administered as a primary dose and then as booster dose(s).

The inactivated-killed vaccines may be:

- i) **Bacterial Vaccines :** Vaccination against typhoid, cholera, plague, haemophilus influenza, whooping cough, and meningococcal infections. The patients show a delayed antibody response which may appear after a week or several weeks. These vaccines are ineffective when introduced during the incubation period or when the disease is in active stage.
 - ii) **Viral Vaccines:** Rabies, influenza, hepatitis and polio vaccines.
- 2) **Live Attenuated Vaccines:** In these vaccines, a non-virulent microorganism is used that retained its antigenicity. These vaccines make an individual permanently immune (i.e., for a lifetime) against a disease . These vaccines should not be administered to immune-compromised patients (with a weak immune system).

The live-attenuated vaccines may be:

- i) **Bacterial Vaccines:** BCG.
- ii) **Viral Vaccines:** MMR and polio sabin.

- 3) **Toxoids:** These preparations are prepared by the treatment of bacterial toxins with formalin. Thus, even if the toxicity of bacterial toxins is lost, their antigenicity is retained. Tetanus and diphtheria toxoids are the **examples** of commonly used ones.

5.1.3. General Method of Preparation

Bacterial vaccines are either sterile suspensions of live or killed bacteria or are sterile extracts of bacterial derivatives.

Toxoids are modified toxins which have been detoxified by moderate heat and chemical treatment in order to retain their antigenic property. Thus, they are the toxins whose toxicity has been removed. Toxoids are used for the development of active immunity.

Antisera (singular antiserum) are blood serum containing antibodies and renders passive immunity to an individual against several diseases. Antiserum is also known as **antitoxin**. Injection of antiserum provides immunoglobulins or antibodies. Injection of an antigen in animals causes diseases and the resultant antibodies are obtained in the form of antisera. However, probabilities of occurrence of allergic reactions are high because the antibodies are acquired from other animals. Besides being curative, antisera also provide immediate immunity.

5.1.3.1. Bacterial Vaccines

Bacterial vaccines are prepared using the selected strains of bacteria; thus, the bacteria are first tested for purity and identity. The steps involved are:

- 1) The selected strains of bacteria are cultivated on solid medium for 1-2 days and then washed with sterile normal saline.
- 2) The suspension obtained is shaken for uniform distribution.
- 3) The fragments on the medium (if present) are removed by centrifugation or sedimentation.
- 4) The suspension is then sterilised by heat treatment or by using alcohol or other bactericides.
- 5) Vaccines prepared from cultures of non-sporing bacteria are sterilised in a vaccine bath for an hour at 56-60°C temperature to kill all the bacteria.
- 6) The heat applied should kill the microorganisms but should also retain their antigenic properties.
- 7) After sterilisation of the suspension, the bacterial concentration in it is determined, desired dilutions are prepared, and a preservative (bacteriostatic agent) is added.
- 8) The product is filled into previously sterilised containers and sealed under aseptic conditions.

Vaccines are standardised by determining the number or the dry weight of microorganisms in 1ml of the product. As a safety measure against deterioration, such products are not used after 18-30 months of preparation. The vaccines

should be stored at a low temperature (above 0 °C and not exceeding 20 °C). The containers should bear a **label** with the following contents:

- 1) Preparation name,
- 2) Number or the dry weight of microorganisms in 1ml, and
- 3) Nature and strength of the substance (other than the diluent) with which the vaccine is combined.

The label on the container or the wrapper on the pack should bear:

- 1) The name, address and licence number of the manufacturer,
- 2) The preparation date,
- 3) The date up to which the potency can be retained under proper storage conditions,
- 4) The name and percentage of antiseptic added,
- 5) The precautionary measures for storage, and
- 6) The batch number.

5.1.3.2. Toxoids

Formal Toxoid (FT) is prepared by selecting a suitable strain of bacteria, cultivating on a liquid medium, and incubating under optimum conditions until a satisfactory level of toxin is produced. Microorganisms are retained on the paper pulp and by filtration the filtrate is sterilised. Formaldehyde solution is added and the mixture incubated at 37°C to remove toxicity. This complete process takes 2 months.

Alum Precipitated Toxoid (APT) is a high quality formal toxoid which has been treated with charcoal to remove the colouring matter and other impurities. The charcoal is then removed by filtration. Alum is added in a suitable concentration to react with the bicarbonate, phosphate and protein impurities. As a result, a precipitate (containing aluminium hydroxide and phosphate) is formed on which the toxoid is adsorbed. Then the precipitate is washed and suspended in a bactericide-containing saline. The product is obtained in the form of a depot.

Purified Toxoid Aluminium Phosphate (PTAT) is a purer form of toxoid in comparison to APT. It is prepared using a semi-synthetic medium excluding the non-specific material. It can also be prepared by purifying the toxoid with magnesium hydroxide to precipitate colour, phosphate, and some proteins. PTAT like APT also has a depot effect (slow release of antigen in the tissues to provide a prolonged effect).

5.1.3.3. Viral Vaccines

Viruses grow on a living medium (contrary to bacteria which can grow on non-living media). They cause infectious diseases in humans, animals, and plants. Some common viral diseases are influenza, common cold, measles, mumps, poliomyelitis, smallpox, yellow fever, rabies, etc. Viral vaccines are prepared using free living animals, fertile eggs, and tissue cultures. Viruses are grown in the chorioallantoic membrane of incubated fertile hen eggs or in whole animals.

5.1.3.4. Antitoxins

Passive immunisation is needed when the immune system of the host is not capable of producing enough number of antibodies or when the host is already infected. Thus, passive immunisation is a method for curative measurements, and

not preventive. The term **antiserum** (antisera) is used because the antibodies remain present in the serum part of the blood of an animal. Normally, γ -globulins are present in the antiserum that is produced in the serum by an artificially inoculated animal. Antisera can also be collected from humans recovering from viral infections (e.g., mumps). For commercial production mainly horses are used. A small dose of tetanus toxins is introduced into the blood of the horse that makes the horse to produce antibodies against tetanus. The antibodies developed against specific toxin are known as antitoxins. Commercially antitoxins are produced for the control of diphtheria, botulism, and tetanus.

The method for the production of stable and concentrated antiserum was first given by **Gracia** in **1976**. Normal serum is collected from the previously immunised animals and kept for fractionation into two fractions. First part contains high molecular weight globulins and albumins, whereas the second part contains low molecular weight globulins and albumins.

The first fraction of high molecular weight protein and antibody is treated and the lipid part of it is removed. The serum is re-precipitated to obtain a highly concentrated antibody paste. The second part of serum that has a low molecular weight fraction is further treated to give a stable protein solution having albumins, and α - and β -globulins. This part is used as diluent for antibodies and other biological matters. The antisera obtained by such procedure have many advantages over the starting material, i.e., it has greater antibody potency, absence of any particulate or foreign infectious agent, as well as remains stable over a wide range of temperature (5-40°C).

5.1.3.5. Serum

Serum is the liquid fraction of whole blood collected after the blood is allowed to clot. The clot is removed by centrifugation and the supernatant (called as serum) obtained is removed with a Pasteur pipette.

Whole blood is collected in a covered test tube and left undisturbed at room temperature to allow clotting. Clot is formed in 15 -30 minutes, and it is then removed by centrifugation for 10 minutes in a refrigerated centrifuge. The supernatant (liquid component) obtained after centrifugation is the serum, which is quickly transferred to a clean polypropylene tube with the help of a Pasteur pipette. The samples should be maintained at 2 -8°C while handling. If the serum is not analysed instantly, it should be distributed into 0.5ml aliquots, stored, and transported at -20°C or lower temperature. Freeze-thaw cycles should be avoided because this is detrimental to many serum components. Samples which are haemolysed, icteric, or lipemic can invalidate certain tests.

5.1.4. Storage Conditions and Stability of Official Vaccines

Many biological preparations become unstable during storage and thus their safety and efficacy are reduced. Proteins and other macromolecules may be sensitive to heat, light, radiation, and environmental changes, or they may interact with the container materials or other components of the vaccine mixture.

Determining these relationships and optimising stability from the time of production to administration is an important part of vaccine development. The potency of vaccine may reduce as a function of the time elapsed since production even if optimal conditions are maintained.

The stability of vaccines may undergo significant changes after being exposed to temperature fluctuations during handling or storage. Thus, the in stability characteristics should be determined through testing, and the storage and handling conditions should be defined to ensure that minimum standards of potency, identity, and purity continue to be met throughout the shelf-life.

5.1.4.1. Bacillus Calmette-Guerin or BCG Vaccine

Bacillus Calmette -Guerin (BCG) vaccine provides immunisation against tuberculosis. It is prepared using live attenuated (weakened) bovine tuberculosis bacillus strain of *Mycobacterium bovis*, which has lost its virulence in human.

Preparation

A pure culture of an authentic strain of attenuated *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (of Calmette and Guerin) is grown for 2 weeks on a suitable media. The attenuated strains are collected and suspended in a liquid medium designed to preserve the antigenicity and viability of vaccine. It is dispensed either in the freeze dried form or in liquid form.

Method of Administration

Before administering the BCG vaccine, a tuberculin skin test should be done in the patients (except in neonates). If a patient with a positive tuberculin reaction is administered with the vaccine, he/she is at a high risk of severe local inflammation and scarring. It is a false belief that people showing positive tuberculin reaction do not require BCG vaccine as they already possess immunity against it; however, these patients should further undergo a screening for the presence of active tuberculosis. BCG is administered as a single injection given via intradermal route at the point of insertion of the deltoid muscle. Accidental subcutaneous administration develops a localised abscess (known as a BCG -oma), which further leads to ulcerations and is treated with antibiotics.

Storage Conditions and Stability

BCG vaccine is freeze -dried and should be stored in dark places at 2 -8°C temperature. It is more stable if stored at temperatures as low as -20°C. It should be protected from light. The diluent should be stored in a cool place. The diluent should not be frozen or else the vaccine will denature due to freezing and thawing. During transportation, the vaccine should be kept on ice in a cool bag.

BCG is very sensitive to heat, light, and neon light. Under suitable storage conditions, the effectiveness of the vaccine can be maintained even after two years of manufacture. The recommended maximum time for which BCG vaccine can be stored and consumed (i.e., its expiry) is two years from the date when the last potency test performed yielded satisfactory results. However, the vaccine remains effective for 2 years only when stored in dark under the required temperature.

5.1.4.2. Pertussis Vaccine (Whooping Cough Vaccine)

Pertussis (or whooping cough) is an acute, communicable disease, caused by *Bordetella pertussis* (a small, non-motile, and gram-negative bacillus). This bacterium takes 7-10 days for incubation; a catarrhal stage follows the peculiar paroxysmal cough that ends in a whooping inspiration. Pertussis can be prevented if the infants are immunised against it from the time they are of three months. The patients of whooping cough are provided symptomatic and supportive treatment. Pertussis vaccine is a whole cell preparation obtained from the killed *Bordetella pertussis*. It is also the third constituent of the DTP triple vaccine.

Preparation

- 1) *B. pertussis* isolated from an infected patient is dried and cultured under specific culture conditions. This phase of collecting a sterile suspension of *B. pertussis* is the Phase-I.
- 2) The **cup-plate method** is used for isolating the microorganisms from the patient, which are then collected once they are in a smooth and virulent form, generally referred to as Phase-I. It has been observed that microorganisms in Phase-I appear smooth, but when grown on an unfavourable media, a S → R variation takes place with the loss of important antigens. Phase-IV corresponds to a fully developed rough form.
- 3) **Bordet-Gengou blood agar media** is used for growing the microorganisms and then incubating them for 24-74 hours.
- 4) Then it is suspended in NaCl-containing injection, and the obtained suspension is centrifuged. The bacterial mass is then shifted to NaCl injection consisting of 0.01-0.02% thimerosal to prevent the growth of bacteria, without altering the antigenic properties of the prepared vaccine.

Standardisation

Each dose of 0.5ml should have 7.5µg of pertussis antigens, which are expressed as protein nitrogen. The obtained vaccine constitutes inactivated PT and FHA proteins each in 23.4µg amounts.

Storage Conditions and Stability

The concentrated preparation obtained is stored for 3 months in a refrigerator to reduce its toxicity. After 3 months, the preparation is diluted with adequate amounts of NaCl injection so that its opacity is greater than twice to that of the standard preparation in a final concentration of 0.01% of thimerosal. Thus, thimerosal kills the present microorganisms. This vaccine does not require heat treatment.

5.1.4.3. Cholera Vaccine

Cholera vaccine is the homogeneous suspension of strains of *Vibrio cholera*. This vaccine is either dispensed in liquid form or prepared instantly before use by reconstituting the dried vaccine with an appropriate sterile liquid.

Preparation

Equal portion of the strain Inaba and Ogawa of *Vibrio cholera* are used for preparing cholera vaccine. These strains are selected to provide high proficiency against antigens. Initially, each strain of *Vibrio cholerae* is grown individually on

a solid medium for 1-2 days (seed-lot system). Then the bacteria are washed with a normal saline solution. Thereafter the bacterial suspension is either heated at 56°C temperature for one hour or treated with a bactericide (e.g., phenol or formaldehyde). The vaccine can also be added with a preservative. This process kills the suspended bacteria.

Standardisation

Two variants of cholera vaccine are available. The first one is evaluated in mice and consists of inactivated strains of *V. cholera* (similar to cellular typhoid vaccine). The effectiveness of the cellular and LPS vaccines depends on their ability to derive serum vibriocidal antibodies. The second type of vaccine consists of an attenuated orally administered strain of *V. cholera*.

Storage Conditions and Stability

Cholera vaccine should be stored at 2-8°C temperature, and should not be frozen.

5.1.4.4. Tetanus Toxoid

Tetanus vaccine is a clear liquid which may appear either colourless or brownish-yellow. It may also be slightly turbid in appearance and is free of visible particles or lumps. It has a characteristic odour of formaldehyde.

Preparation

Tetanus toxins produced in the growing phase of the bacterium *Clostridium tetani* are used for preparing tetanus vaccine. The tetanus formol toxoid is prepared by the treatment of tetanus toxoid with formaldehyde solution. Tetanus toxoid adsorbed or adsorbed tetanus vaccines are obtained by adsorbing the tetanus antigens on aluminium phosphate or aluminium potassium sulphate (acting as a mineral adjuvant).

Standardisation

The end-products should meet the established strength of 5 -7.5 Lf units in each 0.5ml of the dose.

Storage Conditions and Stability

Tetanus toxoid should be stored at 2-8°C (35-46°F) temperature, and should not be frozen. If the product has been frozen, it should not be used.

5.1.4.5. Rabies Vaccine

Rabies vaccine is a fluid or a freeze-dried preparation consisting of rabies virus (a neurotropic virus), which has been cultivated either in the neural tissue of sheep, goats, rabbits, mice, or rats or in the cell cultures.

Preparation

Method-I (Seed-Lot System)

- 1) The virus used in the final vaccine represents not more than five cultures from the seed lot used for producing vaccine on which laboratory and clinical tests were carried out to determine the suitable strain.

- 2) For initial cell growth, animal serum (in concentration not more than one part per million) may be used in the medium; however, no protein is present in the medium used for maintaining the cell cultures during virus multiplication.
- 3) The cell culture medium contains a suitable pH indicator (e.g., phenol red) and antibiotics in smallest effective concentrations.
- 4) Virus suspension is harvested one or more times during incubation. Multiple harvests from a single cell lot are regarded as a single virus suspension.
- 5) The suspension obtained is tested for identity, bacterial sterility, and freedom from extraneous viruses. If the suspension complies with these three vital tests, it is inactivated, purified, and concentrated.
- 6) The amplification test should be carried out for the residual infectious rabies virus in cell cultures derived from the species employed in vaccine production to confirm inactivation of the rabies virus. The quantum of virus used is equivalent to not less than 25 human-doses of the vaccine.
- 7) **Test for Live Virus:** The samples of cell -culture fluids are inoculated into mice, and no live virus is detected.
- 8) The resulting rabies vaccine is aseptically transferred into sterile containers (e.g., ampoules) and sealed hermetically for freeze drying. The inherent residual moisture content is low enough to ensure vaccine stability.
- 9) **Potency Test:** The maintenance of potency is verified in an accelerated degradation test in which the vaccine is stored at 37°C temperature for 4 weeks.

Method-II (From Chick and Duck Embryos)

Rabies vaccine should be prepared from tissues lacking essential encephalitogenic material. Therefore, the rabies virus strains are grown in chick or duck embryos. The viruses grown in duck-embryo are inactivated by β -propiolactone.

Method-III (From Brains of Suckling Mice, Rats, Rabbits, and Sheep)

The rabies vaccines prepared using brains of suckling mice, rats, rabbits, and sheep should follow the vital potential standards. The Pharmacopoeial method involves the following **steps**:

- 1) The rabbits and sheep are infected intracerebrally with fixed rabies virus.
- 2) After 24 hours the expected symptoms appear and the rabbits or sheep become completely paralysed.
- 3) Thereafter they are killed and their brains are harvested and homogenised in NaCl injection.
- 4) The resulting viruses are inactivated using phenol (the chemical of choice) or other chemical substances like formaldehyde solution (formalin), β -propiolactone or UV-light.
- 5) The preparation is diluted to contain appropriate amount of brain material.

Standardisation

According to the WHO standards, the rabies vaccine should possess a potency of 16 International Units of Rabies Vaccine (based on the immunogenicity assays) per ampoule. Also, 10 International Units (IU) of the Rabies Virus Glycoprotein and 135 IU of the Rabies Virus Ribonucleoprotein has been assigned to the contents of each ampoule.

Storage Conditions and Stability

Freeze-dried rabies vaccine should be stored at 2-8°C (35-46°F) temperature, and should not be frozen. The vaccine remains stable only when the storage conditions are strictly followed.

5.1.4.6. Polio Vaccine

Polio is an acute infectious inflammation of the anterior horns of the grey matter of the spinal cord, which results in acute systemic infectious disease and paralysis. If the disease is mild, it is limited to respiratory and gastrointestinal symptoms lasting from a few days to weeks; however in case of a major infection, muscle paralysis or weakening along with loss of superficial and deep reflexes occurs. Polio is caused by poliovirus, which initially inhabits the gastrointestinal tract, specifically the oropharynx and the intestine, and infects the mucosal cells of the oropharynx and the intestine. In most of the patients, the virus settles in the gastrointestinal tract, and is thus completely replaced by the cells.

Variants of Polio Vaccine

- 1) **Oral Polio Vaccine (OPV):** This variant was initially developed by **Sabin** (an American researcher), and is a mixture of live attenuated strains of the three polio viruses, i.e., Type 1, 2, and 3:
 - i) OPV is given orally to the children when they are of 3 months, $4\frac{1}{2}$ to 5 months, and finally at $8\frac{1}{2}$ to 11 months. These doses are administered at the same time when the initial course of triple DTP vaccination is given.
 - ii) A booster dose is given orally when the children are of 4 to 5 years and also when of 15 to 18 years.
 - iii) The polio virus grows in the lymphoid tissue associated with the gut epithelium; thereby generate local and humoral immunity.
 - iv) The faecal excretion of the vaccine strains persist for a few weeks, thus the family members of the children given OPV are advised on hygienic handling and proper disposal of napkins/diapers, etc. Any non-immune family member should also be immunised.
 - v) OPV should not be given to hypogammaglobulinaemic children.
- 2) **Salk Type Polio or Salk Filled Vaccine:** This vaccine is a formaldehyde inactivated mixture of the strains of the three types of polio viruses (i.e., Type 1, 2, and 3), and is highly effective. In several countries, this vaccine was later replaced with Sabin type polio vaccine.

Preparation

- i) The type 1, 2, and 3 polio viruses are separately grown in suspended or fixed cell cultures of monkey (Rhesus monkeys) kidney tissue.
- ii) Rhesus monkeys are quarantined on arrival and checked for TB and other communicable diseases before as well as after death.
- iii) The monkey kidney cell should not have been propagated in series and are obtained from a continuous line of cell.

- iv) For both types of vaccines, the inclusion of serum in the culture media used for maintaining cell growth during virus propagation is prohibited; however, the serum may be included in the media used to initiate the growth of tissue cells. This prevents the serum reactions on administration of such preparations. This condition is more important in the inactivated vaccine administered parenterally; and thus a prescribed limit of 1ppm of serum is added in the final product.
- v) Healthy Rhesus monkeys are anaesthetised and their kidneys are removed and decapsulated. Their cortical tissues are coarsely disintegrated and suspended in Number 199 substrate.
- vi) The chopped tissues are treated for 20 minutes with several lots of dilute, warm trypsin solution (each of 0.5% concentration and 7.6 pH). As a result of this treatment, the tissue framework undergoes partial hydrolysis, and helps in separating the cells into a free suspension while maintaining their viability and efficacy.
- vii) The cells are then centrifuged, washed, and re-suspended in a complex medium (of a density of $3 \times 10^{-5} \text{ ml}^{-1}$), which is either an admixture of No. 199 substrate plus calf serum or an admixture of lactoalbumin hydrolysate plus serum.
- viii) The suspension obtained is inoculated into a large vessel and incubated for 5 days so that the cells properly form a monolayer on the glass surface.
- ix) When optimal growth has been achieved, the liquor is poured off and the cells are washed with BSS-medium. After adding fresh medium, a small inoculation with one specific strain on the 'virulent stock' virus is made.
- x) Separate batches for each type are made and incubated for 3 days till the full effect of the virus degeneration takes place. By this time, the medium contains free virus particles in high concentration.
- xi) The debris is removed by centrifugation and the supernatant layer is cooled. If these are not required immediately, the deep frozen strains are kept separately which can now be batched to larger volume(s) as per the requirement.
- xii) After the completion of this harvesting step, the virus suspension obtained is tested to confirm the presence of the correct strain of polio virus, and also to confirm that the virus titer is above the specified bare minimum level. It is also checked whether or not the suspension is free from viral, bacterial and fungal contaminants.
- xiii) Then the suspension is passed through the filters having increased fineness so that the remnants of tissue cells (viruses from the inactivating agent) and bacteria can be removed.
- xiv) Liquors containing the virus particles are treated with dilute formaldehyde (0.01% v/v) under optimum conditions of pH and temperature using a magnetic stirrer. The tissue cells and bacteria can be removed in 6 days, however in actual practice 12 days are required to ascertain 100% absence of any active virus.
- xv) The suspension may be re-filtered at the half-way stage (i.e., after a week). The rate at which inactivation takes its normal course is followed

for several days on regular intervals; and subsequently between the 9th and 12th day larger samples are tested for the total and absolute absence of the infecting virus.

- xvi) The formalised and sterile viral solution is subjected to dialysis and checked properly. The univalent vaccines of the three strains are blended to form the desired trivalent product. At this stage, large numbers of samples are again re-examined to confirm that they are free from the infective virus. Finally, the added formaldehyde solution is neutralised by adding sodium metabisulphite.
 - xvii) A requisite quantum of thimerosal is added as a bactericide. An aliquot of soluble disodium edetate is also added to sequester heavy metals (as chelates) that would otherwise decompose the thimerosal into products toxic to the virus.
 - xviii) The entire procedure from the beginning to the final stage completes in 120 days. Most significantly, the toxoid is prepared for intramuscular injection by emulsifying it with mineral oil containing 3% highly purified mannide monooleate and 0.01% thimerosal (added as a preservative).
- 3) **Sabin Type Polio Vaccine:** The vigorous activity in this direction has revived with the development and broad-scale usage of Oral Polio Vaccine (OPV), comprising of living attenuated strains of the virus. However, the principle of its action is that these virus particles proliferate in the gut and release their modified toxins, which get absorbed directly into the blood stream and induce the formation of specific antibodies.

Preparation

- i) The manufacturing procedure of this vaccine is the same as that of the Salk vaccine, except in one aspect that the attenuated strains prepared by rapid passages through tissue cultures of monkey kidney cells are employed.
 - ii) The virus in the final vaccine should not represent more than three sub-cultures from a strain that has been proved satisfactory by laboratory and clinical tests. This, however, decreases the chance of using a vaccine which has been rendered either more virulent or lost antigenicity.
 - iii) No activation stage exists in this specific vaccine.
 - iv) This vaccine is tested to be free from the extraneous bacteria, moulds, and viruses. Also special tests are required to confirm the absence of virulent polio virus.
- 4) **Inactivated Poliomyelitis or Inactivated Polio Vaccine (BP -1993):** This vaccine is an aqueous suspension of appropriate strains of poliomyelitis virus (types 1, 2, and 3) grown in suitable cell cultures and inactivated by a suitable method. This vaccine is obtained as a clean liquid.

Preparation

- i) The inactivated polio vaccine is prepared based on a seed-lot system. The virus used in the final vaccine represents 10 sub-cultures (from the seed lots) used for producing the vaccine on which the laboratory and clinical tests to prove the strains to be suitable were carried out.

- ii) Animal serum is used in the medium for the initial cell growth but no protein is present in the medium used for maintaining cell culture during virus multiplication. The concentration of serum in the vaccine is not more than 1ppm.
- iii) A pH indicator (e.g., phenol red) and suitable antibodies (in smallest effective concentrations) are also added in the medium.
- iv) Each virus suspension is tested for its identity and bacterial sterility. After neutralisation they are also tested with specific antiserum to get rid of extraneous viruses.
- v) The virus suspension is then filtered, concentrated, and purified.
- vi) The suspension for each type of virus should contain not less than $7.0 \log_{10}$ CCID 50ml^{-1} .
- vii) Within a suitable time period of the last filtration (within 24 hours), suitable chemical substances are added which inactivate the virus filtrate without affecting its antigenicity. During inactivation, filtration is performed, and the inactivating substance is later neutralised.
- viii) Each monovalent suspension is tested in cell cultures to prove to be free from infective poliomyelitis virus and other human and simian (i.e., monkey like) viruses.
- ix) The trivalent vaccine is prepared by mixing suspensions of each type.
- x) Before any antimicrobial preservative is added, the trivalent suspension is tested to be free from infective poliomyelitis virus and other human and simian viruses.

- 5) **Poliomyelitis Vaccine, Live (Oral) or Polio Vaccine Live (Oral) (BP - 1993):** This vaccine is an aqueous clear suspension of live, attenuated strains of poliomyelitis virus (types 1, 2, or 3), grown in suitable cell cultures. The vaccine either contains any one of the three types of virus or a mixture of two or three of them.

Preparation

- i) This vaccine is prepared based on a seed -lot system. The final vaccine represents not more than three sub -cultures (from the vaccine) made by carrying out the laboratory and clinical tests to show the strains to be suitable.
- ii) Each type of polio virus is grown in cultures that do not contain any extraneous microorganism.
- iii) Animal serum is used in the medium for the initial cell growth but no protein is present in the medium used for maintaining cell culture during virus multiplication.
- iv) A pH indicator (e.g., phenol red) and suitable antibodies (in smallest effective concentrations) are also added in the medium.
- v) Each virus suspension is tested for its identity, bacterial sterility, and freedom from extraneous viruses.
- vi) Then the virus harvests that pass these tests are filtered through a bacteria-retentive filter.
- vii) The filtered virus harvest is tested in cell cultures for its identity, growth capacity at different temperatures, and virus concentration.

- viii) A test for neurovirulence is performed by intraspinal injection into *Macaca irus* (cynomolgus monkey) or equally susceptible animals. The vaccine and a reference homotypic vaccine are simultaneously examined in monkeys of the same quarantine batch.

Storage Conditions and Stability

Polio vaccine is potent if stored at temperature below -20°C until the expiry date indicated on the vial. It can be stored for six months at $5 \pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$ temperature.

5.1.4.7. Typhoid Vaccine

Typhoid vaccine is a mixture of suspension of killed *Salmonella typhi* and tetanus formol (i.e., formaldehyde solution) toxoid. In 1ml of this vaccine, either 1000 or 2000 million typhoid bacilli, viz., *S. typhi*.

Preparation

- 1) **Strain of *Salmonella typhi*:** The Ty 2 strain of *S. typhi* is used for preparing vaccine as it is considered safe and effective in humans. The culture used should be identified by a record of its history, including the source from which it was obtained, and particulars of all tests made periodically for verification of strain characters. The **culture** used should exhibit the following **features**:
 - i) Stained smears made from a culture should be of *S. typhi*.
 - ii) The colonies of a culture should show the opalescence of a Vi-rich strain of *S. typhi*.
 - iii) When a live suspension of a culture in saline is titrated with potent anti - Vi, anti -H and anti -O sera of known agglutinating titres, it should agglutinate to titre with the anti -H and anti-Vi sera, but show little or no agglutination with the anti -O serum. The suspension after boiling, however, should agglutinate to titre with anti-O serum.
 - iv) The use of calibrated agglutinating sera for these tests and the ranges of titres cannot be specified as relevant international reference sera are not yet established and different laboratories have different testing methods.
 - v) A saline suspension of a young culture (in a dose of not more than 50×10^6 organisms) on intraperitoneal injection into 15 -20gm mice of a susceptible strain should kill at least 50% of the animals.
- 2) **Seed-Lot System:** Typhoid vaccine should be prepared based on a seed -lot system. A large seed-lot should be set aside as the basic material from which the manufacturer can prepare vaccine and further seed lots can also be prepared easily. Cultures of a seed-lot should have the same characteristics as required of cultures of the strains from which the seed-lot was derived.

Standardisation

- 1) **Identity Test:** This test should be performed on a labelled container from each filling lot. The antigenicity test on this labelled container is performed by immune precipitation method.
- 2) **Sterility Test:** The sterility test on each filling lot should be performed as per the requirements.

- 3) **Innoccuity Test:** Each filling lot should be tested for abnormal toxicity by tests (approved by the National Control Authority) involving parenteral injections into guinea pigs and mice. In the tests, 0.5ml of subcutaneous or intramuscular injection is given to atleast two mice (of 20gm each). 5ml dose is injected in to two guinea pigs (of 350gm each). The animals should be observed for a week. The injection should cause neither significant symptoms nor death during this period.
- 4) **Antigenicity Test :** Each filling lot should be tested for specific antigenic characteristics by two tests; one for the protection of mice against challenge with a virulent strain of *S. typhi*, and the other for anti -O, anti-H and anti-Vi agglutinin-production in rabbits.

Storage Conditions and Stability

The dried typhoid vaccine should be stored at below 25°C temperature, whereas the liquid typhoid vaccine should be stored between 2-10°C.

5.1.4.8. Hepatitis Vaccine

Hepatitis A and B are two members of a family of closely related diseases; while the others are hepatitis C, D, and E caused by a viral infection. The viruses causing each type of hepatitis are different, but their transmission modes for the diseases are the same. Hepatitis is characterised by inflammation in liver. The consequences of the disease are potentially serious, and even fatal. There are no vaccines available for hepatitis C, D, or E; however, hepatitis A and B can be prevented by the available effective vaccines.

Preparation

Hepatitis vaccine in laboratories are prepared by a series of steps, which include initial concentration of surface antigen by ammonium sulphate precipitation, and then isopycnic banding and rate zonal centrifugation in a K₂-II centrifuge. The partially purified antigen concentrate is digested with pepsin at pH 2 and the antigen is unfolded in 8M urea solution followed by denaturation.

After gel filtration, the antigen is treated with formalin (in 1:4000 dilution), adsorbed on alum, and preserved with thimerosal. The final product obtained is pure hepatitis B surface antigen. The process relies on physical elimination of infectious virus particles and treatment with highly viral -destructive reagents in the pepsin (pH 2), urea and formalin steps.

Storage Conditions and Stability

Hepatitis vaccine should be stored and maintained at 5 -8°C temperature. The vaccine should not be frozen.

5.1.4.9. AIDS Vaccine

An HIV vaccine is currently not available, but efforts are being made to develop such vaccine. Research on vaccine begins with basic laboratory research, product development, and animal experiments (performed in academic laboratories and by the pharmaceutical industries).

Then the so obtained products (candidate vaccines) are tested on healthy human volunteers through sequential phases. Phase I and II trials provide data on the safety of candidate vaccines and on their ability to induce immune responses specific to HIV. These trials are performed on small group of volunteers (50 -200 per trial).

If the results obtained are satisfactory, candidate vaccines proceed to large -scale Phase III trials so that complete information on their efficacy in inducing protection against HIV infection or AIDS can be determined. For scientific reasons, Phase III trials are carried out in populations with a high incidence of HIV infection, involving thousands of volunteers.

Development of AIDS Vaccine

Since HIV was identified as the causative agent of AIDS, many efforts were made to develop a safe and effective vaccine against it. Some of the vaccine types designed includes:

- 1) **Inactivated Whole Viruses:** This is prepared following the same procedure as that for the Salk polio vaccine. HIV -I and SIV preparations are produced by irradiating the virus and then treating with formaldehyde to inactivate the retroviral genome. The resultant non -infectious SIV or HIV preparations are used as vaccines. The initial trials conducted on animals proved to be promising; however, the results were challenged as the SIV vaccine was prepared by growing SIV in human T-cell cultures.
- 2) **Attenuated Viruses:** This is prepared following the same procedure as that for the Sabin polio vaccine, in which the live polio virus is grown in monkey kidneys. On growing a live virus under scarce culture conditions, the viruses are forced to mutate to survive in the new growing conditions.

The viral vaccines used today are mostly attenuated vaccines. Since the attenuated vaccine is live, it can infect cells and grow for a limited time before it gets eliminated by the immune response. However during this time, the attenuated virus induces a potent immune response, and also generates cell-mediated Cytotoxic T -Lymphocytes (CTLs) specific for the endogenously produced viral antigens. The attenuated viral vaccines also have the advantage of inducing a good memory cell response, which is responsible for the life-long immunity developed by these vaccines.

- 3) **Cloned Envelope Glycoproteins:** The first cloned gp 160 vaccine was produced in 1987 by MicroGeneSis, Inc. Until now, several groups have used genetic engineering techniques to produce gp 120 or gp 160 for immunisation by cloning the gp 120 gene or the entire gp 160 genes. On administering the cloned gp 160 vaccine, humoral immunity is induced. The antibodies produced in the volunteers inhibit viral replication *in vitro*; this inhibition however, is always strain specific.
- 4) **Recombinant Viruses Carrying HIV Genes:** The development of this effective AIDS vaccine is based on the use of recombinant vectors. Vaccinia virus and the Sabin polio virus are live attenuated vaccines. These viruses

can be engineered to carry genes from HIV -I, and the recombinant virus can then be used as a vaccine. As the recombinant virus is attenuated and not inactivated, it infects the host cells and induces CTL activity. Vaccinia virus is large and can be engineered to carry a few dozen foreign genes without weakening its capacity of infecting the host cells and replicating within them. Engineered vaccinia virus can be easily administered by dermal scratching. The virus causes a limited localised infection in the host cells.

The foreign genes are expressed by the vaccinia. If the foreign gene product is a viral envelope protein, it is inserted into the membrane of the infected host cell where it induces T-cell mediated immunity.

5.1.4.10. Diphtheria Antitoxin

Diphtheria vaccine is prepared by adsorbing formol toxoid on a mineral carrier. The Absorbed Diphtheria Vaccine (ADV) is a preparation obtained from the diphtheria formal toxoid containing 1500 Lf of localitainis [Lf] per mg of protein nitrogen and a mineral carrier (hydrated aluminium hydroxide or aluminium phosphate or calcium phosphate in a saline solution or another suitable solution isotonic with blood).

Preparation

- 1) The formal toxoid is prepared using the toxins produced by *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* in its growing phase. The toxoid has at least 1500Lf per mg of protein nitrogen.
- 2) Hydrated $\text{Al}(\text{OH})_3$, AlPO_4 , or $\text{Ca}_3(\text{PO}_4)_2$ are used as mineral carrier. The resultant solution obtained shows isotonicity with blood.
- 3) The antimicrobial preservatives (mostly phenolic type) which adversely affect the antigenic properties of antigens should not be added to the vaccine.
- 4) ADV-BP-1993 with at least 30 units per dose should be used. It should be stored at 2 -8°C temperature, should not be frozen, and should be protected from light.

Variants of Diphtheria Vaccines

- 1) **Adsorbed Diphtheria Vaccine (ADV) for Adults and Adolescents (BP - 1993) [Dip/Vac/Ads (Adults)]:** This preparation should contain not less than 2 units per dose (i.e., 2.0Lf per dose).
- 2) **Diphtheria Toxoid (DT) (USP XXIII):** *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* in its growing phase is treated with formaldehyde and the product obtained is stored as a sterile solution. The preservative used should not be of the phenolic type. The preparation should be stored at 2 -8°C temperature, and should not be frozen.
- 3) **Diphtheria Toxoid Adsorbed (DTA) (USP XXIII):** This preparation is a plain diphtheria toxoid used either in precipitated form or that has adsorbed phosphate in addition, prepared as a sterile solution. The preparation should be stored at 2-8°C temperature, and should not be frozen.

Storage Conditions and Stability

Diphtheria vaccine should be stored and maintained at 2 –8°C temperature. The vaccine should not be frozen.

Properties of Diphtheria Toxin and Toxoid

Table 5.1: Properties of Diphtheria Toxin and Toxoid

Properties	Diphtheria Toxin	Diphtheria Toxoid
Toxicity	Highly toxic.	No specific toxicity.
Reactions	Causes an inflamed area around the site of injection.	Causes local reactions , especially in elderly subjects.
Stability	Not quite stable.	Quite stable at room temperature (2±2°C) for atleast 2 years.
Antibody Formation	Stimulate the formation of antibodies when injected.	Stimulate the formation of antibodies when injected.
Combination with Antitoxin	Positive	Positive

5.2. HYBRIDOMA TECHNOLOGY

5.2.1. Introduction

G. Kohler and **C. Milstein** in **1975** first discovered the hybridoma technology. It is used for producing hybrid cells by fusing B –lymphocyte with tumour or myeloma cells. The hybrid cells produced using hybridoma technology, are either cultured in laboratory or sub-cultured using mouse peritoneal cavity. Thus, due to the presence of B –lymphocyte genetic material the hybrid cells can produce antibodies. The tumour cells used to produce hybrid cells make them undergo indefinite division in the culture.

The B -lymphocytes involved are pre -programmed to respond to a single type of antigen or antigenic determinant, thus they produce a single type of antibody that shows specificity for a specific antigen. The reaction of an antigen with B –lymphocyte receptors triggers the rapid division of lymphocytes. As a result, a clone of B cells is produced that generate antibodies against that specific antigen.

This entire process is called **clonal selection** in which B-lymphocytes produce a single type of antibodies specific to a single type of antigen or antigenic determinant. However, a fully differentiated antibody producing B-lymphocytes (known as **plasma cells**) does not undergo division when cultured in a laboratory.

5.2.2. Principle

The myeloma cells used in hybridoma technology should not synthesise their own antibodies. The hybridoma cells are selected based on inhibiting the nucleotide (subsequently, the DNA) synthesising machinery. The mammalian cells can synthesise nucleotides either by De novo synthesis or salvage pathway (**figure 5.1**).

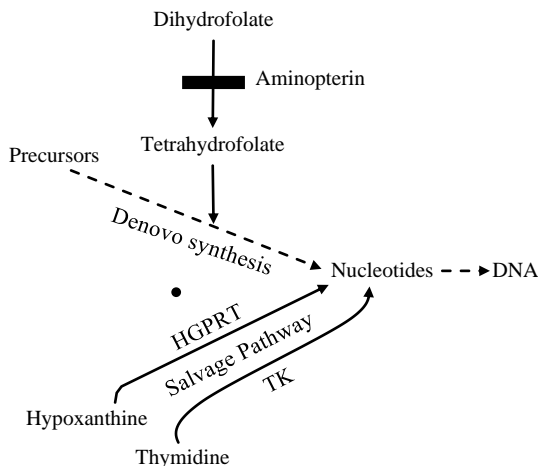


Figure 5.1: Pathways for the Nucleotide Synthesis (HGPRT-Hypoxanthine Guanine Phosphoribosyl Transferase; TK-Thymidine Kinase)

In the **De novo synthesis of nucleotides**, tetrahydrofolate formed from dihydrofolate is required. Aminopterin (an inhibitor) is used to block the formation of tetrahydrofolate (and therefore nucleotides).

In the **salvage pathway**, the purines and pyrimidines are converted into the corresponding nucleotides. The key enzyme involved in the salvage pathway of purines is the Hypoxanthine Guanine Phosphoribosyl Transferase (HGPRT), which converts hypoxanthine and guanine to inosine monophosphate and guanosine monophosphate, respectively. Thymidine Kinase (TK) is involved in the salvage pathway of pyrimidines and converts thymidine to Thymidine Monophosphate (TMP). If any of these enzymes (HGPRT or TK) undergo mutation, the salvage pathway gets blocked.

When the mutated cells (i.e., the cells deficient in HGPRT) are grown in a medium containing Hypoxanthine Aminopterin and Thymidine (HAT medium), they fail to survive as the de novo synthesis of purine nucleotides is inhibited. Thus, the cells deficient in HGPRT and grown in HAT medium die.

The hybridoma cells possess the ability of myeloma cells to grow *in vitro* with a functional HGPRT gene obtained from the lymphocytes fused with myeloma cells. Thus, only the hybridoma cells can proliferate in HAT medium, and this procedure is used for their selection.

5.2.3. Production of MAbs

The establishment of hybridomas and production of MAbs involves the following steps (**figure 5.2**):

- 1) Immunisation,
- 2) Cell fusion,
- 3) Selection of hybridomas,
- 4) Screening the products,
- 5) Cloning and propagation, and
- 6) Characterisation and storage.

5.2.3.2. Cell Fusion

The lymphocytes are thoroughly washed and mixed with HGPRT defective myeloma cells. The mixture of cells is treated with Polyethylene Glycol (PEG) but for a few minutes due to its toxicity. The cells are then washed to remove PEG and kept in a fresh medium. These cells contain a mixture of hybridomas (fused cells), free myeloma cells, and free lymphocytes.

5.2.3.3. Selection of Hybridomas

On culturing the cells in HAT medium, the hybridoma cells grow and the remaining cells disappear slowly within 7 -10 days. Selecting a single antibody producing hybrid cells is very essential, and is possible if the hybridomas are isolated and grown individually. The suspension of hybridoma cells is diluted to such intensity that the individual aliquots contain one cell each. These cells are grown in a regular culture medium to produce the desired antibody.

5.2.3.4. Screening the Products

The hybridomas should be screened for the secretion of the antibody of desired specificity, and the culture medium from each hybridoma culture should be tested occasionally (using ELISA and RIA techniques) for the desired antibody specificity. In both the techniques, i.e., ELISA and RIA, the antibody binds to the specific antigen (coated to plastic plates) and the unbound antibody and other components of the medium are washed off. Thus, the hybridoma cells producing the desired antibody are identified by screening. The antibody secreted by the hybrid cells is the **monoclonal antibody**.

5.2.3.5. Cloning and Propagation

The single hybrid cells producing the desired antibody are isolated and cloned by using the following two techniques:

- 1) **Limiting Dilution Method:** In this method, the suspension of hybridoma cells is serially diluted and aliquots of each dilution are transferred into microculture wells. The dilutions are made such that each aliquot in a well contains a single hybrid cell, thus ensuring that the antibody produced is monoclonal.
- 2) **Soft Agar Method:** In this method, the hybridoma cells are cultured in soft agar. Many cells can be grown simultaneously in a semisolid medium to form monoclonal colonies.

Practically, both these methods are used in combination to produce maximal MAbs.

5.2.3.6. Characterisation and Storage

The obtained monoclonal antibodies are subjected to biochemical and biophysical characterisation for the desired specificity. The MAbs should also be elucidated for the immunoglobulin class or sub-class, its specific epitope, and its number of binding sites.

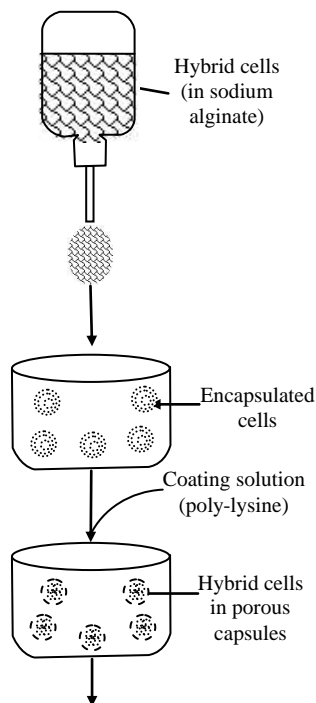
The stability of the cell lines and the MAbs is also important. Both are characterised to check their ability to withstand freezing and thawing by freezing the desired cell lines in liquid nitrogen at several stages of cloning and culture.

5.2.4. Large Scale Production of MABs

Production of MABs in culture bottles is low (5-10 μ g/ml), thus to increase the yield the hybrid cells are grown as ascites in the peritoneal cavity of mice. The ascitic fluid contains 5-20mg of MAB/ml, which is much superior to the *in vitro* cultivation techniques. Collection of MABs from ascitic fluid has a heavy risk of contamination by pathogenic organisms of the animal. Also many animals have to be sacrificed to produce MABs. Therefore, workers prefer *in vitro* techniques over using animals.

Encapsulated Hybridoma Cells for Commercial Production of MABs

To increase the hybridoma cell density in suspension culture, the hybridomas are encapsulated in alginate gels using a coating solution containing poly-L-lysine (figure 5.3); these gels allow the nutrients to enter in and antibodies to come out of the hybridomas. In this way, the yield of MAB production can be increased (10-100 μ g/ml).



Antibody production and separation
Figure 5.3: Production of Monoclonal Antibodies by Microencapsulation

5.2.5. Purification of MABs

The desired antibodies should be extracted from a media sample of cultured hybridomas or a sample of ascites fluid. The contaminants in the cell culture sample consists of growth factors, hormones, and transferrins. The *in vivo* sample however, contains host antibodies, proteases, nucleases, nucleic acids, and viruses. Other secretions by the hybridomas (like cytokines) may be present in both the cases. Endotoxins may also be present in case of bacterial contamination as they are secreted by the bacteria.

For purification, the sample is conditioned by removing cells, cell debris, lipids, and clotted materials through **centrifugation** and then **filtration** through a 0.45 μ m filter. **Membrane fouling** can be caused by the large particles in the further steps of purification. Moreover, the product concentration in the sample might not be sufficient, particularly in cases where the desired antibody is produced by a low-secreting cell line. Therefore, the sample is subjected to **ultrafiltration** or **dialysis** for condensation.

The charged impurities are mostly anions like nucleic acids and endotoxins, and are separated by **ion exchange chromatography**. At sufficiently low pH, **cation exchange chromatography** is conducted so that the desired antibody binds to the column and the anions flow through. While at sufficiently high pH, **anion exchange chromatography** is conducted so that the desired antibody flows through column and the anions bind to it.

Based on their **isoelectric point** (pI), many proteins and anions can be separated. **For example**, pI of albumin (4.8) is lower than the pI of most monoclonal antibodies (6.1). So, the average charge of albumin molecules at a certain pH is more negative. **Size exclusion chromatography** is used for removing transferrin.

Affinity purification is conducted to obtain maximum purity in a single step as the antigen used delivers antibody specificity. In this technique, the antibody-generating antigen is covalently bonded to agarose support. If the antigen is a peptide, it is synthesised with a terminal cysteine that allows selective attachment to a carrier protein (**e.g.**, Keyhole Limpet Hemocyanin, KLH) during development and to promote purification. The media, containing antibody is incubated with the immobilised antigen in batch. It can also be incubated as the antibody is passed through a column, at which it binds selectively and the impurities are rinsed. The purified antibody is recovered from the support by an elution using a low pH buffer or a gentle high salt elution buffer.

Sodium or ammonium sulphate is used to precipitate out the antibodies for their further selection. Antibodies precipitate at low salt concentrations, while other proteins precipitate at higher concentrations. To obtain best separation, salt should be added in sufficient amount, and the excess salt can be removed by desalting method like dialysis.

Chromatogram is used for the analysis of final purity. Presence of any impurities can be detected by the formation of peaks and the amount of impurity is indicated by the volume under the peaks. **Gel electrophoresis** and **capillary electrophoresis** can also be performed for the analysis of final purity. Presence of any impurities can be detected by the formation of bands of varying intensity.

5.2.6. Applications of MAbs

The application of monoclonal antibodies are:

- 1) Diagnostic applications,
- 2) Therapeutic applications,
- 3) Protein purification, and
- 4) Miscellaneous applications.

5.2.6.1. Diagnostic Applications

MAbs are used in biochemical analysis as diagnostic reagents and in imaging of diseases as diagnostic tools:

- 1) **MAbs in Biochemical Analysis:** In RIA and ELISA techniques, different diagnostic tests employing MAbs as diagnostic reagents are used. With these techniques, the circulating concentrations of hormones (**e.g.**, insulin, human chorionic gonadotropin, growth hormone, progesterone, thyroxine, triiodothyronine, gastrin, and renin) and many tissue and cell products (**e.g.**, blood group antigens, blood clotting factors, interferons, interleukins, and tumor markers) are determined.
 - i) **Pregnancy:** MAbs are used in the detection of pregnancy by measuring the urinary levels of human chorionic gonadotropin.

- ii) **Cancers:** MABs are used in the estimation of plasma Carcinoembryonic Antigen (CEA) in colorectal cancer, Prostate Specific Antigen (PSA) in prostate cancer, and tumour markers for prognosis of cancers.
 - iii) **Hormonal Disorders:** MABs are used in the analysis of thyroxine, triiodothyronine, and thyroid stimulating hormone for detecting thyroid disorders.
 - iv) **Infectious Diseases:** MABs are used in the detection of infectious diseases by determining the circulatory levels of antigens specific to the infectious agent, e.g., antigens of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* and herpes simplex virus for the diagnosis of STDs.
- 2) **MABs in Diagnostic Imaging: Immunoscintigraphy** is the technique in which radiolabeled-MABs are used in diagnostic imaging of diseases. When MABs labelled with radioisotopes (e.g., iodine-131 and technetium -99) are injected through intravenous route into the patients, they restrict at target sites (like a tumour) and then detected by radioactivity imaging.
- i) **Myocardial Infarction:** In myocardial necrosis (i.e., cardiac cell death), the myosin (cardiac protein) gets exposed. Antimyosin MAB labelled with indium chloride-111 radioisotope is used in the detection of myosin and the myocardial infarction site. Radiolabelled antimyosin MAB is used for detecting the location and the degree of damage to the heart. Hence, this technique can be used in diagnosing heart attacks.
 - ii) **Deep Vein Thrombosis (DVT):** It is the formation of blood clots (thrombus) in the blood veins, especially in the lower extremities. Radioisotope labelled MABs directed against fibrin or platelets are used for detecting DVT. The clots in thighs, pelvis, calves, and knees can be detected using fibrin specific MABs.
 - iii) **Atherosclerosis:** It is the thickening and loss of elasticity of arterial walls. The atherosclerotic lesions can be detected by using radiolabelled MAB directed against activated platelets.
 - iv) **Cancers:** By using radioisotope labelled MABs specific to the proteins(s), tumours of membrane origin can be detected. In **table 5.2**, some tumour markers used in MAB imaging of cancers are enlisted:

Table 5.2: Selected Tumour Markers along with the Associated Cancers used in MAB Imaging

Tumour Markers	Associated Cancer(s)
Carcinoembryonic Antigen (CEA)	Cancers of colon, stomach, and pancreas
α-fetoprotein	Cancers of liver and germ cells of testes
Human chorionic gonadotropin	Choriocarcinoma
Prostatic acid phosphatase	Prostate cancer
Epidermal growth factor receptor	Melanoma
Tumour-associated cell surface antigens	Various cancers

- v) **Bacterial Infections:** Many attempts in recent years have been made to identify the infection sites by directing MABs against bacterial antigens.

5.2.6.2. Therapeutic Applications

Monoclonal antibodies have the following therapeutic applications:

- 1) **MAbs as Direct Therapeutic Agents:** MAbs are used for direct enhancement of the immune function of the host. This minimises the toxicity to the target tissues or the host.
 - i) **In Destroying Disease-Causing Organisms:** MAbs aid effective opsonisation of pathogens (by coating with antibody) and enhance phagocytosis.
 - ii) **In Cancer Treatment:** MAbs are used in cancer treatment as they are effective against the antigens on the surface of cancer cells. The antibodies destroy the cancer cells by binding to them. With the help of MAbs, leukaemia, colorectal cancer, lymphoma, and melanoma have been treated in many patients.
 - iii) **In Immunosuppression of Organ Transplantation:** Immunosuppressive drugs (e.g., cyclosporine and prednisone) overcome organ transplantation rejections. MAbs specific to T-lymphocyte surface antigens are being used in the recent years for the same purpose.
 - iv) **In AIDS Treatment:** AIDS most significantly causes immunosuppression by reducing CD4 cells of T-lymphocytes. The HIV with the help of surface membrane glycoprotein (gp120) binds to the specific receptors on CD4 cells.
 - v) **In the Treatment of Autoimmune Diseases:** By using MAbs directed against T-lymphocytes and B-lymphocytes, a few achievements have been made in the clinical trials of rheumatoid arthritis patients.
- 2) **MAbs as Targeting Agents in Therapy:** Tissue-specific MAbs can be coupled to many toxins, drugs, radioisotopes, etc. The resultant complex is then transferred to target tissues, thus delivering high concentration of drugs to the target site with minimum toxicity. MAbs are hence used for proper delivery of drugs or isotopes.
 - i) **As Immunotoxins:** Toxins and MAbs are conjugated to produce immunotoxins, e.g., Diphtheria toxin, Pseudomonas exotoxin, toxins in cancer treatment, etc. that can be used in therapy,
 - ii) **In Drug Delivery:** Generally, drugs are more effective *in vitro* (in laboratory when tested with cultured cells) in comparison to *in vivo* (inside the living body) because insufficient quantity of drug reaches the target tissue. This can be overcome by coupling the drugs with tissue-specific MAbs (directed against a cell surface antigen of the cells, like tumour) and targeting them to specific site of action.
 - iii) **In the Dissolution of Blood Clots:** The blood clots can be removed by using tissue Plasminogen Activator (tPA) as a therapeutic agent. The blood clots can be degraded by coupling tPA to MAbs directed against fibrin. The resultant MAb-tPA complex gets attached to the fibrin because of high affinity. As a result of high concentration of tPA at the target sites, plasminogen gets converted to plasmin that dissolves the blood clots (fibrin).

- iv) **In Radio Immunotherapy (RAIT):** The radioisotopes coupled with MAbs are directed against tumour cells. This promotes the concentration of radioactivity at the specific sites of action and effective destruction of target tumour cells.

5.2.6.3. Protein Purification

MAbs can be prepared for any protein, and the obtained MAb can be used for purifying the protein against which it was raised. MAbs columns can be developed by combining MAbs to cyanogen bromide activated Sepharose (chromatographic matrix). In this way, the immobilised MAbs can be used for the purification of proteins by **immunoaffinity method**.

Advantages

Protein purification using MAbs have many advantages, like specificity of the binding of MAbs to the desired protein, high degree of purification, and effective elution from the chromatographic column. For the purification of recombinant interferons, immunoaffinity chromatography is used which attains more than 5,000 fold purification of interferon- α_2 .

Disadvantages

However, achieving 100% purity of the target protein by immunoaffinity method is impossible because a small fraction of MAbs leaks into the elution. MAbs cannot differentiate between the intact target protein and a fragment of it with the antigenic site.

5.2.6.4. Miscellaneous Applications

Catalytic MAbs (Abzymes)

The antibody enzymes called **abzymes** are catalytic antibodies. Antibody recognition of an antigen and enzyme recognition of a substrate is different. The antibodies recognise in ground state, whereas the enzymes recognise in transition state (related with a conformational change of protein).

Researchers have developed a hapten-carrier complex similar to the transition state of an ester undergoing hydrolysis. This complex is used for producing anti-hapten monoclonal antibodies. These MAbs bring out hydrolysis of ester with a considerable degree of specificity (to the transition state to which MAbs were raised). There are many other reactions, apart from ester hydrolysis, in which antibodies can be used. **Examples** of such reactions are hydrolysis of amides and carbonates, cyclisation reactions, elimination reactions, bio-molecular chemical reactions, etc.

Autoantibody Fingerprinting

In the recent years, researchers discovered a new class of Individual Specific (IS) autoantibodies that are produced after birth, reach maximum by 2 years, and become constant for the remaining life. For the detection and identification of IS-autoantibodies in individuals, MAbs are produced, and this technique is termed **autoantibody fingerprinting**. The samples of autoantibodies are collected from blood, saliva, semen, and tears. This is helpful in the detection of criminals, rapists, etc.

5.3. SUMMARY

The details given in the chapter can be summarised as follows:

- 1) **Vaccines** are pharmaceutical suspensions or solutions of immunogenic substances intended to induce active immunity.
- 2) The process of active immunisation is known as **vaccination**.
- 3) **According to British Pharmacopoeia**, 'vaccines are preparations containing antigenic substances capable of inducing a specific and active immunity in man'.
- 4) **Antisera** (singular antiserum) are blood serum containing antibodies and renders passive immunity to an individual against several diseases.
- 5) Antiserum is also known as **antitoxin**.
- 6) Vaccines are standardised by determining the number or the dry weight of microorganisms in 1ml of the product.
- 7) The method for the production of stable and concentrated antiserum was first given by **Gracia** in **1976**.
- 8) **Serum** is the liquid fraction of whole blood collected after the blood is allowed to clot.
- 9) **Bacillus Calmette -Guerin (BCG) vaccine** provides immunisation against tuberculosis.
- 10) **Pertussis** (or whooping cough) is an acute, communicable disease, caused by *Bordetella pertussis* (a small, non-motile, and gram-negative bacillus).
- 11) **Cholera vaccine** is the homogeneous suspension of strains of *Vibrio cholera*.
- 12) **Tetanus vaccine** is a clear liquid which may appear either colourless or brownish-yellow.
- 13) **Rabies vaccine** is a fluid or a freeze -dried preparation consisting of rabies virus.
- 14) **Polio** is an acute infectious inflammation of the anterior horns of the grey matter of the spinal cord, which results in acute systemic infectious disease and paralysis.
- 15) **Typhoid vaccine** is a mixture of suspension of killed *Salmonella typhi* and tetanus formol (i.e., formaldehyde solution) toxoid.
- 16) Hepatitis A and B are two members of a family of closely related diseases; while the others are hepatitis C, D, and E caused by a viral infection.
- 17) **Diphtheria vaccine** is prepared by adsorbing formal toxoid on a mineral carrier.
- 18) **Hybridoma technology** is used for producing hybrid cells by fusing B -lymphocyte with tumour or myeloma cells.
- 19) The myeloma cells used in hybridoma technology should not synthesise their own antibodies.
- 20) **Alum Precipitated Toxoid (APT)** is a high quality formal toxoid which has been treated with charcoal to remove the colouring matter and other impurities.
- 21) **Purified Toxoid Aluminium Phosphate (PTAT)** is a purer form of toxoid in comparison to APT.

5.4. EXERCISE

5.4.1. True or False

- 1) The process of active immunisation is known as **vaccination**.
- 2) Diphtheria vaccine is prepared by absorbing formal toxoid on a mineral carrier.
- 3) Pertussis is a gram positive bacillus.
- 4) BCG vaccine provides immunisation against tuberculosis.
- 5) Typhoid vaccine is a mixture of suspension of killed *Salmonella typhi* and tetanus formol (i.e., formaldehyde solution) toxoid.

5.4.2. Fill in the Blanks

- 6) _____ is the liquid fraction of whole blood collected after the blood is allowed to clot.
- 7) The myeloma cells used in _____ technology should not synthesise their own antibodies.
- 8) _____ vaccine is the homogeneous suspension of strains of *Vibrio cholera*.
- 9) Antiserum is also known as _____.
- 10) _____ are pharmaceutical suspensions or solutions of immunogenic substances intended to induce active immunity.

Answers

- | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|------------|
| 1) True | 2) False | 3) False | 4) True |
| 5) True | 6) Serum | 7) Hybridoma | 8) Cholera |
| 9) Antitoxin | 10) Vaccines | | |

5.4.3. Very Short Answer Type Questions

- 1) Define and classify vaccines.
- 2) Write a short note on toxoids.
- 3) Write a short note on antitoxins.
- 4) Give the method of preparation of pertussis vaccine.
- 5) What is protein purification? Give its advantages and disadvantages.

5.4.4. Short Answer Type Questions

- 1) Write a short note on hybridoma technology.
- 2) Write a short note on BCG vaccine.
- 3) Briefly discuss typhoid vaccine.

5.4.5. Long Answer Type Questions

- 1) Write a note on polio vaccine.
- 2) Explain the production of MAbs.
- 3) Give a detailed note on applications of MAbs.

CHAPTER**6****Immuno-Blotting
Techniques****6.1. IMMUNO-BLOTTING TECHNIQUES****6.1.1. Introduction**

The technique of immobilisation of nucleic acids or proteins on a solid support like nylon or nitrocellulose membranes is referred to as **blotting**. It is an essential technique for hybridisation studies. Nucleic acid labelling and hybridisation on membranes have laid the base for various experimental techniques involving the understanding of gene expression, organisation, etc.

Identifying and measuring certain proteins in complex biological mixtures (like blood) are prevalent in scientific and diagnostic practices since ages. In recent years, identification of abnormal genes in genomic DNA has turned out to be progressively significant in clinical research and genetic counselling. Unique proteins and nucleic acid sequences are identified using blotting techniques that are extremely accurate, sensitive, and essential tools in molecular biology and clinical research.

General Principle

The blotting method involves the following **four steps**:

- 1) Electrophoretic extraction of protein or nucleic acid fragments in the sample,
- 2) Transfer and immobilisation on paper,
- 3) Binding of analytical probe to target molecule on paper, and
- 4) Bound probe visualisation.

By using electrophoresis the molecules in the sample are separated and moved on a support medium or membrane. As a result, the protein or DNA fragments get immobilised, providing a close copy of the original separation, and assisting subsequent biochemical analysis.

Probes like antibodies or DNA that binds to the desired molecule are used to localise the immobilised protein or nucleic acid fragments after they are transferred to the support medium. Autoradiography is used in the final step for visualising the position of the probe bound to the immobilised target molecule.

The three main blotting techniques that are discussed briefly are:

- 1) ELISA,
- 2) Western blotting, and
- 3) Southern blotting.

6.1.2. Enzyme-Linked Immunosorbent Assay (ELISA)

ELISA is a solid-phase enzyme immunobinding assay, and the most essential of the immune-enzyme assays. In this method, the antigen is attached to an antibody anchored on a solid phase (e.g., polystyrene or polyvinylchloride). This helps in retaining the immunological as well as the enzymatic activity.

ELISA can be used for quantitating antibody or antigen using enzyme-linked antibody and a substrate which forms a coloured reaction product; hence ELISA is also referred to as a **qualitative or quantitative assay for antibodies**.

6.1.2.1. Principle

The ELISA is performed in 96-well polystyrene plates. The serum is incubated in the wells, each containing a different serum. Positive and negative control serums are included in the 96 samples being tested. Antibodies or antigens in serum are captured by the corresponding anti gen or antibody coated on the solid surface. The serum and unbound antibodies or antigens are removed from the plate by rinsing it with wash buffer.

Secondary antibodies attached to peroxidase or alkaline phosphatase enzyme, are added to each well for detecting bound antibodies or antigens. The unbound secondary antibodies are rinsed off after incubating the wells for a defined period. On adding an appropriate substrate, it reacts with the enzyme to develop a colour which is measured as a function or amount of antigens or antibody in the sample. Measurement of the intensity of colour or optical density is done at 450nm, and the colour intensity indicates the number of antigen or antibody.

Table 6.1 enlists the different enzymes used for ELISA:

Table 6.1: Commonly Used Enzymes and their Substrates in ELISA

Enzymes	Substrates
Horseradish peroxidase	Hydrogen peroxide and <i>o</i> -phenylene diamine
Alkaline phosphatase	<i>p</i> -nitrophenyl phosphate
β -galactosidase	<i>o</i> -nitrophenyl- β -d-galactopyranoside

Table 6.2 enlists a few auto-antibodies detected by ELISA:

Table 6.2: Detection of Auto-Antibodies by ELISA

Antibodies	Target Auto-Antigens	Clinical Relevance
Thyroid microsomal antibody	Thyroid peroxidase	Auto-immune thyroid disease
Mitochondrial antibody (M2)	E2 pyruvate dehydrogenase complex	Primary biliary cirrhosis
Glomerular basement membrane antibody	C terminal end of type IV collagen	Good pasture’s syndrome and anti-glomerular basement membrane nephritis
Double-stranded DNA antibody	dsDNA	Systemic lupus erythematosus
Phospholipid antibody	Cardiolipin	Primary phospholipid syndrome and systemic lupus erythematosus

6.1.2.2. Procedure

The steps involved in the procedure of ELISA are:

- 1) Assay samples or standard solutions are added to the antibody -coated wells, and incubated for defined time period to capture the antigen molecules by the antibody.
- 2) After this binding reaction, the reaction mixture is discarded and excessive materials are removed from the wells by washing.
- 3) A second antibody that identifies another epitope in antigen is labelled with horseradish peroxidase (HRP) enzyme and then added to the wells.
- 4) This enzyme-labelled second antibody binds to the antigen already bound to the first antibody on the bottom of wells. This means that HRP enzyme is also fixed on the bottom of wells. The amount of antigen captured and the fixed enzyme is directly proportional.
- 5) The enzyme activity is measured by adding a chromogenic substrate of the enzyme. In case of HRP, tetramethylbenzidine is often used. After incubation for a definite period, the chromogenic substrate is changed to a coloured product. The reaction is stopped by adding a reaction stopper, e.g., diluted sulphuric acid, and absorbance is measured with a plate reader.
- 6) A standard or calibration curve is obtained by plotting the concentration of standard solutions.

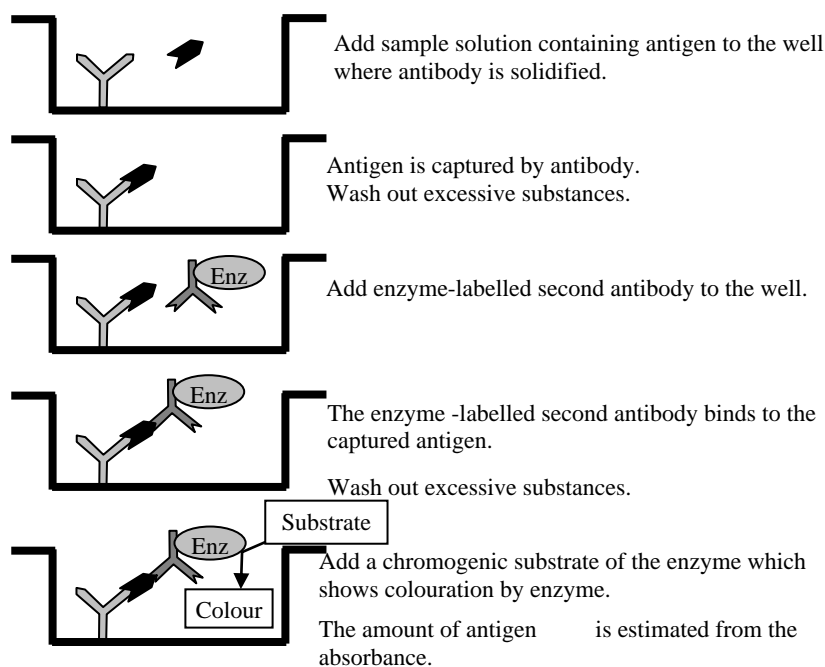


Figure 6.1: Basic Procedure of ELISA

6.1.2.3. Types of ELISA

ELISA test is of the following three types:

- 1) **Indirect ELISA :** This method is useful in identification and quantitative determination of antibody. In this method, serum or some other sample containing primary antibody (Ab1) is added to an antigen -coated microtitre

well and allowed to react with the antigen attached to the well (**figure 6.2a**). After washing away any free Ab1, the antibody bound to the antigen is detected by adding an enzyme-conjugated secondary anti-isotype antibody (Ab2), which binds to the primary antibody.

After washing away any free Ab2, a substrate for the enzyme is added. The intensity of colour produced is measured by specialised spectrophotometric plate readers, which can measure the absorbance of all the wells of a 96-well plate in seconds. Indirect ELISA is preferred for detecting the presence of serum antibodies against HIV. In this assay, the recombinant envelope and core proteins of HIV are adsorbed on to microtitre wells as solid-phase antigens. The HIV infected individuals will produce serum antibodies to epitopes on these viral proteins which can be detected within 6 weeks of infection by indirect ELISA.

Advantages

- i) This method has an elevated level of sensitivity because more than one labelled antibody binds to each primary antibody.
- ii) Numerous labelled secondary antibodies are commercially available.
- iii) Since the primary antibody is not labelled, its immunoreactivity is retained to the maximum.
- iv) This method is versatile as many primary antibodies can be prepared in one species and the same labelled secondary antibody can be used for detection.
- v) This method is flexible as a single labelled secondary antibody can be used with many primary detection antibodies.
- vi) This method is cost efficient as a less number of labelled antibodies are used.
- vii) With same primary antibody different imaging indicators can be used.

Disadvantages

- i) Cross-reactivity with secondary antibody may occur, causing non-specific signal.
- ii) This method requires an additional incubation step.

- 2) **Sandwich ELISA:** This method is useful in detection and measurement of antigen (**figure 6.2 b**). In this technique, the antibody is immobilised on a microtitre well. Antigen-containing sample is added and allowed to react with the immobilised antibody. After washing the well, a second enzyme-linked antibody having specificity for a different epitope on the antigen is added and allowed to react with the bound antigen. After washing away any free secondary antibody, the substrate is added and the intensity of colour produced is measured.

Advantages

- i) This method has high specificity as the antigen is specifically captured and detected due to the use of two antibodies.

- ii) This method is suitable for complex samples as the antigen is not purified before measurement.
- iii) This method is flexible and sensitive as direct and indirect detection methods can be used.

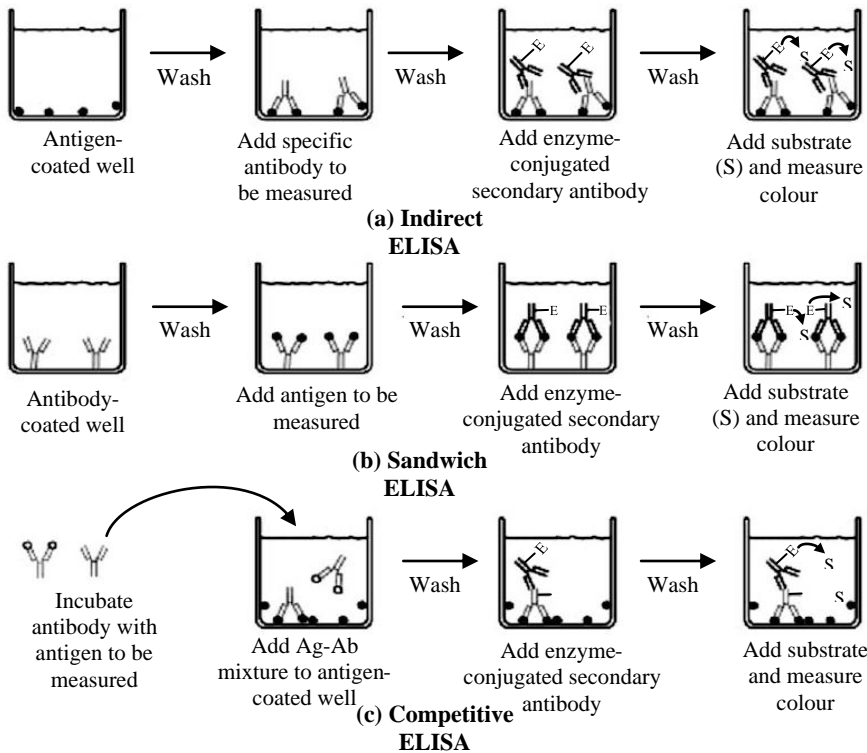


Figure 6.2: The Three Types of Enzyme-Linked Immunosorbent Assay (ELISA) Technique

- 3) **Competitive ELISA:** This method is useful in estimation of antigen quantity (figure 6.2 c). In this technique, antibody is incubated in an antigen-containing sample solution. The antigen-antibody mixture is added to an antigen-coated micro titre well.

More the number of antigens present in the sample, less the number of free antibody available for binding to the antigen-coated well. Addition of an enzyme-conjugated secondary antibody (Ab2) specific for the isotype of primary antibody, determines the amount of primary antibody bound to the well. However, in competitive ELISA, higher the concentration of antigen in the original sample, lower is the absorbance.

Advantages

- i) This method is highly specific as two antibodies are used.
- ii) This method is highly sensitive as both direct and indirect detection methods are used.
- iii) This method is suitable for complex samples as the antigen is not purified before measurement.

6.1.2.4. Applications

The technique of ELISA has the following applications:

- 1) It can be used to detect the presence of antigen or antibody in a sample.
- 2) It can be used to determine serum antibody concentrations in a virus test.
- 3) It can be used in food industry to detect potential food allergens.
- 4) It can be used in disease outbreaks to track the spreading of diseases, **e.g.**, HIV, bird flu, common, colds, cholera, STDs, etc.

6.1.3. Western Blotting

The method of western blot was discovered by **George Stark** at Stanford, and the name western blot was laid down by **W. Neal Burnette**. This method, also known as **immunoblot** or **protein blot**, detects specific proteins in a sample of tissue homogenate or extract.

Western blotting is a qualitative and semi-quantitative technique for protein analysis. This technique is useful in cell and molecular biology. It aids in the **identification of desired protein** from a mixture of proteins extracted from cells. It also facilitates evaluation of the **size and amount of protein**. The technique of western blotting requires SDS-PAGE.

6.1.3.1. Principle

Western blotting is a fast and sensitive method of assay that detects and characterises proteins. It works on **immunochromatography principle**, wherein separation of proteins as per their molecular weight occurs in polyacrylamide gel. The separated proteins are transferred or electro-transferred on nitrocellulose membrane, and then detected by specific primary antibody and secondary enzyme labelled antibody and substrate.

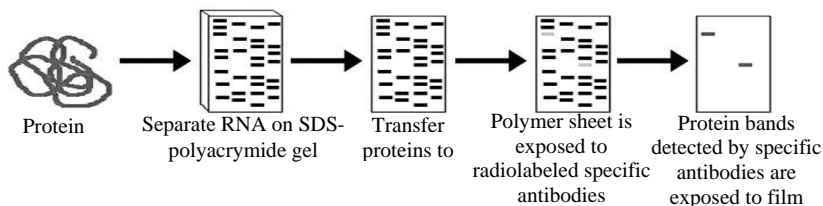


Figure 6.3: Principle of Western Blotting

6.1.3.2. Procedure

The steps involved in the procedure of western blotting are:

- 1) **Tissue Preparation (Preparation of Sample Lysate):** In the sample, ice cold PBS and lysis buffer (**e.g.**, RIPA buffer that provides maximum protein yield) are added. The lysis buffer is selected based on the localisation of the desired protein. Unlike isolated cytoplasmic proteins, the solubilisation of membrane bound proteins is achieved by stronger extraction detergents.

Lysis buffer should possess protease inhibitors that avoid the degradation of the desired protein. Lysis of cells is done by incubating on ice and then applying shear pressure through pipette. Later the cell mixture is centrifuged and the pellet is discarded. The supernatant obtained is the lysate of use.

- 2) **Gel Electrophoresis:** The individual proteins in the obtained sample lysate are separated based on their molecular weight. The separation is achieved by using a positive electrode that attracts a negatively charged protein. This is done by introducing the prepared protein sample into a polyacrylamide gel (commercially available). Gels of fixed percentages or gradients of acrylamide are commercially available.

Higher the acrylamide percentage, smaller the pore size of the gel matrix. Hence for low molecular weight proteins, higher percentage of gels is preferred; whereas for large proteins, low percentage of gel is considered better. Gradient gels have varied range of pore size, thus are useful for proteins of all sizes.

The **steps** involved in gel electrophoresis are:

- i) The gel is prepared by inserting it in the electrophoresis apparatus and filling with running buffer.
 - ii) The wells of the gel are washed with running buffer and the chambers are added with buffer.
 - iii) The samples are loaded into the wells. A pre-stained molecular weight ladder is loaded in one well to aid in monitoring protein separation during electrophoresis and verifying protein weight in the sample later during analysis.
 - iv) The electrophoresis unit is closed and a power supply is connected. The majority of units run for 45-60 minutes at 200 volts or until the loading buffer seeps to the bottom of gel. In this time period, the negatively charged sample proteins migrate towards the positive electrode through the polyacrylamide gel matrix.
- 3) **Transfer:** The separated proteins from gel are transferred to a solid membrane or blot. This works on the principle of applying electric field whereby negative proteins shift towards a positive electrode. Wet or semi-dry conditions are used for this transfer.

The wet transfer method involves the following **steps**:

- i) The gel is removed from its cassette by cutting the top portion of the wells.
- ii) The top left corner is marked to indicate gel direction.
- iii) The gel is allowed to float in transfer buffer while preparing the transfer sandwich using a cassette, sponges, filter paper, the gel, and PVDF or nitrocellulose membrane.
- iv) The top left corner is marked on the blotting paper to indicate blot direction.
- v) The membranes are incubated for 10 minutes in transfer buffer.
- vi) A stack is prepared by placing sponge, filter paper, gel, membrane, filter paper, and sponge from the black negative cathode towards red positive anode.
- vii) The gel or membrane should not be touched with bare hands and clean tweezers or spatula should be used, since touching the membrane can contaminate the blot. As a result, excessive background signals will appear

- viii) A clean roller should be employed at every layer to remove bubbles or else they will interfere with efficient protein transfer.
- ix) The cassette is locked and placed in the transfer apparatus containing cold transfer buffer positioned from negative to positive.
- x) The heat development can be avoided by transferring with a cold pack in the apparatus or operating in a cold room with the spinner bar at the bottom of the chamber.
- xi) The chamber is closed and power supply is connected.
- xii) Transfer is done as per the manufacturer's instructions (usually, 100 volts for third to 120 minutes is recommended).

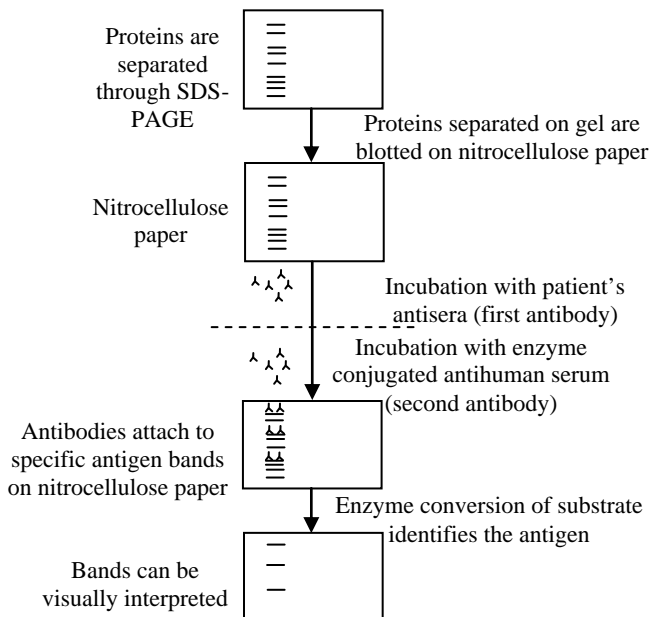


Figure 6.4: Western Blot Test

- 4) **Immuno-Blotting:** When protein is electrically transferred to a membrane, the blot is blocked using a protein specific primary antibody. Later, a secondary antibody is added that identifies the primary antibody.

The immuno-blotting method involves the following **steps**:

- i) The membrane is detached from the cassette and rinsed thrice with water.
- ii) The blot areas which do not contain protein are blocked to avoid non-specific antibody binding and to minimise overall background signal.
- iii) The commonly used blocking buffers are 5% non-fat dry milk or BSA in a TBS-Tween solution. Milk solution is avoided when probing with phosphor-specific antibodies to prevent high background from its endogenous phosphoprotein, casein.
- iv) The membrane along with blocking solution is incubated for an hour at room temperature with slight agitation.
- v) The blocking solution is decanted and washed for 5 minutes with TBS tween.

- vi) Before adding the primary antibody, it is diluted with a blocking buffer (in specified concentration) and incubated overnight with gentle shaking at 4°C temperature.
 - vii) After incubation the primary antibody is decanted. The membrane is washed five times for five minutes each using large volumes of TBS tween with vigorous agitation to eradicate non-specific background signals.
 - viii) Thereafter, the secondary antibody is diluted in blocking solution. The membrane is incubated for an hour at room temperature at the specified concentration.
 - ix) The membrane is decanted and washed five times for five minutes each with large volumes of TBS tween followed by vigorous agitation.
- 5) **Detection:** In this final step, signal development is achieved by electrochemiluminescence (or ECL reaction). It is a common, sensitive and inexpensive method of detection in which HRP enzyme conjugated to the secondary is used to catalyse the ECL reaction and give out light. This emitted light is projected onto X-ray film and developed or digitised using specialised and sensitive camera.

The detection method involves the following **steps**:

- i) Equal parts of ECL reagents are mixed in 1:1 ratio as per the manufacturer's instructions.
- ii) The membrane is incubated for 3-5 minutes with no agitation.
- iii) The ECL mixture is decanted after incubation, and the excess solution is wiped off from the membrane corner.
- iv) In order to avoid drying, the membrane is wrapped in a clear plastic -like sheet protector.
- v) A roller is used to remove bubbles (if formed) or any excess solution.
- vi) Without further delay, the membrane is developed.
- vii) Manual adjustment of the exposure time is done by using film and camera systems to obtain a picture perfect western blot.
- viii) Quantification of relative band densities is done using the commercially available software.
- ix) Molecular weight verification can also be achieved through comparison between the band sizes and the molecular weight ladder.

6.1.3.3. Applications

The technique of western blotting has the following applications:

- 1) It can be used to determine the size and amount of protein in the sample.
- 2) It can be used in disease diagnosis by detecting the antibody (produced against virus or bacteria) present in serum.
- 3) It can be used to identify defective proteins, e.g., in Prions disease.
- 4) It is the confirmatory test for HIV as it determines the presence of anti-HIV antibody in the serum.
- 5) It is a perfect test to determine the prevalence of Creutzfeldt-Jacob disease, Lyme disease, Hepatitis B, and Herpes.

6.1.4. Southern Blotting

E.M. Southern invented the technique of southern blotting. This method is useful in molecular biology. In this method, hybridisation analysis is performed by transferring the DNA from a gel to a membrane. The DNA is cleaved using suitable restriction enzymes and made to run on a gel. Then it is treated with sodium hydroxide that denatures the DNA to give a single strand.

6.1.4.1. Principle

Southern blotting is a hybridisation technique used for identifying particular size of DNA from a mixture of other similar molecules. This technique relies on the principle of separating DNA fragments by gel electrophoresis and identifying them by labelled probe hybridisation.

The DNA fragments are separated based on their size and charge during electrophoresis. The separated DNA fragments are transferred on nylon membrane, and the desired DNA is detected using specific DNA probe complementary to the desired DNA. A hybridisation probe is a short (100-500bp), single stranded DNA labelled with a marker so that it can be detected after hybridisation.

6.1.4.2. Procedure

In the method of southern blotting, the DNA is transferred from a gel to a membrane for hybridisation analysis. Then the DNA is cut with suitable restriction enzymes and run on a gel. On treating with NaOH, the DNA undergoes denaturation to yield a single strand.

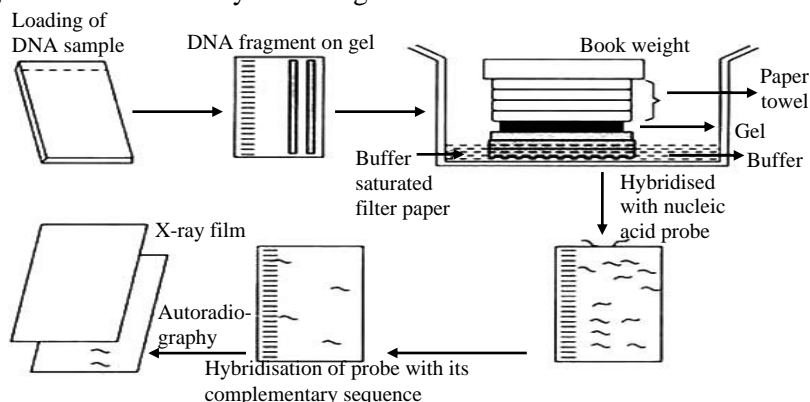


Figure 6.5: Southern Blotting Technique

The DNA is transferred from agarose gel to the membrane by capillary action. The gel is placed on a filter paper saturated with buffer, and the nitrocellulose membrane is placed above the gel and covered with 2-3 layers of dry filter paper towel (**figure 6.5**). The buffer reaches the top papers by flowing through the gel and membrane. While flowing it carries the DNA fragment with it, but DNA is retained on the paper as it cannot pass through the membrane. This membrane with trapped DNA is exposed overnight to a solution containing the radio-labelled cDNA probe. The binding of probe to its complementary sequence is detected by autoradiography.

6.1.4.3. Applications

The technique of southern blotting has the following applications:

- 1) It is used to detect DNA in the sample.
- 2) DNA fingerprinting (an example of southern blotting) is used for paternity testing, criminal identification, and victim identification.
- 3) It is used to isolate and identify the desired genes.
- 4) It is used in restriction fragment length polymorphism.
- 5) It is used to identify mutation or gene rearrangement in the DNA sequence.
- 6) It is used in diagnosing diseases caused by genetic defects.
- 7) It is used to identify infectious agents.

6.2. GENETIC ORGANISATION OF EUKARYOTES AND PROKARYOTES

6.2.1. Introduction

Living organisms are categorised into prokaryotes and eukaryotes based on their cellular features, especially the nature of membrane bound organelles and genetic material organisation. The genetic materials in prokaryotes as well as in eukaryotes are organised into chromosomes. Although the term chromosome is applicable in eukaryotes only, yet the prokaryotic genetic materials are also described in the same way. The prokaryotic and eukaryotic chromosomes are different and their differences are enlisted in **table 6.3**:

Table 6.3: Difference between Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Chromosomes

Prokaryotic Chromosome	Eukaryotic Chromosome
The chromosome formation is not present.	The genetic material is organised into chromosomes.
A single chromosome is present in each cell.	Two or more chromosomes are present in each cell.
It is shorter.	They are larger.
It contains a covalently closed circular DNA (cccDNA).	They contain a linear DNA with two ends.
It codes for a few proteins.	They code for numerous proteins.
It occupies the centre region of the cell and is not enclosed by the nucleus.	They are enclosed in the nucleus.
It is in direct contact with the cytoplasm as the nucleus is absent.	They are separated from the cytoplasm by the nuclear membrane.
It is associated with the mesosomes of the plasma membrane.	They are not associated with the plasma membrane and stay away from it.
DNA is not associated with histone proteins.	DNA is associated with histone proteins.
Nucleosomes are not formed.	Nucleosomes are formed by the association of DNA with the histone proteins.

It contains a single origin of replication (Ori).	They contain many origin or replications.
The DNA replication can occur at any stage of the life cycle.	The genetic material replicates at the S phase of cell cycle.
It has a negative charge that is nullified by Mg^{2+} ions.	They have a negative charge that is nullified by the positively charged histone proteins.
It is circular, thus telomere is absent.	Telomere is present in their tip.
Centromere, kinetochore, secondary constriction and chromosomal arms are not formed.	They contain centromere, kinetochore, and chromosomal arms.

6.2.2. Eukaryotes

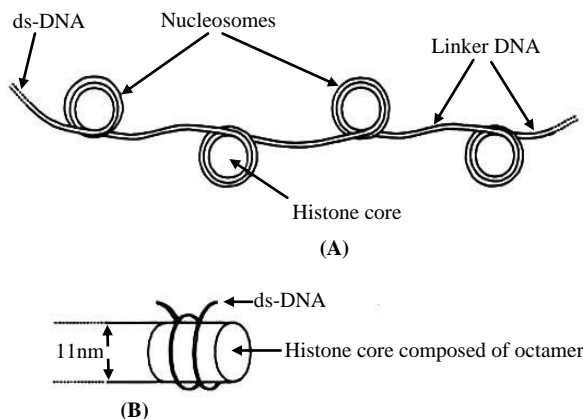
In eukaryotes, the major part of DNA is found in the chromosomes, which themselves are present within the nucleus (a distinct, double-membrane bound structure that makes up about 10% of the cell volume). The eukaryotic cell membrane has pores and is continuous with the endoplasmic reticulum. The eukaryotes have varied number of chromosomes which is fixed for a biological species. During cell division the physical characteristics of chromosomes vary.

A eukaryotic chromosome has a single very large, and linear double stranded DNA (ds-DNA) molecule. **For example**, a diploid human cell that contains 46 chromosomes (22 pairs of autosomes and a pair of sex chromosomes) has a total of 6×10^9 base-pairs. In individual human chromosomes the length of DNA molecules ranges from 1.5-8.7cm. These large DNA molecules are packed in chromosomes ranging from a few microns in length and breadth. This is achieved by the formation of protein-DNA complex known as **chromatin** (in eukaryotic cells).

The proteins that bind to DNA are histones and non-histone proteins. **Histones** are basic in nature due to the presence of basic amino acids (such as lysine and arginine). Since they carry positive charges, they bind to the negatively charged DNA molecules forming characteristic structural units, i.e., the **nucleosomes**. The long double stranded DNA molecule in each chromosome systematically surrounds the histones to form nucleosomes.

The structure of nucleosome resembles beads connected to each other through linker DNA. A nucleosome bears a histone core having 8 sub-units (octamer) of 4 different histones, i.e., H_2A , H_2B , H_3 , and H_4 with two molecules of each. This histone protein core is encircled by two turns of ds-DNA molecule, thus forming a nucleosome.

The DNA molecule runs as a continuous thread from one nucleosome to another. The dominant part of DNA between the two nucleosomes is the linker. Nucleosome width is 11nm, and it repeats itself at intervals of 200 nucleotide pairs of DNA. The linker between two nucleosomes may have varied length. These features of eukaryotic DNA are shown in the **figure 6.6**:



**Figure 6.6: (A) Nucleosomes Connected by Linked DNA;
(B) Side View of a Nucleosome with its Histone Octamer
Core Wrapped by Turns of a Running ds-DNA**

The nucleosomes are basic structures that build chromatin. They are organised as closely packed 30 nm chromatin fibres, which can be observed under high resolution electron microscope.

6.2.3. Prokaryotes

The internal structure and genomic organisation of prokaryotic cells are simple than that of the eukaryotic cells. The cells of prokaryotes do not have complex compartmentalisation as in the cells of eukaryotes. Some prokaryotic cells show specialised membranes that are plasma membrane infoldings participating in metabolic functions.

The prokaryotic genome is structurally different from eukaryotic genome. On an average it has only about one -thousandth of DNA as in eukaryotic genome. In prokaryotes, mostly the genome has a DNA ring with few proteins linked to it. This genetic material ring is the prokaryotic chromosome. In eukaryotes, the chromosome lies within the nucleus, whereas in prokaryotes, the chromosome is in a nucleoid region (a portion of cytoplasm which in electron micrographs appears lighter than the surrounding cytoplasm).

In prokaryotes and eukaryotes, fundamental similarity is observed in DNA replication, transcription, and translation; however, some differences also exist. **For example**, ribosomes in prokaryotic cell are smaller than those in eukaryotic cells. Also the protein and RNA content of these ribosomes is different. These differences are important for some antibiotics (like erythromycin and tetracycline) as they bind to ribosomes and block protein synthesis. This blocking action takes place only in prokaryotes and not in eukaryotes. Hence these antibiotics kill bacteria without harming the human cells.

Prokaryotes (like *E. coli*) lack a well-defined nucleus. Hence, the negatively charged DNA binds to each other through some positively charged proteins in the nucleoid region. The DNA in this region is arranged within the nucleus as large loops connected through proteins.

6.3. SUMMARY

The details given in the chapter can be summarised as follows:

- 1) The technique of immobilisation of nucleic acids or proteins on a solid support like nylon or nitrocellulose membranes is referred to as **blotting**.
- 2) **ELISA** is a solid -phase enzyme immunobinding assay, and the most essential of the immune-enzyme assays.
- 3) ELISA is also referred to as a **qualitative or quantitative assay for antibodies**.
- 4) **Indirect ELISA** is useful in identification and quantitative determination of antibody.
- 5) **Sandwich ELISA** is useful in detection and measurement of antigen.
- 6) **Competitive ELISA** is useful in estimation of antigen quantity.
- 7) The method of western blot was discovered by **George Stark** at Stanford, and the name western blot was laid down by **W. Neal Burnette**.
- 8) **Western blotting** is also known as **immunoblot** or **protein blot** and detects specific proteins in a sample of tissue homogenate or extract.
- 9) Western blotting work on the principle of **immunochromatography**.
- 10) **E.M. Southern** invented the technique of southern blotting.
- 11) In **southern blotting**, hybridisation analysis is performed by transferring the DNA from a gel to a membrane.
- 12) **Southern blotting** relies on the principle of separating DNA fragments by gel electrophoresis and identifying them by labelled probe hybridisation.

6.4. EXERCISE

6.4.1. True or False

- 1) The technique of immobilisation of nucleic acids or proteins on a solid support like nylon or nitrocellulose membranes is referred to as blotting.
- 2) ELISA is a liquid-phase enzyme immunobinding assay.
- 3) Sandwich ELISA is useful in identification and quantitative determination of antibody.
- 4) Western blotting is also known as protein blot.
- 5) In southern blotting, hybridisation analysis is performed by transferring the DNA from a gel to a membrane.

6.4.2. Fill in the Blanks

- 6) _____ technique is used for immobilisation of nucleic acids or proteins on a solid support like nylon or nitrocellulose membranes.
- 7) _____ is also known as protein blot.
- 8) Western blotting works on the principle of _____.
- 9) _____ is useful in detection and measurement of antigen.
- 10) _____ is useful in estimation of antigen quantity.

Answers

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|---------|
| 1) True | 2) False | 3) False | 4) True |
| 5) True | 6) Blotting | 7) Western blotting | |
| 8) Immunochromatography | 9) Sandwich ELISA | 10) Competitive ELISA | |

6.4.3. Very Short Answer Type Questions

- 1) Give the general principle of immuno-blotting techniques.
- 2) Define ELISA.
- 3) Write a short note on western blotting.
- 4) What is southern blotting?
- 5) Write the applications of ELISA.

6.4.4. Short Answer Type Questions

- 1) What is ELISA? Give its principle and procedure.
- 2) Define western blotting. Give its applications.
- 3) Discuss the genetic organisation of eukaryotes.
- 4) Write a short note on genetic organisation of prokaryotes.

6.4.5. Long Answer Type Questions

- 1) Write the procedure and types of ELISA.
- 2) What is western blotting? Give its procedure.
- 3) Give a detailed note on southern blotting.

CHAPTER

7

Microbial Genetics and Biotransformation

7.1. MICROBIAL GENETICS

7.1.1. Introduction

Microbial genetics is the **study of genes and gene function in bacteria, archaea, and other microorganisms**. Microorganisms acquire genes and undergo **recombination**, in which the genetic material from two organisms combines to form a new chromosome having a genotype different from that of the parent. This new arrangement of genes exhibits new physical or chemical properties.

The microorganisms are known to undergo several recombination types, of which **general recombination** is the most common one. It involves a reciprocal exchange of DNA (between a pair of DNA sequences) on the microbial chromosome and is characterised by the exchanges occurring in bacterial transformation, bacterial recombination, and bacterial transduction. Another type of recombination is **site-specific recombination**, in which a viral genome is integrated into the bacterial chromosome.

Replicative recombination is another type which involves movement of genetic elements by switching position from one place to another on the chromosome. The principles of recombination apply only to prokaryotic (and not to eukaryotic) microorganisms. Eukaryotes exhibit a complete sexual life cycle, during which new combinations of a particular gene are formed by crossing over between homologous chromosomes. This process is not seen in bacteria, where only a single chromosome exists.

7.1.2. Transformation

Transformation is a kind of genetic recombination which involves the passage of only gene carriers (i.e., the DNA molecules of donor cell) into the recipient cell through the liquid medium. It was described by **Frederick Griffith** (an English bacteriologist) in **1928**. He performed an experiment on laboratory mice and two types of *Diplococcus pneumoniae* (organism causing pneumonia). He established that one type has rough (R) non-capsulated cells and another one had smooth (S) capsulated cells. The R-type is non-pathogenic, while the S-type is pathogenic.

The experiment showed the following results (**figure 7.1**):

- 1) On injecting mice with live non-pathogenic (R-type) cells, they remain alive.
- 2) On injecting mice with dead pathogenic (S-type) cells, they remain alive.
- 3) On injecting mice with pathogenic (S-type) cells, they suffered from pneumonia and died.

- 4) On injecting mice with live non -pathogenic (R-type) cells mixed with dead pathogenic (S-type) cells, they suffered from pneumonia and died.
- 5) On isolating the dead tissue of mice, the smooth (S) capsulated cells are found on agar.

Thus in the above experiment , the conversion of R -type to S -type is called transformation.

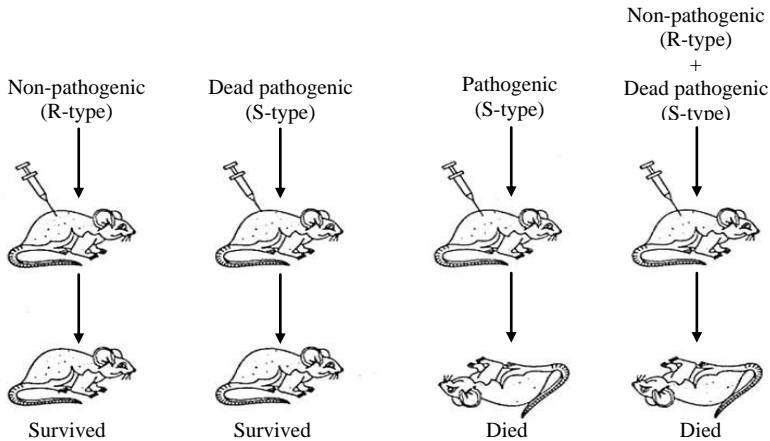


Figure 7.1: Griffith's Experiment with Mice and *Diplococcus Pneumoniae*

Later in **1932, James L. Alloway** used fragments from dead smooth -type cells and transformed the R-type cells to S-type, thus confirming the work of Griffith. Then in **1944, Oswald T. Avery, Colin M. MacLeod, and Maclyn N. McCarty** also found that DNA isolated from the fragments can induce transformation. The result of their experiment was the first proof that DNA is the genetic material in living organism.

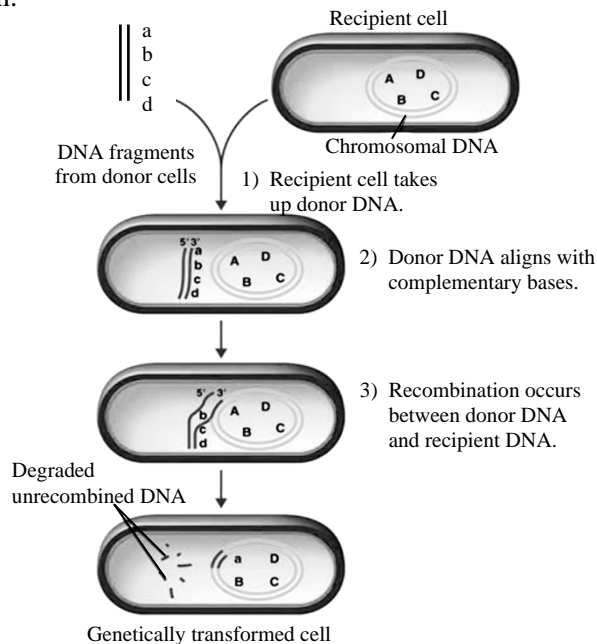


Figure 7.2: Bacterial Cell showing Transformation

The mechanism involved in transformation has been described below (figure 7.2):

- 1) Transformation takes place in a few cells of the mixed population.
- 2) A few donor cells break apart, resulting in an explosive release and fragmentation of DNA.
- 3) A fragment of double stranded DNA (10 –20 genes) gets attached to the recipient cell for entry into the recipient cell.
- 4) During entry one strand of the fragment is dissolved by the enzyme, thus only the second strand is left, which passes into the recipient cell through cell wall and cell membrane.
- 5) Within the recipient cell, a portion of single strand of double stranded DNA of recipient cell is displaced by the enzyme and then replaced by the DNA of donor cell.
- 6) The displaced DNA is dissolved by another enzyme.
- 7) Thus, the recipient cell becomes transformed displaying the characters of its own as well as of the newly incorporated DNA.

7.1.3. Transduction

Transduction is a genetic recombination method which involves transfer of genetic material from the donor to the recipient cell through a non-replicating bacteriophage. This process was discovered by **Joshua Lederberg** and **Norton Zinder** in **1952** during their research with *Salmonella typhimurium*.

In transduction, a small fragment of bacterial DNA is incorporated into an attacking bacteriophage (i.e., virus which infects bacteria). When this bacteriophage infects a new bacterial cell, it transfers the genetic material into it, and thus genetic recombination takes place.

7.1.3.1. Specialised Transduction

The specialised transduction process occurs as follows:

- 1) The bacteriophage gets attached to a bacterial cell wall at the receptor site and its nucleic acid is transferred into the cytoplasm of the host cell (figure 7.3A).
- 2) The phage does not cause lysis of the host bacterium.
- 3) The phage nucleic acid codes for the synthesis of repressor proteins in the bacterial cell. These proteins prevent the virus from producing the material required for its replication.
- 4) In the bacterial cell, the viral DNA exists either as a fragment in the cytoplasm or attaches itself to the chromosome, known as prophage (figure 7.3B).
- 5) The bacterial cell which carries the prophage is **lysogenic** and the phenomenon in which the phage DNA and bacterium exist together is termed **lysogeny**.
- 6) The bacterial cell may remain lysogenic for many generations and during this period the viral DNA replicates a number of times with the bacterial chromosome.
- 7) However, later the phage stops the synthesis of repressor proteins in the bacterial cell, followed by the synthesis of phage components.

- 8) Thereafter, the phage DNA separates from the bacterial chromosome and induces the synthesis of phage proteins (**figure 7.3C**).
- 9) During this separation, a number of genes of the bacterium get attached to it.
- 10) These attached genes replicate along with the phage DNA (**figure 7.3D**) and later develop into phage particles, which come out from the bacterial cell by bursting (**figure 7.3E**).
- 11) When the new phage particle (**figure 7.3F**) infects a new bacterial cell (**figure 7.3G and H**), the attached bacterial genes along with the phage particle enter the chromosome of the new bacterium and cause recombination (**figure 7.3I**).
- 12) Thus, the new bacterial cell contains genes of its own as well as from the parent bacterial cell.

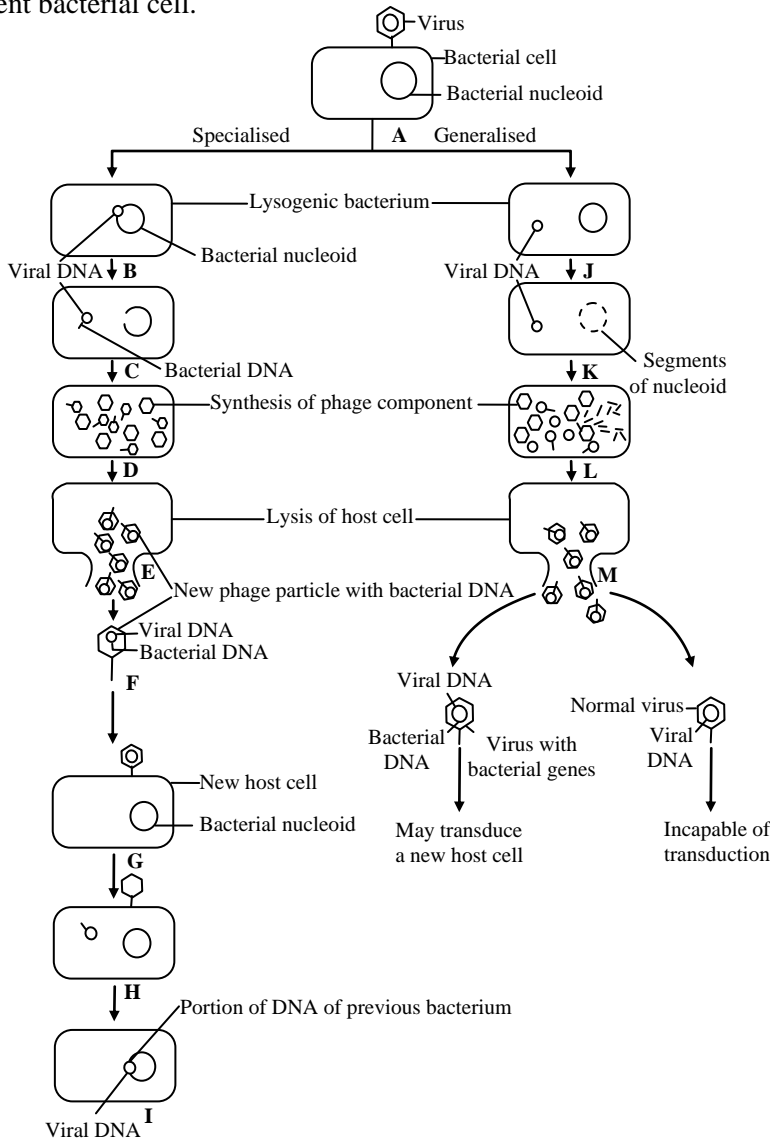


Figure 7.3: Diagrammatic Representation of Transduction

7.1.3.2. Generalised Transduction

Generalised transduction occurs more commonly than the specialised transduction, and involves the following steps:

- 1) The prophage particle is present in the cytoplasm of the infected bacterial cell (**figure 7.3J**).
- 2) The phage DNA starts synthesising new phages.
- 3) The chromosome of bacterial cell gets fragmented (**figure 7.3K**).
- 4) Some fragments get attached to the DNA of some new phage particles, while the others remain with phage DNA (**figure 7.3L**).
- 5) The newly formed phage with fragment of bacterial chromosome in its DNA (**figure 7.3M**) attacks a new bacterium.
- 6) As a result, the gene of the parent bacterium is transferred to the new bacterium and causes recombination.

7.1.4. Conjugation

Conjugation involves exchange of genetic material between two bacterial cells through a conjugation tube. This process was first postulated in **1946** by **Joshua Lederberg** and **Edward Tatum** in *Escherichia coli*. Later conjugation was also demonstrated in *Salmonella*, *Vibrio*, and *Pseudomonas*.

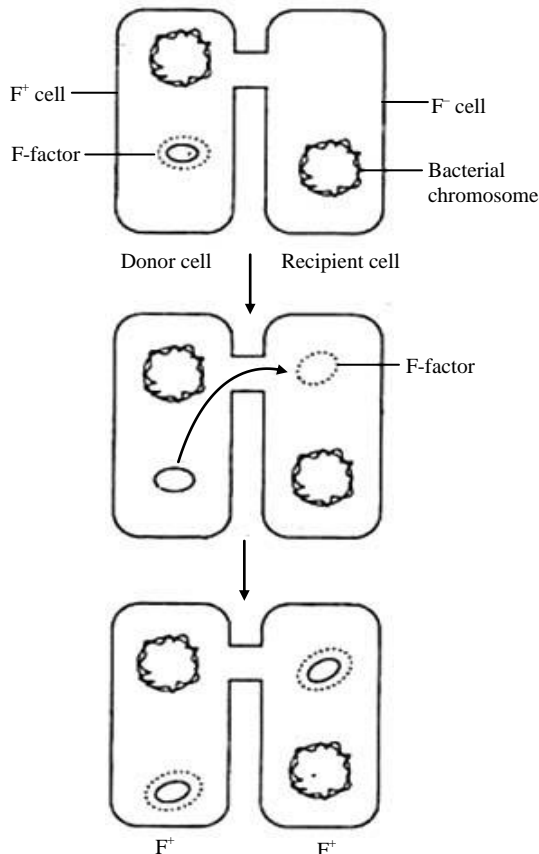


Figure 7.4: Recombination by F-factor in Conjugation

There are **two mating types of bacteria**; one is the male type or F^+ or donor cell that donates DNA, while the other is female type or F^- or recipient cell that receives the DNA. The recipient cell on receiving the DNA behaves as a donor cell. The F-factor is the fertility factor, sex -factor, or F-plasmid that is found in the cell of F^+ (the donor cell or male type). The plasmid taking part in conjugation is the episome.

The **steps** involved in conjugation process are:

- 1) In conjugation, two cells of opposite mating type (i.e., F^+ and F^-) temporarily attach with each other via sex pilus (**figure 7.4**).
- 2) There is a hole of $2.5\mu\text{m}$ diameter in sex pilus, through which DNA can pass from the donor to the recipient cell.
- 3) The F -factor or F -plasmid is a double stranded DNA loop found in the cytoplasm along with the nucleoid.
- 4) After the conjugation tube is established, the F-factor prepares for replication by the rolling circular mechanism.
- 5) The two strands of F-factor separate from each other and one of them passes to the F^- cell (recipient cell).
- 6) On reaching the F^- cell, the enzymes synthesise a complementary strand to form a double helix, which bends into a loop. Thus, the conversion process is completed.
- 7) In F^+ cell (donor cell) also, a new DNA strand is formed to complement the left over DNA strand of the F-factor.

In **another type of conjugation**, nucleoid DNA is passed from one cell to another via conjugation tube. Bacterial strains are known as **Hfr (High frequency of recombination) strain**. In the 1950s, **William Hayes** discovered such strains of *E. coli*. This Hfr factor is also called episome. In Hfr strain, the F^- -factor is attached to the nucleoid DNA, i.e., the bacterial chromosome.

The **steps** involved are:

- 1) The Hfr and F^- cells attach with each other through sex pilus (**figure 7.5**).
- 2) The bacterial chromosome opens at the point of attachment of F -factor, and a copy of one strand is formed by the rolling circular mechanism.
- 3) A portion of single stranded DNA passes into the recipient cell through the pilus.
- 4) Due to agitation in medium, the pilus may break and the conjugation tube may not survive for long. Thus, the entire DNA fails to enter the recipient cell.

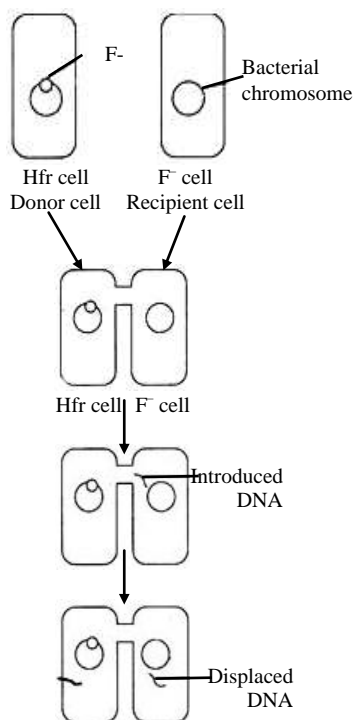


Figure 7.5: Recombination by Fragment of DNA in Conjugation

7.1.5. Plasmids

Apart from bacterial chromosome (nucleoid), genetic elements are also found to be present in the cytoplasm of bacterial cells. These genetic elements, called **plasmids**, replicate separately from the chromosome.

In **1952**, **Lederberg** demonstrated the existence of plasmids in bacterial cytoplasm while working on conjugation process in bacteria. He invented the term **plasmid** to indicate the genetic elements that were transmissible from one bacterial cell to another and determine the maleness in bacteria.

7.1.5.1. Properties

Given below are the properties of plasmids:

- 1) They are specific to one or a few particular bacteria.
- 2) They replicate separately from the bacterial chromosome.
- 3) They code for their own transfer.
- 4) They act as episomes and reversibly integrate into bacterial chromosome.
- 5) They may pick-up and transfer certain genes of bacterial chromosome.
- 6) They may affect some of the characteristics of bacterial cell.
- 7) They differ from viruses as:
 - i) They do not cause damage to cells and are beneficial.
 - ii) They do not have extracellular forms and exist inside the cells as free and circular DNA.

7.1.5.2. Physical Nature

The physical nature of plasmids is relatively simple. They are small double stranded DNA molecules and mostly circular; however, many linear plasmids are also known. Naturally occurring plasmids have a varying size ranging from 1 kilobase to more than 1 megabase, and the size of a plasmid DNA is 5% less than the size of bacterial chromosome.

Most of the plasmid DNA isolated from bacterial cells exists in supercoil configuration (the most compact form for DNA to exist within the cell). The **copy number** indicates that different plasmids occur within the cells in different numbers. Some plasmids are present in the cell in 1 -3 copies, whereas others are present in over 100 copies. This copy number is controlled by the genes on plasmid and by interactions between the host and the plasmid.

7.1.5.3. Types

Given below are the main types of recognised plasmids:

- 1) **F-Plasmid (or F-Factor):** The 'F' stands for fertility. This plasmid was the first to be described, is very well characterised, and plays a major role in conjugation in *E. coli*. It confers 'maleness' on the bacterial cells and due to this property the term **sex-factor** is also used to refer to F-plasmid. F-plasmid is a circular ds-DNA molecule containing 99,159 base pairs. Its genetic map is shown in **figure 7.6**. One region of the plasmid contains **rep genes** involved in the regulation of DNA replication; the other region contains

transposable elements (IS3, Tn 1000, IS3 and IS2 genes) having the ability to function as an episome; and the third large region termed the **tra** region contains **tra** genes involved in the transfer of plasmids during conjugation.

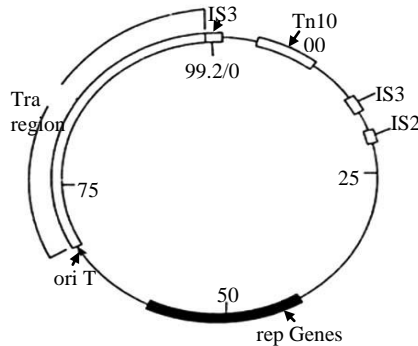


Figure 7.6: Genetic Map of the F-Plasmid of *E. coli*.

- 2) **R-Plasmids:** These are the most widespread and well-studied group of plasmids. They are termed **resistant plasmids** as they confer resistance to antibiotics and various growth inhibitors. R-plasmids contain genes coding for enzymes that can destroy and modify antibiotics. They are not integrated into the host chromosome. Some R-plasmids possess a single resistant gene while others may even possess eight resistant genes.

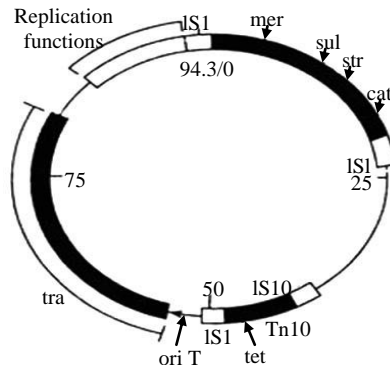


Figure 7.7: Genetic Map of the R-Plasmid. R100, cat = Chloramphenicol Resistance Gene; Str = Streptomycin Resistance Gene; sul = Sulfonamide Resistance Gene; mer = Mercury Ion Resistance Gene; IS = Insertion Sequences.

For example, plasmid R 100 is a 94.3 kilobase pair plasmid (figure 7.7) carrying resistant genes for sulfonamides, streptomycin, spectinomycin, chloramphenicol, tetracycline, etc. It also carries genes conferring resistance to mercury.

- 3) **Virulence-Plasmids:** These plasmids confer pathogenicity on the host bacterium. They make the bacterium more pathogenic as it has the ability to resist host defence or produce toxins. **For example**, Ti-plasmids of *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* induce crown gall disease of angiospermic plants; enterotoxigenic strains of *E. coli* cause traveller's diarrhoea because of a plasmid that codes for an enterotoxin inducing extensive secretion of water and salts into the bowel.

- 4) **Col-Plasmids:** These plasmids carry genes that confer the host bacterium the ability to kill other bacteria by secreting bacteriocins (a type of protein that kill cells by creating channels in the plasma membrane, thus increasing its permeability). These plasmids can also degrade DNA or RNA or attack peptidoglycan and weaken the cell wall.

Bacteriocins act against closely related strains. **For example**, Col E1 plasmid of *E. coli* code for the synthesis of bacteriocin (called **colicins**) for killing other susceptible strains of *E. coli*. Col plasmids of some *E. coli* also code for the synthesis of bacteriocin (called **colicins**) for killing Enterobacter species. Lactic acid bacteria produce bacteriocin NisinA which inhibits the growth of various gram-positive bacteria and is also used as a preservative in food industries.

- 5) **Metabolic Plasmids:** These plasmids (also called **degradative plasmids**) contain genes to code enzymes that degrade unusual substances such as toluene (aromatic compounds), pesticides (2,4-dichloro- phenoxyacetic acid), and sugars (lactose). An **example** is the TOL (= pWWO) plasmid of *Pseudomonas putida*. Some metabolic plasmids that occur in certain strains of Rhizobium induce nodule formation in legumes and carry out fixation of atmospheric nitrogen.

Figure 7.8 summarises the important types of bacterial plasmids, their hosts, and properties:

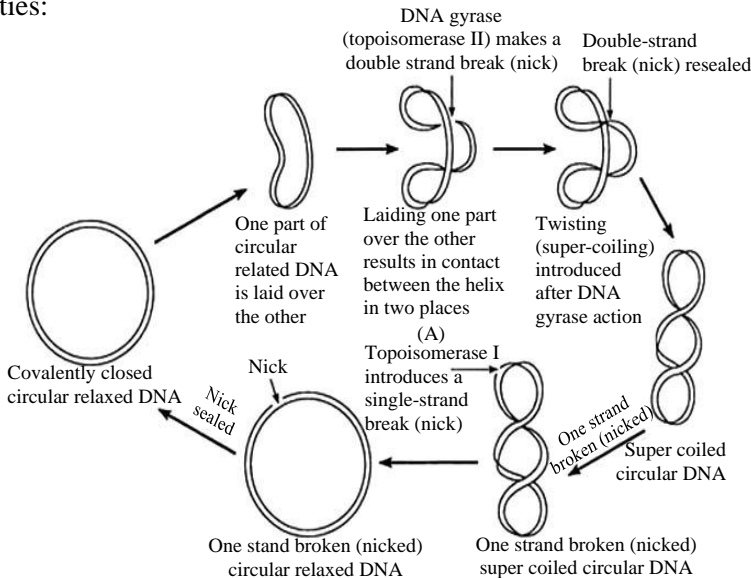


Figure 7.8: Interconversion of Relaxed and Supercoiled DNA in Bacteria. (A) Introduction of supercoiling into a Circular DNA by the Activity of DNA Gyrase (Topoisomerase II), which Makes Double strand Breaks (nicks). (B) Conversion of Supercoiled Circular DNA into Relaxed Circular DNA by the Activity of Topoisomerase I.

7.1.5.4. Replication

Plasmids have their own replication origins, thus replicate independently. The enzymes involved in the replication of plasmids (especially the small plasmids) are normal cell enzymes. However, some of the large plasmids carry genes that code for enzymes specific for plasmid replication.

A very few genes (<30) are present in plasmids and they control the replication initiation process. They are also involved in the distribution of the replicated plasmids between daughter cells. The genetic information carried in plasmid genes is not essential to the host because the bacteria lacking them function normally. Plasmid DNA is small in size, thus its replication takes place rapidly (in $1/10^{\text{th}}$ or less of the total time of cell division cycle).

Plasmids in gram -negative bacteria mostly replicate in a similar way as the bacterial chromosome that involves initiation at the replication origin site and bidirectional replication around the DNA circle giving a theta (θ) intermediate. Some plasmids of gram -negative bacteria, however, replicate by unidirectional method.

Plasmids in gram -positive bacteria mostly replicate by the rolling circle mechanism, similar to that used by phage $\phi x174$. Linear plasmids mostly replicate via mechanism that involves a protein bound to the 5'-end of each DNA strand used in priming DNA synthesis.

7.1.5.5. Incompatibility

Sometimes a single bacterial cell contains different types of plasmids. **For example**, *Borrelia burgdorferi* (causative agent of Lyme disease) carries 17 different circular and linear plasmids.

Plasmid incompatibility is observed when a plasmid is transferred to a new bacterial cell that already has another plasmid, and the transferred plasmid is not accommodated and is lost in the succeeding replication. In this case, the two plasmids are said to be incompatible.

Various incompatibility plasmid groups have been recognised in bacteria. 'The plasmids of one incompatibility group exclude each other from replicating in the cell; however, they exist with the plasmids from other groups. Plasmids of an incompatibility group regulate their replication via common mechanism, and thus are related to each other. Due to this reason even if a bacterial cell possesses various types of plasmids, each are genetically different.

7.1.6. Transposons

A transposon is a DNA sequence that can move or insert itself at a new location in the genome. This phenomenon of transposon movement to a new site in the genome is termed **transposition**. Transposons can encode transposase (a special protein) that catalyses the transposition process.

Transposons are specific for different groups of organisms. They constitute a fairly accountable fraction of genome of organisms like fungi, bacteria, plants, animals, and humans. They can even alter the genetic composition of organisms. Transposons or transposable genetic elements are also referred to as **mobile genetic elements**. They can be categorised based on their mode of transposition or on the organisms in which they are present.

7.1.6.1. Types

Transposons are categorised into the following types based on their transposition mechanism:

- 1) Cut and paste transposons,
- 2) Replicative transposons, and
- 3) Retro elements.

Cut and Paste Transposons

These transposons transpose by cutting the transposable sequence from one position in the genome and inserting it into another position within the genome (figure 7.9).

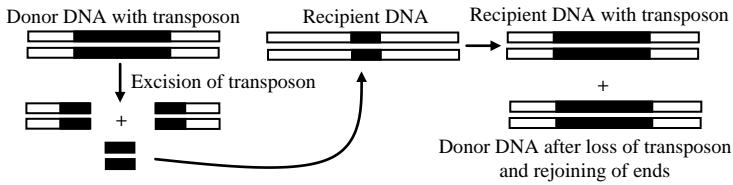


Figure 7.9: Cut and Paste Transposons

In the cut and paste transposition, two transposase sub-units are involved and each binds to the specific sequences at the two ends of transposon. Then these sub-units of transposase protein come together and lead to the excision (cutting) of transposon. The so formed excised **transposon-transposase complex** gets integrated to the target recipient site. Hence, in this way the transposon is cut from one site and pasted on the other site by a mechanism mediated by transposase protein (figure 7.10).

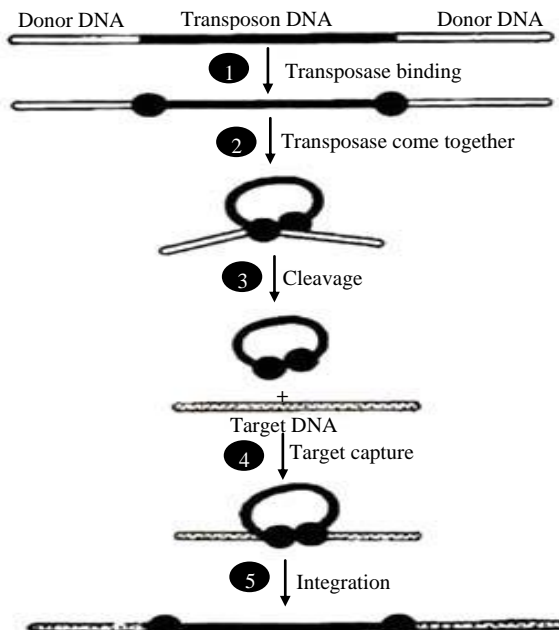


Figure 7.10: Role of Transposase Protein in Cut-and-Paste Transposition

IS-elements, P-elements in maize, hobo-elements in *Drosophila*, etc. are the **examples** of cut and paste type of transposons.

Replicative Transposons

These transposons transpose by replicating the transposable sequence, and inserting the so formed copy of DNA into the target site without altering the donor site (**figure 7.11**). In this type of transposition, one copy of transposon is gained, and after transposition the donor as well as the recipient DNA molecule exhibit one transposable sequence each.

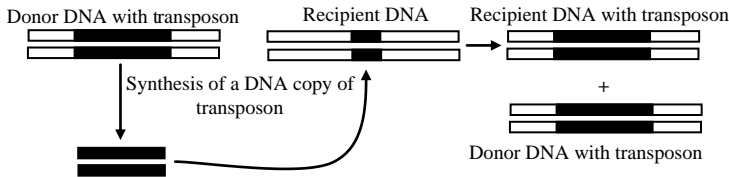


Figure 7.11: Replicative Transposons

Tn3-elements found in bacteria are the **examples** of replicative transposons.

Retro Elements

These elements transpose by DNA synthesis via reverse transcription (i.e., RNA to DNA) by using elements RNA as the template (**figure 7.12**). The transposable elements requiring reverse transcriptase for their movement are the **retro transposons**.

In this type of transposition, an RNA intermediate is involved, and the transposable DNA is transcribed to produce an RNA molecule. Then this RNA is used as a template for producing a complementary DNA by the activity of reverse transcriptase enzyme. The so formed single stranded DNA copy is made double stranded and inserted into the target DNA site.

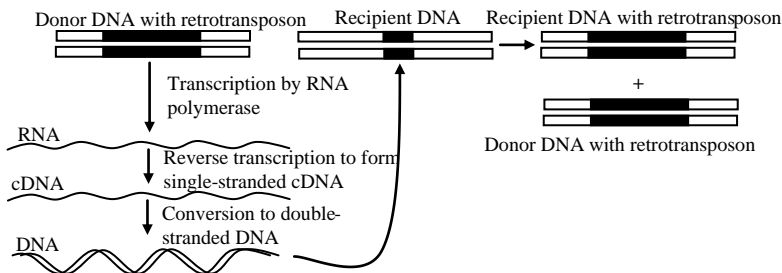


Figure 7.12: Transposition Involving Reverse Transcription

7.1.6.2. Significance

Transposons have the following significant values:

- 1) They have the ability to alter the structural and functional characteristics of genome by changing their position in the genome.
- 2) They can cause mutation by insertion, deletion, etc.
- 3) They can contribute in evolution as they can tremendously alter the genetic organisation of organisms.
- 4) They can be used as cloning vectors in gene cloning. **For example**, P-elements are often used as vector for introducing transgenes into *Drosophila*.
- 5) They can also be used as genetic markers while mapping the genomes.
- 6) Transposon-mediated gene tagging can help in searching and isolation of a particular gene.

7.2. MICROBIAL BIOTRANSFORMATION

7.2.1. Introduction

Microorganisms are capable of modifying a wide range of organic compounds enzymatically. Bio-transformations (bi-conversions or microbial transformations) are the processes in which **microorganisms convert the organic compounds into structurally related products** . It can also be said that biotransformation involves microbial conversion of a substrate into a product with a few number of enzymatic reactions.

Biotransformation is vital to survival as it converts the absorbed nutrients (food, oxygen, etc.) into substances required for normal body functions. In some pharmaceuticals, the metabolite (and not the absorbed drug) is therapeutically effective; **for ex ample**, the biotransformed metabolite of phenoxybenzamine (a drug for hypertension) is the active agent. Biotransformation also serves as an important defence mechanism in which the toxic xenobiotics and body wastes are converted into less harmful substance s that can be removed from the body.

7.2.2. Types of Reactions

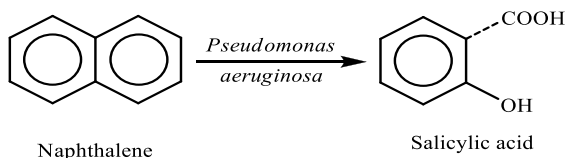
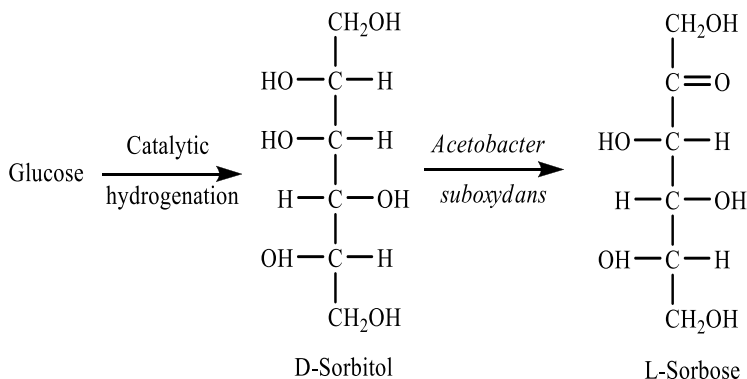
Microorganisms perform different types of simple or mixed reac tions. Some important biotransformation reactions and the involved microorganisms are listed in the **table 7.1**:

Table 7.1: Selected List of Important Biotransformation Reactions

Types of Reaction	Examples	Commonly used Microorganisms
Oxidation	Tryptophan→ 5-Hydroxytryptophan	<i>Bacillus subtilis</i>
	Naphthalene → Salicylic acid	<i>Corynebacterium</i> sp.
Reduction	Benzaldehyde → Benzyl alcohol	<i>Saccharomyces cerevisiae</i>
	Nitropentachlorobenzol → Pentachloroaniline	<i>Streptomyces aureofaciens</i>
Hydrolysis	Anhydrotetracycline → Tetracycline	<i>Streptomyces aureofaciens</i>
	Methyl laureate → Menthol	<i>Mycobacterium phlei</i>
Condensation	Streptomycin → Streptomycin-phosphate	<i>Streptomyces griseus</i>

- 1) **Oxidation:** A rule framed based on the results of earlier studies stated that if a secondary hydroxyl group of a polyol is located between a primary and a secondary group, which is in the *cis*-position with respect to t he oxidisable group, then the hydroxyl group is oxidised to give a ketone.

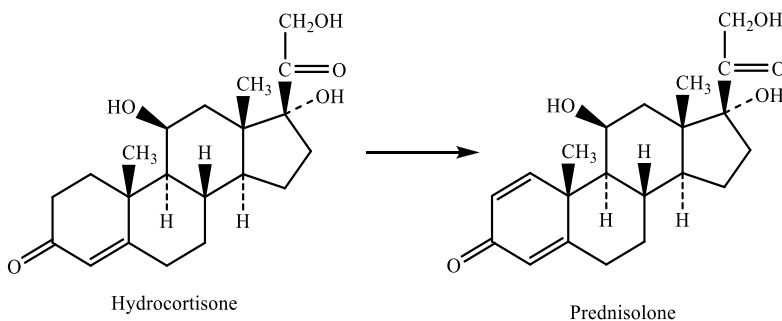
For example, conversion of D -sorbitol to L -sorbose by microbial oxidation is an important step in the synthesis of L -ascorbic acid; microbial conversion of *p*-cymene to cumic acid and *p*-xylene to *p*-toluic acid; conversion of naphthalene into salicylic acid by oxidation by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*.



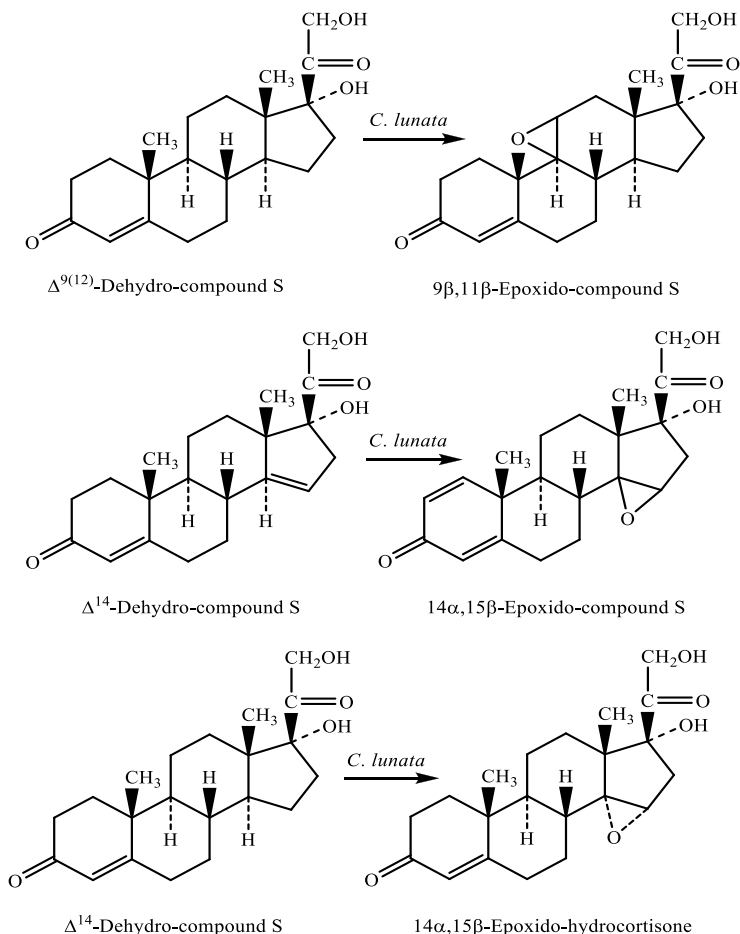
- 2) **Hydroxylation:** Hydroxylation of steroid is a monooxygenase reaction. It has been established that the carbon atoms can be hydroxylated by different organisms. The stereospecific microbial hydroxylations are practically available in all the carbon atoms of steroid molecule.

11 α -hydroxylation, 11 β -hydroxylation, 16 α -hydroxylation, and 21-hydroxylation are the industrially important hydroxylation reactions. The increased demand for cortisone and hydrocortisone can be met by microbial hydroxylation of steroid intermediates at C-11.

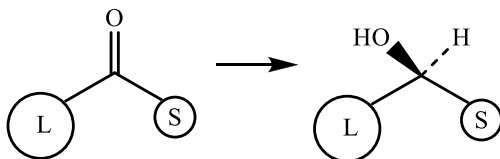
- 3) **C-1 Dehydrogenation:** The therapeutic properties of cortisone and cortisol were modified by introducing a double bond between C-1 and C-2, and producing prednisone and prednisolone, respectively.



- 4) **Epoxidation:** When an unsaturated steroid is incubated with a microorganism capable of introducing an axial hydroxy group into the nucleus at a unsaturation point, epoxidation of the isolated double bond takes place. Some **examples** of epoxidation through the action of *C. lunata* are:



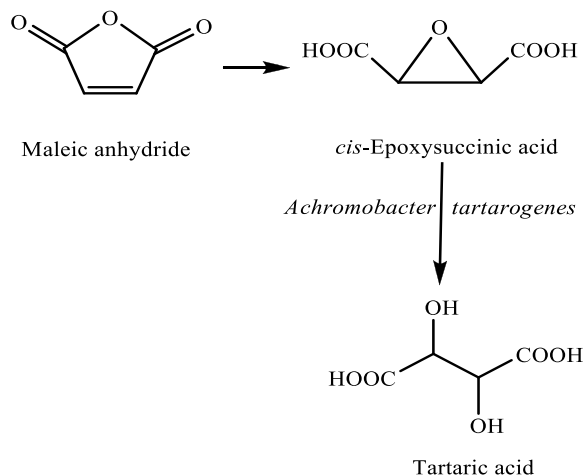
- 5) **Reduction:** The size and nature of the substituents in the substrates influence the stereospecific microbial reduction of ketonic substrates. **For example,** a highly stereospecific reduction of racemic decalone and hexahydroindanone derivatives and of related di- and tri-cyclic ketones by *Curvularia falcata*. Stereospecific reduction occurs when the ketone is flanked by large (L) and small (s) groups and gives alcohol of S-configuration.



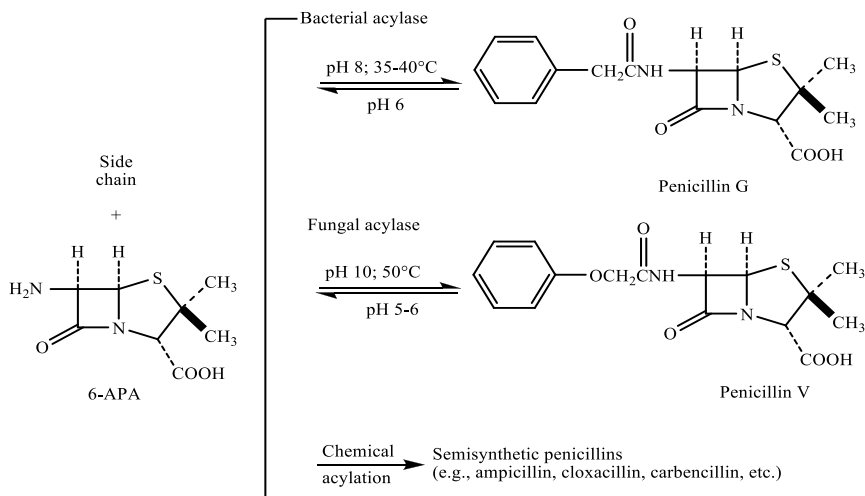
Microorganisms can also establish selective reductions of

β -diketones

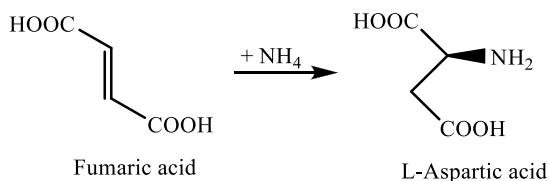
- 6) **Hydrolysis:** A large number of esters, glycosides, epoxides, lactones, β -lactams, and amides can be hydrolysed by microorganisms. **For example,** tartaric acid is produced from maleic anhydride by *Achromobacter tartarogenes*.



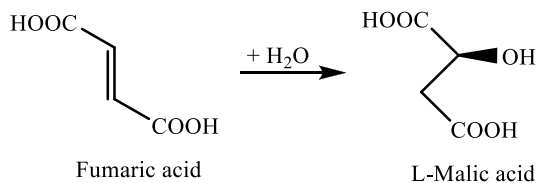
Large scale manufacture of 6-APA (the principal intermediate in the manufacture of semi-synthetic penicillins) by selective hydrolysis of penicillin G or V is catalysed by penicillin acylase enzyme. This enzyme may be either bacterial acylase (which hydrolyses penicillin G) or fungal acylase (which hydrolyses penicillin V).



- 7) **Hydration and Amination:** Asymmetric addition of water or ammonia to fumaric acid yields optically active products. Therefore, aspartase-producing bacteria have been used for manufacturing L-aspartic acid.

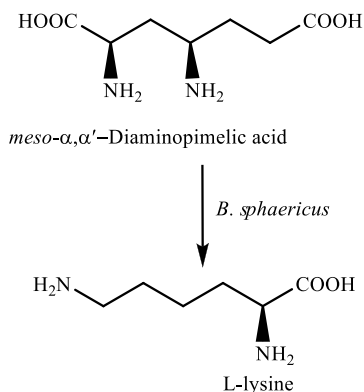


Pre-treatment with detergents is recommended to suppress the formation of succinic acid, and this results in hydration to L-malic acid (with 70% yield).

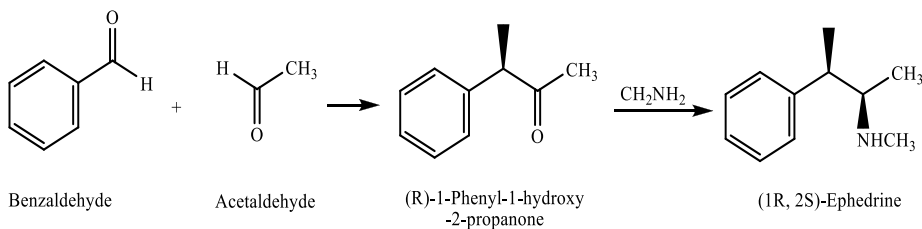


Amination is involved in the manufacture of many L -amino acids and of guanosine-5'-monophosphate (5' -GMP) with the help of two mutants of *Brevibacterium ammoniagenes*.

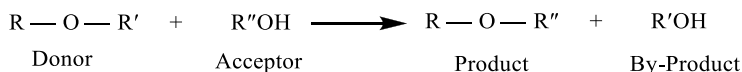
- 8) **Dehydration:** Microbial dehydration of fatty acids, histidine, *cis*-terpene hydrate, L-phenylalanine, etc. are some commonly occurring reactions.
- 9) **Deamination:** Microbial deamination is either of the two types:
 - i) **Hydrolytic: For example** , conversion of L -tyrosine into 4 -hydroxyphenylacetic acid, or
 - ii) **Oxidative: For example** , conversion of isoguanine into xanthine and formycin A, which further converts into formycin B.
- 10) **Decarboxylation:** An important decarboxylation reaction is of aromatic and linear carboxylic acids. Another **example** is the synthesis of L -lysine by stereospecific decarboxylation (catalysed by *Bacillus sphaericus*) of *meso*-α,α' -diaminopimelic acid (DAP) to L-lysine.



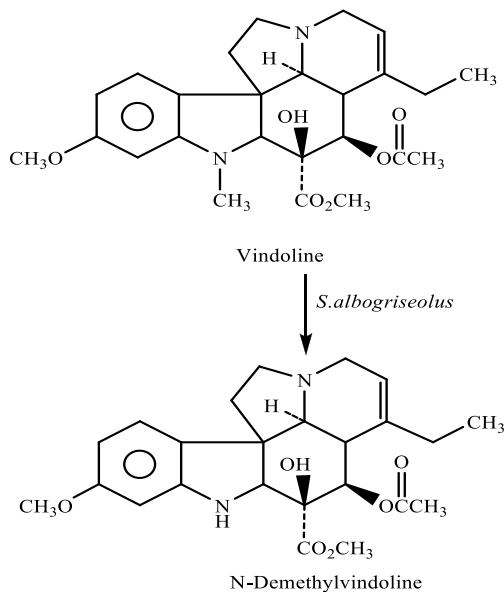
- 11) **Condensation:** Condensation is the reaction of substituted benzaldehyde utilised in 1934 for synthesising natural (1R,2S) -ephedrine. Acetaldehyde (produced from glucose by microorganisms) is reacted with benzaldehyde added to the fermenting yeast, to yield (R) -1-phenyl-1-hydroxy-2-propanone. Propanone undergoes reductive chemical condensation with methylamine to yield (1R, 2S)-ephedrine.



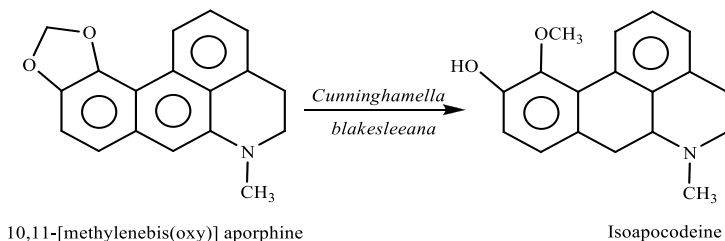
- 12) **Transglycosylation:** This reaction was used in **1944** to prepare sucrose from glucose-1-phosphate and fructose by sucrose phosphorylase of *Pseudomonas saccharophila*. Tri- and tetra-saccharides from sucrose, lactose, maltose, and cellobiose can also be obtained by this reaction utilising various bacterial, yeast, and fungal enzymes.



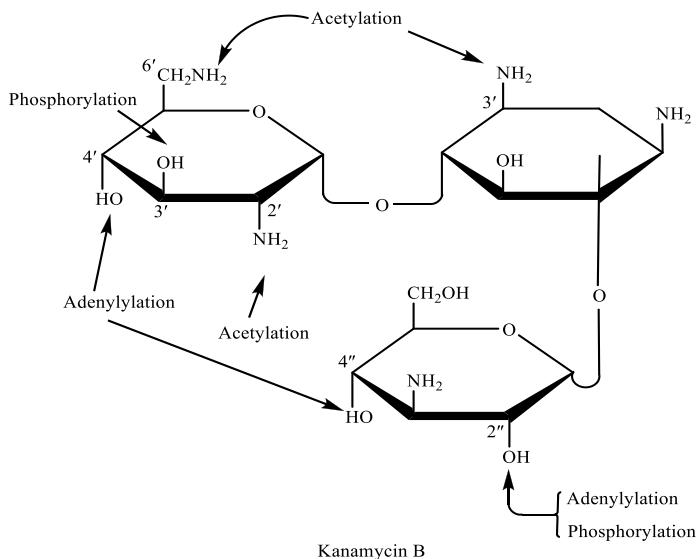
- 13) **N- and O-Demethylation:** This conversion of natural products is preferred over chemical treatments due to its high selectivity. Vindoline (a monomeric vinca alkaloid) is used for synthesising an anti-tumour compound, and is converted to N-demethyl vindoline by *Streptomyces albogriseolus*.



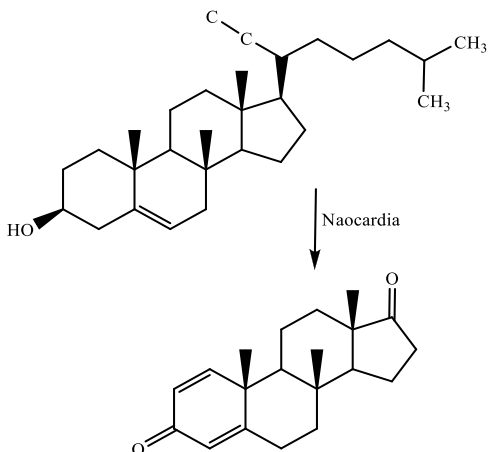
O-demethylation of 10,11-[methylenebis(oxy)] aporphine by *Cunninghamella blakesleeana* proceeds with high regioselectivity and yields isoapocodeine.



- 14) **N-Acetylation, O-Phosphorylation, and O-Adenylation:** Through these conversions, therapeutically valuable and partially or completely inactive aminocyclitol antibiotics, e.g., streptomycin, kanamycin, gentamicin, neomycin, etc. can be obtained. **For example**, kanamycin B is inactivated at several places by any of the three mechanisms.



- 15) Cleavage of Side Chains:** In 1913, the first cholesterol degradation by microorganism was reported. Later it was observed that various microorganisms cause total degradation of cholesterol. It was noticed that since enzymatic reactions involved in side chain degradation and ring cleavage occur independently and simultaneously, the ring cleavage activity can be inhibited selectively by adding specific inhibitors and modifying substrate molecule.



- 16) Isomerisation:** Isomerisation of steroids is useful for manufacturing high fructose syrup (used as a food sweetener). Using a similar process, inexpensive carbohydrates are hydrolysed to glucose, which is isomerised in 50% solution by a *Streptomyces* strain. Elucidation of these mechanisms has allowed chemical modification of the sites where inactivation occurs.

A number of such bioactive analogues (e.g., dibekacin and amikacin) have been prepared and are not subjected to inactivation; thereby inhibiting the microorganisms against which the parent antibiotics are ineffective. This approach can fight the problem of drug resistance in case of antibiotics and

anti-malarials. It can be thus concluded that microbial transformations (bioconversions) are employed in the non-chemical synthesis of various compounds at most competitive prices. Sometimes chemical synthesis can be supplemented with microbial transformation. This method is useful even when a compound cannot be synthesised chemically.

7.2.3. Sources of Biocatalysts

Biotransformation reactions employ a large range of biological catalysts, including growing cells, resting cells, killed cells, immobilised cells, cell-free extracts, enzymes, and immobilised enzymes.

Given below are the important sources of biocatalysts and the biotransformation procedures:

- 1) **Growing Cells:** The desired cells are cultivated in a medium. As the cells start growing (6-24 hours), the culture is added with a concentrated substrate. Emulsifiers (e.g., Tween, organic solvents) can also be added to solubilise the substrates and/or products, e.g., steroid biotransformation. With the help of spectroscopic or chromatographic techniques, the conversion of substrate into products can be monitored. On achieving optimum product, biotransformation is stopped.
- 2) **Non-Growing Cells:** The following reasons make the use of non-growing cells for biotransformation reactions desirable:
 - i) Substrate can be used in high concentration, and this high substrate concentration stops the cell growth.
 - ii) Cells can be washed before use, thus removing any contaminating substances.
 - iii) The conversion efficiency of substrate into product is high.
 - iv) Biotransformation can be optimised by maintaining desirable environmental conditions (pH, temperature, etc.).
 - v) Isolation and recovery of the product is easy.
- 3) **Immobilised Cells:** These cells can be used to carry out biotransformation reactions continuously. Also, the same cells can be used repeatedly. Some bioconversions with single or multistage reactions are carried out using immobilised cells, e.g., commercial production of L-alanine and malic acid.
- 4) **Immobilised Enzymes:** The cell-free enzyme systems are used in bioconversions in the form of immobilised enzymes, which have the following **advantages**:
 - i) Undesirable side reactions do not occur.
 - ii) Desired products do not get degraded.
 - iii) No transport barrier is present across the cell membrane for the substrate or product.
 - iv) Isolation and recovery of the product is simple and easy.
 - v) Several immobilised enzyme systems have been developed for biotransformations, e.g., glucose isomerase and penicillin acylase.

7.2.4. Applications

Microbial biotransformation is used in the following processes:

- 1) While studying the fate of organic chemicals in the environment, it has been found out that a large reservoir of enzymatic reactions with a large potential in preparative organic synthesis, has been exploited for several oxygenases on pilot and even on industrial scale.
- 2) Novel catalysts can be obtained from metagenomic libraries and DNA sequence based approaches.
- 3) There are increasing capabilities in adapting the catalysts to specific reactions and process requirements by rational and random mutagenesis, thus broadening the scope for application in fine chemical industry and in the field of biodegradation.
- 4) These catalysts are exploited in whole cell bioconversions or in fermentations, calling for system-wide approaches to understand strain physiology and metabolism and rational approaches to the engineering of whole cells as they are increasingly put forward in the area of systems biotechnology and synthetic biology.
- 5) Biological processes are employed in the removal of contaminants and pollutants from the environment.
- 6) Some microorganisms possess a catabolic adaptability to degrade or transform such compounds. New methodological breakthroughs in sequencing, genomics, proteomics, bioinformatics and imaging are producing information in large amounts.
- 7) In the field of environmental microbiology, genome-based global studies provide exceptional views of metabolic and regulatory networks and evidences to the evolution of biochemical pathways. These evidences are relevant to biotransformation and to the molecular adaptation strategies to changing environmental conditions.
- 8) Bio-transformation is also used for producing steroids with the help of *Streptomyces lavendulae* and *Aspergillus* and *Penicillium* species.

7.3. SUMMARY

The details given in the chapter can be summarised as follows:

- 1) **Microbial genetics** is the **study of genes** and **gene function in bacteria**, **archaea**, and **other microorganisms**.
- 2) The principles of recombination apply only to prokaryotic (and not to eukaryotic) microorganisms.
- 3) **Transformation** is a kind of genetic recombination which involves the passage of only gene carriers (i.e., the DNA molecules of donor cell) into the recipient cell through the liquid medium.
- 4) Transformation was described by **Frederick Griffith** (an English bacteriologist) in **1928**.

- 5) **Transduction** is a genetic recombination method which involves transfer of genetic material from the donor to the recipient cell through a non-replicating bacteriophage.
- 6) Transduction process was discovered by **Joshua Lederberg** and **Norton Zinder** in **1952**.
- 7) **Conjugation** involves exchange of genetic material between two bacterial cells through a conjugation tube.
- 8) Conjugation was first postulated in **1946** by **Joshua Lederberg** and **Edward Tatum** in *Escherichia coli*.
- 9) There are **two mating types of bacteria**; one is the male type or F^+ or donor cell that donates DNA, while the other is female type or F^- or recipient cell that receives the DNA.
- 10) **Plasmids** are genetic elements which replicate separately from the chromosome.
- 11) Plasmids are **small double-stranded** DNA molecules and mostly circular; however, many linear plasmids are also known.
- 12) **F-plasmid** is a circular ds-DNA molecule containing 99,159 base pairs.
- 13) F-plasmid confers 'maleness' on the bacterial cells and also called as **sex-factor**.
- 14) **R-plasmids** are the most widespread and well-studied group of plasmids.
- 15) R-plasmids are termed **resistant plasmids** as they confer resistance to antibiotics and various growth inhibitors.
- 16) **Virulence plasmids** confer pathogenicity on the host bacterium.
- 17) **Col-Plasmids** carry genes that confer the host bacterium the ability to kill other bacteria by secreting bacteriocins.
- 18) **Metabolic Plasmids** are also called **degradative plasmids**.
- 19) A **transposon** is a DNA sequence that can move or insert itself at a new location in the genome.
- 20) **Transposition** is the phenomenon of transposon movement to a new site in the genome.
- 21) **Bio-transformations** (bi-conversions or microbial transformations) are the processes in which microorganisms convert the organic compounds into structurally related products.

7.4. EXERCISE

7.4.1. True or False

- 1) Virulence plasmids confer maleness on the bacterial cells.
- 2) Metabolic Plasmids are also called degradative plasmids.
- 3) F-plasmids are also known as sex factor.
- 4) A transposon is a RNA sequence.
- 5) R-plasmids are termed resistant plasmids.

7.4.2. Fill in the Blanks

- 6) _____ plasmids confer pathogenicity on the host bacterium.
- 7) Metabolic Plasmids are also called _____ plasmids.
- 8) F-plasmid confers _____ on the bacterial cells.
- 9) _____ are also called as sex-factor.
- 10) _____ are termed resistant plasmids

Answers

- | | | | |
|--------------|----------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1) False | 2) True | 3) True | 4) False |
| 5) True | 6) Virulence | 7) Degradative | 8) Maleness |
| 9) F-plasmid | 10) R-plasmids | | |

7.4.3. Very Short Answer Type Questions

- 1) Write a short note on microbial genetics.
- 2) Write a short note on generalised transduction.
- 3) What are the properties of plasmids?
- 4) Briefly discuss transposons.
- 5) Write a short note on microbial transformation.

7.4.4. Short Answer Type Questions

- 1) Discuss transformation.
- 2) What are plasmids? Give its properties and physical nature.
- 3) Discuss the replication of plasmids.
- 4) Write a short note on the types of transposons.

7.4.5. Long Answer Type Questions

- 1) Write a detailed note on plasmids.
- 2) Discuss the type of reactions involved in microbial biotransformation.
- 3) Discuss conjugation. Write the steps involved.

CHAPTER 8

Mutation

8.1. MUTATION

8.1.1. Introduction

An **abrupt alteration in the phenotype of an individual** is termed **mutation**. Molecularly, mutation denotes any permanent and rare change in genome, i.e., the number or sequence of nucleotides. **Wright** in **1791** revealed mutation in male lamb with short legs. **Hugo de Vries** in **1901** coined the term **mutation** defining heritable phenotypic changes. In each species, the chromosomes present a characteristic structure and number. A mutagenic agent (like ionising radiation), a chemical compound, irregularities during cell division, crossing over, and fertilisation may sometimes lead to spontaneous breakage of chromosomes. A minute alteration in the structure or number of chromosome may lead to phenotypical changes. The changes in the genetic material associating a chromosome or its part are referred to as **chromosomal aberrations** or **chromosomal mutations**.

8.1.2. Types of Mutation

Mutation is of the following types:

- 1) **Point Mutation:** In this type, a single nucleotide is changed in a DNA sequence. Point mutation is determined by comparing the DNA sequences in wild type and the mutant. If one base has been replaced with another, it is called **base substitution**. When studying these changes at the level of nucleotide, they are categorised into transition and transversion (**figure 8.1**):
 - i) **Transition Mutation:** In this type, a purine or a pyrimidine is replaced with another purine or pyrimidine, respectively. **For example**, guanine replaces adenine or adenine replaces guanine; cytosine replaces thymine and thymine replaces cytosine.
 - ii) **Transversion Mutation:** In this type, a pyrimidine is replaced with a purine on the same strand or *vice versa*. **For example**, cytosine or thymine replaces guanine; cytosine or thymine replaces adenine; thymine is changed by adenine or guanine; adenine or guanine replaces cytosine.

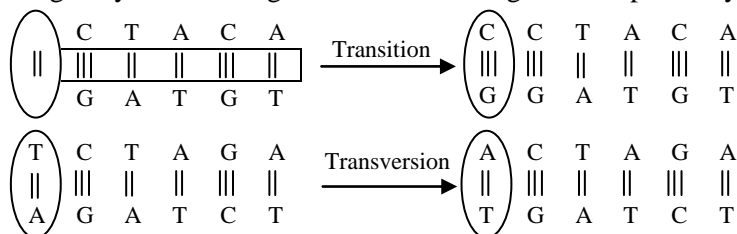


Figure 8.1: Transition and Transversion

Base-pair substitution leads to any of the three mutation types that influence the process of translation:

- i) **Nonsense Mutation:** In this type, one DNA base pair undergoes change. Here one amino acid is not replaced with another, but the altered DNA sequence prematurely signals the cell to stop the protein synthesis (figure 8.2). This type of mutation forms a shortened protein that is either slightly functional or non-functional.
- ii) **Missense Mutation:** In this type, one DNA base pair undergoes change causing replacement of one amino acid with another in the protein made by a gene (figure 8.2).
- iii) **Silent Mutation:** In this type, sequence of bases in a DNA molecule undergoes change; however, the amino acid sequence of a protein is not altered (figure 8.2).

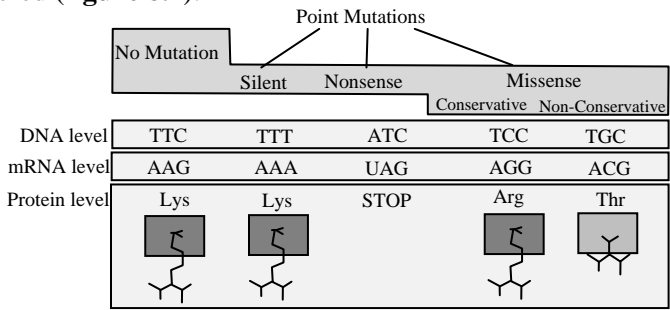


Figure 8.2: Types of Point Mutations

- 2) **Neutral Mutation:** In this type, the replacement of amino acid due to base substitution does not cause any functional change in the protein. **For example,** the amino acid serine is converted to threonine; valine is converted to alanine, etc.
- 3) **Frameshift Mutation:** In this type, addition or removal of DNA bases alters a reading frame of genes that comprises of groups of 3 bases each coding for a single amino acid. Frameshift mutation shifts the grouping of these bases and alters the amino acids coding to form a non-functional protein. Frameshift mutation includes insertions, deletions, and duplications.

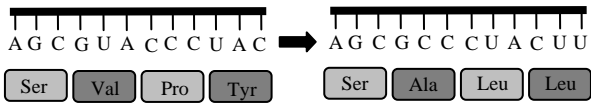


Figure 8.3: Frameshift Mutations

- 4) **Deletion Mutation:** In this type, the deletion can be short (point where one base pair is involved) or long (removal of a large fragment). Bacteria are haploid containing a copy of each gene and cannot remove the essential genes. Bacterial genome generally bears long sequences that can be deleted with no loss of bacterial viability. Recombination of directly repeated sequences in the bacterial genome causes deletion. Reversion (i.e., replacement of the lost or deleted original sequence) of deletion mutants is

rarely possible. The deletion of three bases (codon) forming mutated polypeptide is shown in **figure 8.4**:

Template DNA	→	TAC	AAA	TGG	CTG	.....	ATA	CCT	TTT	.....
mRNA	→	AUG	UUU	ACC	GAC	.....	UAU	GGA	AAA	.....
Polypeptide	→	Met	Phe	Thr	Asp	.....	Tyr	Gly	Lys	.....
↓ Deletion mutation										
Template DNA	→	TAC	AAA	TGG	.....	.....	ATA	CCT	TTT	.....
mRNA	→	AUG	UUU	ACC	.....	.....	UAU	GGA	AAA	.....
Polypeptide	→	Met	Phe	Thr	.....	.....	Tyr	Gly	Lys	.....

Figure 8.4: Deletion Mutation due to the Deletion of Three Bases or a Codon

- 5) **Duplication:**In this type, a piece of DNA is abnormally copied multiple times. This unusual copying result in functional change in the protein formed.
- 6) **Inversion:** Occasionally, a region of DNA reversibly (but still inherited) aligns into the opposite orientation. If the signals needed for expressing an adjacent gene are located in the inverted region, inversion will shift the associated gene on or off. Repeated sequences in a genome may present inversion as well. **For example**, variation in the flagellar antigens is seen in *Salmonella typhimurium*.
- 7) **Insertion Mutation:** In this type, integration of a large sequence fragment occurs through insertion of sequence elements or transposons. Insertion sequences give rise to insertion mutations by inserting into other DNA sequences. A large amount of spontaneous mutations occurs through genes inactivation by inserting a copy of an insertion sequence element rather (and not by replication errors). Transposons are DNA elements greater than insertion sequences. They switch from one region to another in a DNA sequence. Insertion of a transposon into a gene disorders the gene function. Transposons have one or more recognisable genetic markers. The exclusively studied transposons bear antibiotic resistance genes, facilitating the isolation of insertion mutants.

Template DNA	→	TAC	AAA	TGG	CTG	.....	ATA	CCT	TTT	.....
mRNA	→	AUG	UUU	ACC	GAC	.....	UAU	GGA	AAA	.....
Polypeptide	→	Met	Phe	Thr	Asp	.....	Tyr	Gly	Lys	.....
↓ Insertion mutation											
Template DNA	→	TAC	AAA	TGG	GCT	CTG	ATA	CCT	TTT
mRNA	→	AUG	UUU	ACC	CGA	GAC	UAU	GGA	AAA
Polypeptide	→	Met	Phe	Thr	Arg	Asp	Tyr	Gly	Lys

Figure 8.5: Insertion Mutation due to Insertion of Three Bases or a Codon

- 8) **Substitution Mutation:** In this type, an exchange between two bases (i.e., switching of a chemical letter, like T to C) occurs. This alters a codon encoding a different amino acid, thus producing a different protein. At times the protein structure is not affected by substitutions; such mutations are named as **silent mutations**. Whereas if substitution alters an amino acid-

coding codon to a single stop codon, an incomplete protein is produced. This disturbs the protein structure that may totally change the organism. **For example**, in sickle cell anaemia substitution occurs in codon (GAG mutates to GTG and changes Glu to Val).

- 9) **Repeat Expansion:** In this type, the number of repetition of short DNA sequence is increased. Thus, the formed protein functions differently than the original. Nucleotide repeats are the short DNA sequences repeated many times in a row. **For example**, a tri-nucleotide repeat comprises of 3 base-pair sequences, and a tetra-nucleotide repeat comprises of 4 base-pair sequences.

8.1.3. Types of Mutants

Mutant is a **mutation product**. It could be a genotype , a cell, a polypeptide, or an individual. The **four categories** of identifiable mutants are:

- 1) **Morphological Mutants:** These mutants show alteration in their form (shape, size , and color). Some **examples** of morphological mutants are albino spores in Neurospora, curly wings in Drosophila, dwarf -sized peas, and sheep with short legs.
- 2) **Lethal Mutants:** In these mutants, the new allele is recognised by its mortal or lethal effect on the organism. Lethal mutant alleles lead to the death of individuals carrying them; however, semi-lethal or sub -vital alleles let the individuals survive.
- 3) **Conditional Lethal Mutants:** Under specific environmental conditions , some alleles generate a mutant phenotype called **restrictive mutants**. When the conditions are different, they produce a normal phenotype called **permissive** that can be grown under permissive conditions and later transferred to restrictive conditions for further evaluation.
- 4) **Biochemical Mutants:** In these mutants, their biochemical function of the cell is lost. The normal function of the cell is regained upon enriching the medium with suitable nutrients. **For example** , adenine auxotrophs can be grown in adenine -rich medium, whereas wild type can grow in adenine -deficient medium.

8.1.4. Agents of Mutation - Mutagens

Physical or chemical agents that increase the frequency of mutations are termed **mutagens**. Many radiations (physical mutagens) and chemicals (chemical mutagens) act as mutagens. Various physical and chemical mutagens are presented below:

- 1) **Physical Mutagens:** These include radiations like X-rays, γ-rays, α-rays, β-rays, fast and thermal (slow) neutrons, and UV rays (**table 8.1**).

Table 8.1: Physical Mutagens (Radiation), their Properties and Mode of Action

Types of Radiation	Properties	Mode of Action
X-rays	Penetrating and non-particulate.	Induce mutations by forming free radicals and ions; cause addition, deletion, transition and transversion.

γ -rays	Highly penetrating and non particulate.	- Induce mutations by ejecting atoms from the tissues; cause addition, deletion, transition and transversion.
α -rays	Less penetrating, particulate, and positively charged.	Induce mutations by ionisation and excitation; cause chromosomal and gene mutations.
β -rays	More penetrating than α -rays, particulate, and negatively charged.	Induce mutations by ionisation and excitation; cause chromosomal and gene mutations.
Fast and thermal neutrons	Highly penetrating, particulate, and neutral particles.	Cause chromosomal breakage and gene mutations.
UV rays	Low penetrating and non ionising.	- Cause chromosomal breakage and gene mutations.

2) **Chemical Mutagens:** These are categorised into four groups (**table 8.2**):

Table 8.2: Some Commonly used Chemical Mutagens and their Mode of Action

Groups of Mutagen	Chemicals	Mode of Action
Alkylating agents	Ethyl methane sulphonate Ethyl ethane sulphonate	AT \leftrightarrow GC transitions GC \leftrightarrow AT transitions
Base analogues	5-Bromo uracil 2-Amino purine	AT \leftrightarrow GC transitions AT \leftrightarrow GC transitions
Acridine dyes	Acriflavin Proflavin	Deletion, addition , and frame shifts.
Others	Nitrous acid Hydroxylamine Sodium azide	AT \leftrightarrow GC transitions GC \leftrightarrow AT transitions Transitions

8.1.4.1. Physical Mutagens

Physical mutagens include various types of radiations, i.e., X-rays, gamma rays, alpha particles, beta particles, fast and thermal (slow) neutrons , and UV rays (**table 8.3**).

Table 8.3: Physical Mutagens (Radiation), their Properties and Mode of Action

Types of Radiation	Properties	Mode of Action
X-rays	Penetrating and non particulate	- Induce mutations by forming free radicals and ions; cause addition, deletion, transition and transversion.
γ -rays	Highly penetrating and non-particulate.	Induce mutations by ejecting atoms from the tissues; cause addition, deletion, transition and transversion.
α -rays	Less penetrating, particulate, and positively charged.	Induce mutations by ionisation and excitation; cause chromosomal and gene mutations.
β -rays	More penetrating than α -rays, particulate, and negatively charged.	Induce mutations by ionisation and excitation; cause chromosomal and gene mutations.

Fast and thermal neutrons	Highly penetrating, particulate, and neutral particles.	Cause chromosomal breakage and gene mutations.
UV rays	Low penetrating and non-ionising.	Cause chromosomal breakage and gene mutations.

Radiations are the most important physical mutagen. They cause damage in the DNA molecules falling in the wavelength range below 340nm and photon energy above 1 eV (electron-volt). The destructive radiation consists of ultraviolet UV-rays, X-rays, γ -rays, α -rays, β -rays, cosmic rays, neutrons, etc.

Radiations cause three types of damage, i.e., **lethal damage** (killing the organisms), **potentially lethal damage** (can be lethal under certain ordinary conditions), and **sub-lethal damage** (cells do not die till the radiations reach a certain threshold value).

On exposing the bacteria to radiation, their ability to develop colonies is lost gradually. This gradual loss of viability is graphically expressed on a plot of the surviving colonies against the increasing exposure time.

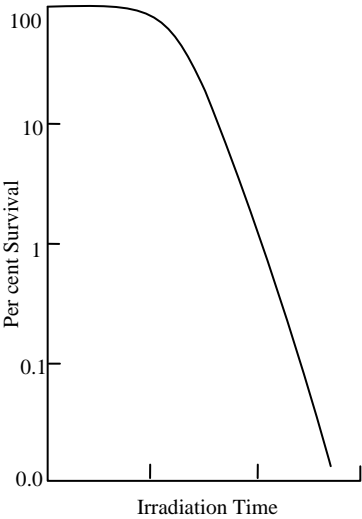


Figure 8.6: Typical UV Light Survival Curve for a Bacterium

This dose-response graph is termed the **survival curve (figure 8.6)**. This curve is analysed by a simple mathematical theory called **hit theory**.

Every organism possesses a sensitive target site, which is damaged or hit by radiation photons (light particles), thus inactivating the organisms. The related equation can be derived based on this theory. These equations are used for calculating the survival curve for the populations containing ‘N’ identical organisms exposed to ‘D’ dose of damage causing radiation.

The ‘dN’ number damaged by a ‘dD’ dose and the initial population not exposed to radiation are proportional, hence

$$dN = KN$$

Where,
K = constant that measures the dose effectiveness.

On integrating this equation from $N = N_0$ at $D = 0$:

$$N = N_0 e^{-KD} \quad \dots(1)$$

The surviving fraction (S):

$$S = N/N_0 = e^{-KD} \quad \dots(2)$$

On plotting S against D , a straight line with a slope of $-K$ is obtained (**figure 8.6**). This curve is termed an **exponential** or **single hit curve**, and is obtained when the phages are irradiated with X-rays.

If in a population of different organisms, each organism consists of 'n' sites, each site should be hit to inactivate the organism. Therefore, each organism is hit by 'n' times. The probability of one unit being hit by a dose 'D' is:

$$P = 1 - e^{-KD}$$

So the probability of P_n will be:

$$P_n = (1 - e^{-KD})^n$$

The surviving fraction (S) of the population is:

$$1 - p_n \text{ or } S = 1 - (1 - e^{-KD})^n \quad \dots(3)$$

On expanding equation (3):

$$S = 1 - (1 - ne^{-KD} + e^{-nKD})$$

At the large value of D , the higher order terms become negligible. Therefore, at high dose (D):

$$S = ne^{-KD} \text{ or}$$

$$\ln S = \ln n - KD \quad \dots(4)$$

On plotting equation (3) for $K = 1$, the different values of n reveals that for small values of D , $\ln S$ gradually changes (**figure 8.7**). At large value of D , equation (4) dominates and the curve becomes linear.

Ultraviolet (UV) Radiation

UV radiation damages the DNA duplex of bacteria and phages. They get absorbed and excite the macromolecules. The absorption maxima of nucleic acid (280nm) and protein (260nm) are almost the same.

UV rays generally target the DNA molecule and not the proteins. However, absorption spectrum of RNA and that of DNA are quite similar.

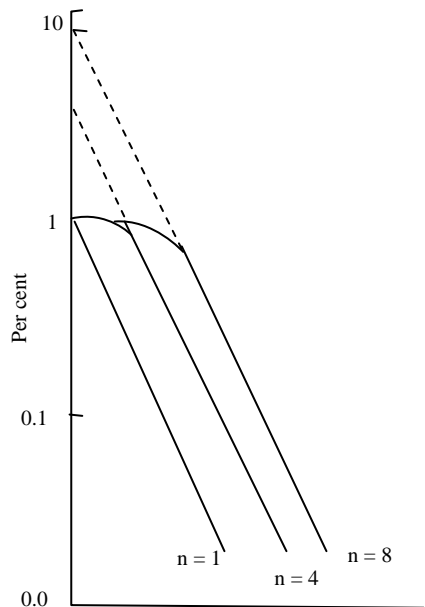


Figure 8.7: Survival Curve for Different Values of n (Hits' Time)

The DNA on excitation causes cross-linking, breaks the single strands and damages the base as minor lesions, while it generates nucleotide dimer as a major lesion. Purines are more radio-resistant than pyrimidine, while thymine is more reactive than cytosine.

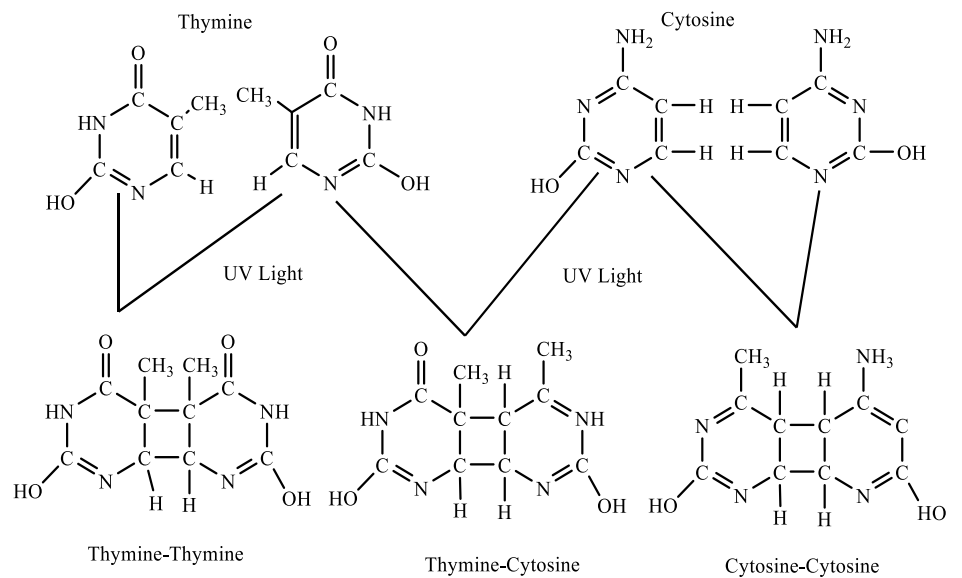


Figure 8.8: Formation of Pyrimidine Dimer Induced by UV Radiation

The ratio of thymine -thymine (TT), thymine -cytosine (TC), and cytosine -cytosine (CC) dimer (**figure 8.8**) is 10:3:3, respectively. A few dimers of TU and UU also appear. The initial step in pyrimidine dimerization is the hydration of their 4:5 bonds.

The DNA helix is distorted by the formation of thymine -thymine (TT) dimer as they are pulled towards each other. This distortion weakens the hydrogen-bonding to adenines in the opposing strand. This structural distortion inhibits the advance of replication fork.

X-Rays

The X-rays break the phosphate ester linkages in the DNA at multiple points; thus, resulting in the deletion or rearrangement of a large number of bases in the DNA molecule.

The X-rays break either one or both the strands of DNA. If both the DNA strands break, the condition becomes fatal. The DNA segment between the two breaks is removed, thereby causing deletion. Since both the X -rays and UV rays damage the DNA molecule, they are used in sterilisation of bacteria and viruses.

8.1.4.2. Chemical Mutagens

The chemical mutagens are divided into the following four groups (**table 8.4**):

Table 8.4: Some Commonly used Chemical Mutagens and their Mode of Action

Groups of Mutagen	Chemicals	Mode of Action
Alkylating agents	Ethyl methane sulphonate	AT ↔ GC transitions
	Methyl methane sulphonate	Transitions
	Ethyl ethane sulphonate	GC ↔ AT transitions
	Ethylene imines	Transitions

Base analogues	5-Bromouracil 2-Aminopurine	AT ↔ GC transitions AT ↔ GC transitions
Acridine dyes	Acridine, proflavine	Deletion, addition, and frame shifts.
Others	Nitrous acid Hydroxylamine Sodium azide	AT ↔ GC transitions GC ↔ AT transitions Transitions

Alkylating Agents

An alkyl group is added to the hydrogen bonding oxygen of guanine (N₇ position) and adenine (at N₃ position) residues of DNA with the help of alkylating agents. This results in alkylation, which increases the probability of ionisation with the introduction of pairing errors. Hydrolysis of linkage of base - sugar occurs that causes a gap in one chain.

Depurination is the name given to this phenomenon of loss of alkylated base from the DNA molecule (by breakage of bond joining the nitrogen of purine and deoxyribose). Depurination is not always mutagenic. The gap caused by the loss of purine can be repaired.

Given below are the commonly used **alkylating agents**:

- 1) Dimethyl Sulphate (DMS),
- 2) Ethyl Methane Sulphonate (EMS, -CH₃CH₂SO₃CH₃)
- 3) Ethyl Ethane Sulphonate (EES, -CH₃CH₂SO₃CH₂CH₃)

EMS can specifically remove guanine and cytosine from the chain and create a gap in which any base (A, T, G, and C) can be inserted. During replication, chain without gap will form a normal DNA. In the second round of replication, the second gap is filled by a suitable base.

On inserting a correct base, normal DNA sequence is produced. On inserting incorrect bases, transversion or transition mutation occurs. **For example**, methyl nitrosoguanidine adds methyl group to guanine, thus causing it to mispair with thymine. After subsequent replication, GC converts into AT.

Base Analogues

A chemical compound that is similar to one of the four DNA bases is termed a base analogue. It can be introduced in a growing polynucleotide chain when normal replication occurs. Base analogues have base pairing properties that differ from the bases. They replace the bases and cause stable mutation.

5-Bromouracil (5-BU), an analogue of thymine, is a very commonly used base analogue that functions like thymine and pairs with adenine (**figure 8.9A**).

5-BU undergoes tautomeric shift from keto form to enol form caused by bromine atom. The enol form exists for a long time for 5-BU than for thymine (**figure 8.9B**). If 5-BU replaces a thymine, it forms a guanine during replication, which specifies cytosine causing G:C pair (**figure 8.9A**).

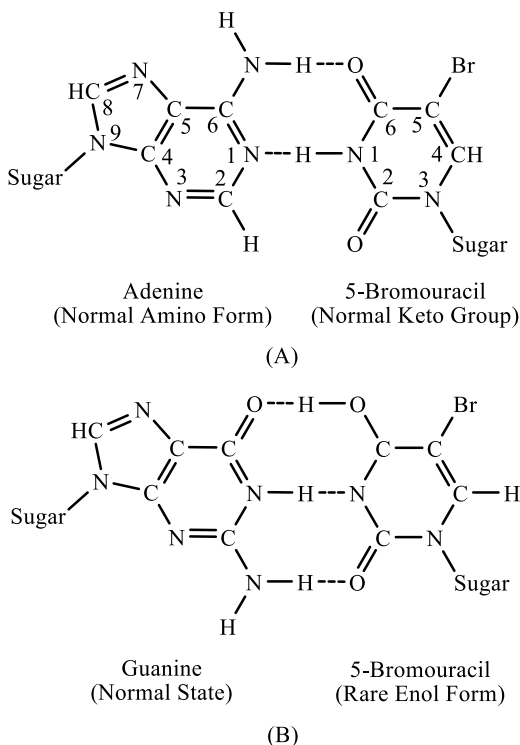


Figure 8.9: Mutagenesis by Base Analogue 5-bromouracil. (A) The Keto Form of 5-BU Pairs with Adenine; (B) 5-BU is Tautomerised to Enol Form and Pairs with Guanine Rather than Adenine

During replication, the keto form of 5-BU substitutes for T and the replication of an initial AT pair becomes an A:BU pair (**figure 8.10A**). The enol form of 5-BU pairs with G (the first mutagenic step of replication). In the next round of replication, G pairs with C. Thus, transition is completed from AT→GC pair.

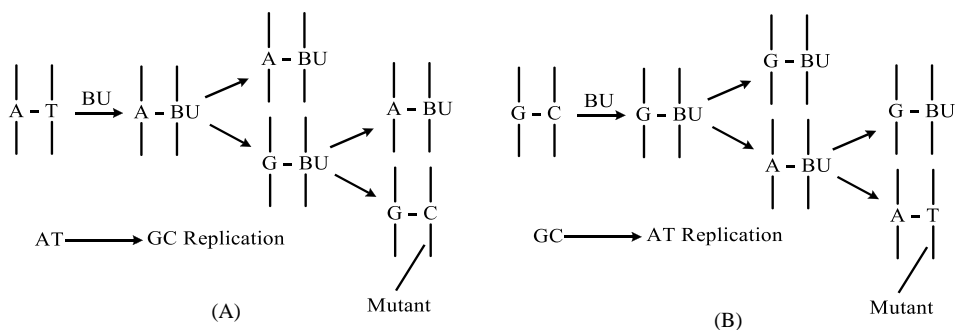


Figure 8.10: Mechanism of 5-Bromouracil (BU)-Induced Mutagenesis. (A) AT → GC Replication; (B) GC → AT Replication

5-BU can also convert GC into AT. The enol form acts as a cytosine analogue (and not thymine analogue). Due to error, GC pair converts into a G:BU pair, which becomes an AT pair (**figure 8.10B**). Due to the presence of such pairing properties, 5-BU is used in chemotherapy of cancer and viral infections. 5-BU pairs with guanine and disturbs the replication in microorganisms.

5-Bromodeoxyuridine (5-BDU) can replace thymidine in DNA molecule. The 2-Amino Purine (2 -AP) and 2,6 -Di-Amino Purine (2, 6-DAP) are the purine analogues. 2-AP pairs with thymine but can form a single hydrogen bond with cytosine, thus resulting in AT to GC transition. The effectiveness of 2 -AP and 2,6-DAP is not as much as 5-BU and 5-BDU.

Chemicals Changing the Specificity of Hydrogen Bonding

Many chemicals are incorporated into DNA to change the specificity of hydrogen bonding. The chemicals used as mutagens are nitrous oxide (HNO_2), hydroxylamine (HA), and ethyl-methane-sulphonate (EMS).

- 1) **Nitrous Oxide (HNO_2):** It converts the amino group of bases into keto group by oxidative deamination. The frequency order of deamination (removal of amino group) is adenine > cytosine > guanine.
- 2) **Deamination of Adenine:** It forms hypoxanthine, whose pairing behaviour is similar to that of guanine. Thus, it pairs with cytosine (and not thymine) and replaces AT pairing with GC pairing (**figure 8.11A**).
- 3) **Deamination of Cytosine:** This forms uracil by replacing the $-\text{NH}_2$ group with $-\text{OH}$ group. Since the affinity for hydrogen bonding of uracil is similar to that of thymine, C-G pairing is replaced with U-A pairing (**figure 8.11B**).

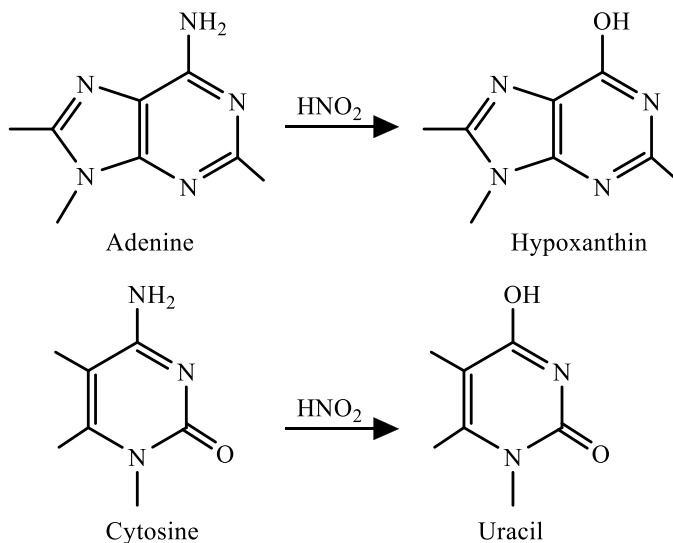


Figure 8.11: Deamination by nitrous oxide of adenine into hypoxanthine (A), and cytosine into uracil (B)

- 4) **Deamination of Guanine:** This forms non-mutagenic xanthine, which behaves like guanine as there is no change in pairing behaviour. Xanthine pairs with cytosine, therefore, G-C pairing is replaced with X-C pairing.
- 5) **Hydroxylamine (NH_2OH):** It hydroxylates the C4 nitrogen of cytosine and converts into a modified base via deamination which causes to base pairs like thymine. Therefore, GC pairs are converted to AT pairs.

Intercalating Agents

Some dyes, **e.g.**, acridine orange, proflavine, and acriflavin, are three ringed molecules having dimensions similar to those of purine pyrimidine pairs (**figure 8.12**). These dyes in aqueous solution can insert themselves in between the DNA bases (i.e., intercalate the DNA) in adjacent pairs; and this process is termed **intercalation**, and the dyes are called **intercalating agents**.

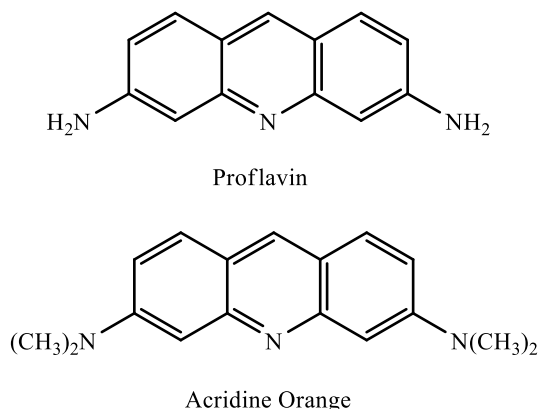


Figure 8.12: Chemical Structure of Two Mutagenic Acridine Derivatives

Acridines are planer (flat) molecules that can be intercalated between the DNA base pairs. They distort the DNA and causes deletion or insertion after replication of DNA molecule. Due to deletion or insertion of intercalating agents, frameshift mutations occur (**figure 8.13**).

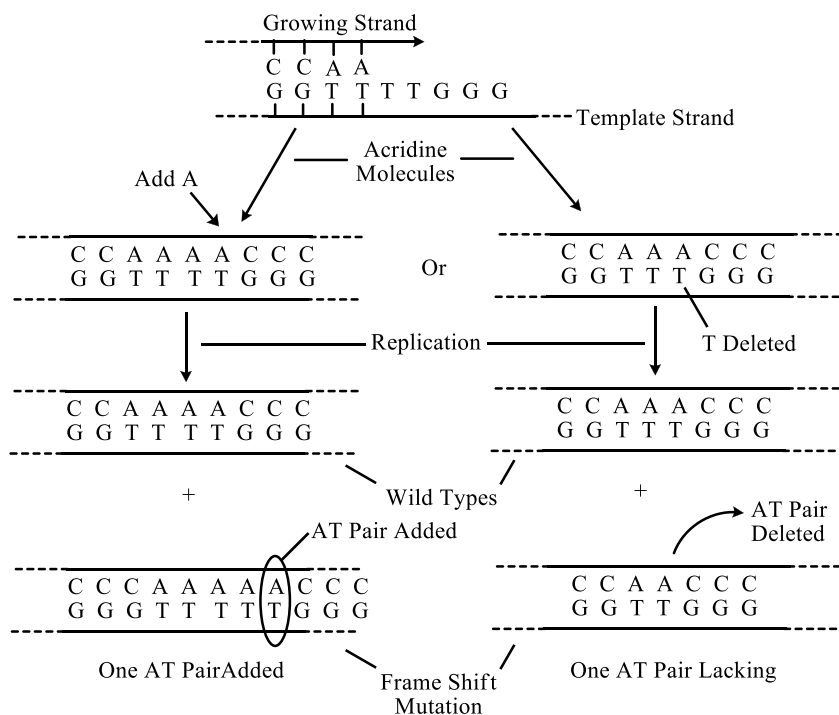


Figure 8.13: Mechanism of Intercalation of an Acridine Molecule in the Replication Fork

8.2. SUMMARY

The details given in the chapter can be summarised as follows:

- 1) An abrupt alteration in the phenotype of an individual is termed **mutation**.
- 2) **Hugo de Vries** in **1901** coined the term **mutation** defining heritable phenotypic changes.
- 3) In **point mutation**, a single nucleotide is changed in a DNA sequence.
- 4) If one base has been replaced with another, it is called **base substitution**.
- 5) In **transition mutation**, a purine or a pyrimidine is replaced with another purine or pyrimidine, respectively.
- 6) In **transversion mutation**, a pyrimidine is replaced with a purine on the same strand or *vice versa*.
- 7) In **neutral mutation**, the replacement of amino acid due to base substitution does not cause any functional change in the protein.
- 8) In **frameshift mutation**, addition or removal of DNA bases alters a reading frame of genes that comprises of groups of 3 bases each coding for a single amino acid.
- 9) **Deletion Mutation** involves deletion that can be short (point where one base pair is involved) or long (removal of a large fragment).
- 10) In **duplication**, a piece of DNA is abnormally copied multiple times.
- 11) In **inversion**, occasionally, a region of DNA reversibly (but still inherited) aligns into the opposite orientation.
- 12) In **insertion mutation**, integration of a large sequence fragment occurs through insertion of sequence elements or transposons.
- 13) In **substitution mutation**, an exchange between two bases (i.e., switching of a chemical letter, like T to C) occurs.
- 14) In **repeat expansion**, the number of repetition of short DNA sequence is increased.
- 15) **Morphological Mutants** show alteration in their form (shape, size, and colour).
- 16) In **lethal mutants**, the new allele is recognised by its mortal or lethal effect on the organism.
- 17) In **biochemical mutants**, their biochemical function of the cell is lost.
- 18) Physical or chemical agents that increase the frequency of mutations are termed **mutagens**.
- 19) The changes in the genetic material associating a chromosome or its part are referred to as **chromosomal aberrations** or **chromosomal mutations**.

8.3. EXERCISE

8.3.1. True or False

- 1) Mutation is an abrupt alteration in the genotype of an individual.
- 2) In Point Mutation, a single nucleotide is changed in a DNA sequence.
- 3) In Biochemical Mutants, their biochemical function of the cell is lost.
- 4) In Duplication, a region of DNA is reversibly aligned into the opposite orientation.
- 5) In Substitution Mutation, an exchange between two bases occurs.

8.3.2. Fill in the Blanks

- 6) The Biochemical function of the cell is lost in _____.
- 7) In _____, a single nucleotide is changed in a DNA sequence.
- 8) In _____, the number of repetition of short DNA sequence is increased.
- 9) The changes in the genetic material related to a chromosome are called as _____.
- 10) Physical or chemical agents that increase the frequency of mutations are termed _____.

Answers

- | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------|-------------------|---------------------|---------|
| 1) False | 2) True | 3) True | 4) False | 5) True |
| 6) Biochemical mutants | | 7) Point Mutation | 8) Repeat expansion | |
| 9) Chromosomal aberrations/mutations | | | 10) Mutagens | |

8.3.3. Very Short Answer Type Questions

- 1) Write a short note on mutation.
- 2) Discuss insertion mutation.
- 3) What is deletion mutation?
- 4) What are mutants? Write about conditional lethal mutants.
- 5) How X-rays act as mutagens.

8.3.4. Short Answer Type Questions

- 1) Write a short note on type of mutants.
- 2) Discuss the physical agents of mutagens.
- 3) What are chemical mutagens? Discuss alkylating agents.

8.3.5. Long Answer Type Questions

- 1) Give a detailed account on agents of mutation.
- 2) Discuss types of mutation in detail.

CHAPTER 9

Fermentation

9.1. FERMENTATION

9.1.1. Introduction

The process of fermentation involves biochemical activity of organisms during their growth, development, reproduction, senescence, and death. Fermentation technology employs organisms to produce food, pharmaceuticals, and alcoholic beverages in industries on a large scale.

The **principle** involved in industrial fermentation technology is that organisms are grown under optimum conditions and are provided with raw materials and other necessary requirements like carbon, nitrogen, salts, trace elements, and vitamins. The end products formed due to their metabolism during their life span are released into the media. These end products are extracted by human beings as they are commercially valuable.

Some major end products of fermentation produced on a large scale industrial basis are wine, beer, cider, vinegar, ethanol, cheese, hormones, antibiotics, complete proteins, enzymes, and other beneficial products.

9.1.2. Fermentation Methods

The three different processes of fermentation are:

- 1) Batch fermentation,
- 2) Fed-batch fermentation, and
- 3) Continuous fermentation.

9.1.2.1. Batch Fermentation

In batch fermentation process, the microorganisms are inoculated in a fixed volume of batch culture medium. The organisms during their growth consume the nutrients, and the growth products (i.e., biomass and metabolites) start accumulating. Since the nutrient environment within the bioreactor is continuously changed, the rate of cell metabolism also changes, and ultimately, cell multiplication stops due to limitation of nutrients and accumulation of toxic excreted waste products.

The complex nature of batch growth of microorganisms is shown in **figure 9.1**. In the initial **lag phase**, no apparent growth is observed; however, biochemical analyses show metabolic turnover signifying that the cells are acclimatising to the environmental conditions and will start growing. Then comes the **transient acceleration phase** when the inoculum begins to grow. This phase is quickly

followed by the **exponential phase** where the organisms are growing at the fastest rate as the nutrients are in excess, environmental conditions are optimum, and growth inhibitors are absent.

In batch fermentation process, the exponential growth occurs for a limited period. With the change in nutrient conditions, the growth rate decreases and begins the **deceleration phase** followed by the **stationary phase** at which the growth stops completely because of nutrient exhaustion. The **death phase** when the growth rate has come to an end is the final phase of the cycle. Mostly the biotechnological batch processes are stopped before this stage because of decreasing metabolism and cell lysis.

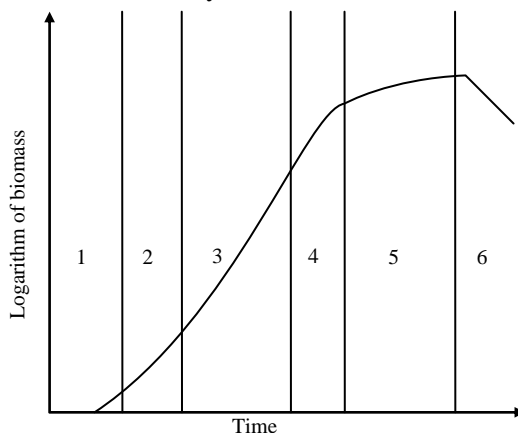


Figure 9.1: Growth Characteristics in a Batch Culture of a Microorganism. 1) Lag Phase, 2) Transient Acceleration, 3) Exponential Phase, 4) Deceleration Phase, 5) Stationary Phase, 6) Death Phase

Advantages

- 1) Requires less space,
- 2) Can be easily handled, and
- 3) Less chances of contamination.

Disadvantages

- 1) Time consuming,
- 2) Requires more time for cleaning, sterilisation, and cooling, and
- 3) Product yield is low.

9.1.2.2. Fed-Batch Fermentation

In fed -batch fermentation process, freshly prepared culture media is added periodically without removing the culture fluid, thus increasing the volume of fermentation culture. This fermentation type is used for producing proteins from recombinant microorganisms.

9.1.2.3. Continuous Fermentation

In continuous fermentation process, a near -balanced growth is obtained with a little fluctuation in nutrients, metabolites, cell numbers, or biomass. In this process, fresh medium is added to the batch process at the exponential phase of growth and parallelly withdrawing the medium along with cells. Continuous

methods of cultivation allow the organisms to grow under steady state (unchanging) conditions, in which growth occurs at a constant rate in a constant environment. In a **completely mixed continuous culture system**, sterile medium is passed into the bioreactor (**figure 9.2**) at a steady flow rate, and culture broth (containing medium, waste products, and organisms) emerges from it at the same rate, thus the volume of the total culture in the bioreactor remains constant.

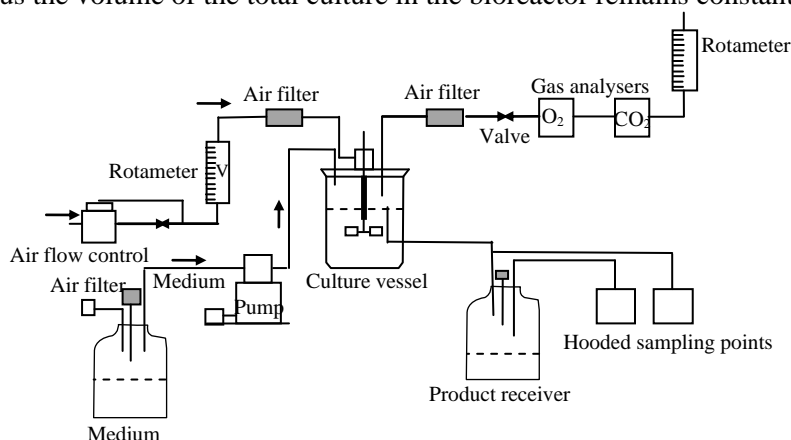


Figure 9.2: A Simple Laboratory Fermenter Operating on a Continuous Basis

The **three types** of continuous fermentation processes are:

- 1) **Single Stage Continuous Fermentation:** In this process, the fermenter is continuously used. Media is added at a specific rate and the product formed is removed at the same rate. Thus, a balance is maintained between the input of media and output of fermented media.
- 2) **Single Stage Recycle Continuous Fermentation:** In this process, a single fermenter is continuously used. The inoculation rate of fermentation media and the withdrawal rate of fermented broth are same. In this process, a portion of fermented broth plus withdrawal culture is recycled to the fermenter.
- 3) **Multi-Stage Continuous Fermentation:** In this process, two or more fermenters are continuously operated in a sequence. The first fermenter is used for growth of cells because in some fermentation processes the product is formed after cell multiplication. The effluent of first fermenter serves as an in-fluent for the next fermenter.

Advantages

- 1) Product forms continuously,
- 2) Product yield is good,
- 3) Inoculation of culture is done only once, and
- 4) Saves time and labour.

Disadvantages

- 1) Complex and difficult to operate,
- 2) More chances of contamination, and
- 3) Operators with brief knowledge on fermentation and microbial behaviour and growth are required.

9.1.3. General Requirements

Water forms the leading component of the media in which the microorganisms grow. On achieving optimum production in liquid fermentation processes, removal of water is a major factor in the cost of bioproduct recovery and downstream processing. The water quality is highly significant as it affects microbial growth and production of some bioproducts. In media production, there is quality control of raw materials. In respect of volume, water is an important raw material in many biotechnological processes, and its supply and use should be carefully monitored and controlled.

A source of energy or carbon, a nitrogen source, inorganic elements, and specific growth factors (for some cell types) are the basic nutritional requirements of microorganisms. Carbon and nitrogen sources are mainly derived from complex mixtures of cheap natural products or by-products in most of the biotechnological processes (table 9.1):

Table 9.1: Carbohydrate and Nitrogen Sources for Industrial Media

Carbohydrate Sources	Form	Nitrogen Sources (% Nitrogen by Weight)
Glucose	Pure glucose monohydrate and hydrolysed starch	Barley (1.5-2.0) Beet molasses (1.5-2.0)
Lactose	Pure lactose and whey powder	Corn-steep liquor (4.5)
Starch	Barley, groundnut meal, oat flour, rye flour, and soybean meal	Groundnut meal (8.0) Oat flour (1.5-2.0) Pharmamedia (8.0)
Sucrose	Beet molasses, cane molasses, crude brown sugar, and pure white sugar	Rye flour (15-2.0) Soybean meal (8.0) Whey powder (4.0)

The nutrients availability and their type exert strong physiological control over fermentation reactors and product formation. Input of raw materials to fermentation depends on the material cost at the particular time because their market price alters with seasonal and other variables. Sterilisation practices for biotechnological media should destroy maximum contaminating microorganisms at minimum temperature and causing minimal damage to the medium components. Batch-wise sterilisation in the bioreactor is being widely used, although continuous methods are also coming in use.

Preparation of the media in an appropriate manner is the basis of the entire fermentation process. Poor media design leads to low efficiency of growth and poor product formation.

9.1.4. Study of Media

Media is a mixture of various nutrients prepared artificially to support the growth and multiplication of microorganisms. A large variety of media are available in the laboratory. The media mostly are available commercially, have pre-mixed components, and require addition of water followed by sterilisation. Media are continuously being developed and/or revised to be used for isolating and

identifying desired bacteria in various fields (like food, water, and clinical microbiology). Culture media are required for growing organisms from infected material so that the causative agent can be identified.

A culture media has the following **constituents**:

- 1) **Water:** It acts as a source of hydrogen and oxygen.
- 2) **Electrolyte:** Sodium chloride or other electrolytes.
- 3) **Peptone:** It is a complex mixture of partially digested proteins, and contains proteases, amino acids, polypeptides, phosphates, minerals (potassium and magnesium), and accessory growth factors like nicotinic acid and riboflavin.
- 4) **Meat Extract:** It contains protein degradation products, inorganic salts, carbohydrates, and growth factors.
- 5) **Blood or Serum:** 5-10% defibrinated sheep blood is most commonly used for enriching the culture media. In some media, serum is also used.
- 6) **Agar:** It is obtained from sea weed (*Algae gelidium* species), and contains a long-chain polysaccharide, a small amount of protein-like material, and various inorganic salts.

9.1.4.1. Types of Media

The media used in fermentation are classified as follows:

- 1) **Based on Physical State**
 - i) Liquid media,
 - ii) Semisolid media, and
 - iii) Solid media.
- 2) **Based on the Presence of Molecular Oxygen and Reducing Substances in the Media**
 - i) Aerobic media and
 - ii) Anaerobic media.
- 3) **Based on Nutritional Factors**
 - i) Simple media,
 - ii) Complex media,
 - iii) Synthetic media, and
 - iv) Special media:
 - a) Enriched media,
 - b) Enrichment media,
 - c) Selective media,
 - d) Differential media,
 - e) Indicator media,
 - f) Transport media, and
 - g) Sugar media.

9.1.4.2. Culture Media for Lactobacilli and *E. coli*

Autotrophs can be cultivated using chemically defined media, which are also used for defining the nutritional requirements of heterotrophs. However, chemically defined media is not employed and instead some complex raw

materials (**e.g.**, peptones, meat extract, and yeast extract) are used for the routine cultivation of heterotrophs. The resulting media support the growth of a wide variety of heterotrophic bacteria. To obtain a solid medium, agar is added which serve as a non -nutritive solidifying agent. **Table 9.2** contains a description of these raw materials:

Table 9.2: Composition of Media Supporting Growth of Lactobacilli and *E. coli* (Heterotrophic Bacteria)

1) Medium for Cultivation of Lactobacilli	
i) Casein hydrolysate	5gm
ii) Glucose	10gm
iii) Solution A	10ml
iv) Solution B	5ml
v) L-Asparagine	250ml
vi) L-Tryptophan	50mg
vii) L-Cystine	100mg
viii) DL-Methionine	100mg
ix) Cysteine	100mg
x) Ammonium citrate	2gm
xi) Sodium acetate (anhydrous)	6gm
xii) Adenine, guanine, xanthine, and uracil	10mg each
xiii) Riboflavin, thiamine, pantothenate, and niacin, each	500µg
xiv) Pyridoxamine	200µg
xv) Pyridoxal	100µg
xvi) Pyridoxine	200 µg
xvii) Inositol and choline, each	10µg
xviii) <i>p</i> -Aminobenzoic acid	200µg
xix) Biotin	5µg
xx) Folic acid (synthetic)	3µg
xxi) Make up to 1lt with distilled water.	
Solution A: K_2HPO_4 and KH_2PO_4 ; each 25 gm; dissolved in distilled water to a volume of 250ml Solution B: $FeSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$, 0.5 gm; $MnSO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$, 2.0 gm; NaCl, 0.5 gm; and $MgSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$, 10gm; Dissolved in distilled water to a volume of 250ml	
2) Medium for Cultivation of <i>E. coli</i>	
i) $NH_4H_2PO_4$	1gm
ii) Glucose	5gm
iii) NaCl	5gm
iv) $MgSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$	0.2gm
v) K_2HPO_4	1gm
vi) H_2O	1,000ml

9.1.4.3. Culture Media for Viruses

For the growth of viruses, the following three basic types of cell culture are in use:

- 1) Primary Culture:** This culture is prepared by dispersing cells, obtained from freshly removed host tissues, with trypsin. Generally, they cannot grow for more than a few passages in culture.
- 2) Secondary Culture:** This culture includes diploid cell lines that have undergone a change allowing their limited culture (up to 50 passages) but retaining their normal chromosome pattern.

- 3) **Continuous Cell Culture:** This culture is capable of more prolonged indefinite growth that has been derived from diploid cell lines or from malignant tissues. They invariably have altered an irregular number of chromosomes. The type of cell culture used for viral cultivation depends on the sensitivity of cells to a particular virus.

9.1.5. Study of Equipments

The apparatus that maintains optimal conditions for the growth of microorganisms is a **fermenter**. It is used in large-scale fermentation and in the commercial production of antibiotics and hormones. It is a bio-reactive equipment utilised for microbe cultivation. In fermenters, various microbes will grow, undergo metabolism, and generate fermentative products under optimum environmental conditions.

Fermenters are being widely used in industries where enzymes, antibiotics, monosodium glutamate, citric acid, solvent, pharmaceuticals, food, etc. are prepared.

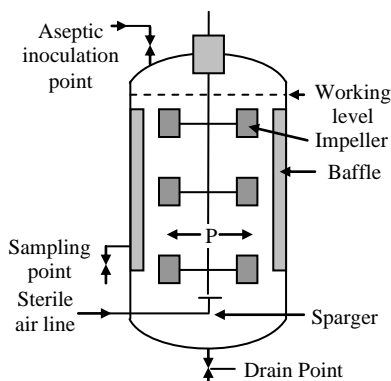


Figure 9.3: Diagram of a Typical Fermenter

A fermenter is made up of the following parts:

- 1) **Agitator (Impeller):** Its size and position in the vessel depends on the fermenter size. An ideal impeller should be $\frac{1}{3}^{\text{rd}}$ or $\frac{1}{2}^{\text{nd}}$ of the vessel diameter (D) above the base of the vessel. More than one impeller is required in tall vessels in order to obtain sufficient aeration agitation. However, the number of impeller may vary with the vessel size.
- 2) **Stirrer Gland and Bearing:** Four basic types of seals assembly are used:
 - i) The packed gland seal,
 - ii) The simple bush seal,
 - iii) The mechanical seal, and
 - iv) The magnetic drive.
- 3) **Baffles:** These are metal strips, $\frac{1}{10}^{\text{th}}$ of the vessel diameter, and attached radially to the walls in agitated vessel (of all sizes) to prevent a vortex and improve aeration efficiency.
- 4) **Sparger:** It is a device equipped to introduce air into the liquid in a fermenter. It should be determined before the operation that whether sparger is to be used manually or with mechanical agitation as it is capable of influencing the equipment design to determine initial bubble size. The three basic types of sparger that have been used are:
 - i) The porous sparger,
 - ii) The orifice sparger, and
 - iii) The nozzle sparger.

- 5) **Sampling Point:** It is a valve equipped for withdrawing samples for in process laboratory tests.
- 6) **Drain Point:** It is a drain present at the bottom to remove the completed fermentation broth for further processing.

9.1.6. Sterilisation Methods

Sterilisation is an important operation which differentiates biochemical and chemical processes. The process aims to provide a contamination free environment. Fermentation is a biochemical process of producing metabolic products by the action of a microorganism or a group of microorganisms on a substrate, in the presence of nutrients in the medium. Fermentation proceeds only with the involvement of:

- 1) A microorganism,
- 2) A medium,
- 3) A fermenter,
- 4) Nutrients/other additives, and
- 5) Air in the case of aerobic processes.

Thus, a sterile environment is required; or else, the contaminants would dominate forming a contaminated product (having toxicants) or no product at all. A contaminant may affect the fermentation process in the following ways:

- 1) It may contaminate the final product.
- 2) The medium would be consumed to support the growth of contaminating organisms.
- 3) The contaminated product may be greater than the desired product.
- 4) The contaminated product may interfere with the recovery of the desired product.
- 5) Unsterile air in aerobic fermentations may spoil the fermentation product.

The above mentioned problems can be overcome only if a contamination free environment is maintained by sterilisation.

9.1.6.1. Sterilisation of Fermenter

A fermenter is sterilised separately if the medium is sterilised outside and introduced into the fermenter. Joints, crevices, pits or flange joints in a fermenter are the potential hazardous sites where the nutrients and microorganisms accumulate, thus causing contamination. A fermenter is sterilised by heating as steam at 15 psig (0.1MN/m² gauge) is introduced in it for 20 minutes. All entry and exit points of air, medium, substrate, etc., are sterilised. All the condensate exit points should have slopes towards the discharging end so that formation and accumulation of steam condensate in the pipelines is avoided. The condensers, thermowells, pressure transducers, analytical probe points, etc., have pits and crevices where contaminant microorganisms accumulate, thus should be sterilised.

After sterilisation, the fermenter should be flushed with sterile air under positive pressure, provided that on cooling it does not develop vacuum and suck in the non sterile atmospheric air. The medium sterilised in a different vessel should be introduced into the sterilised fermenter aseptically. The transport lines, etc., should be maintained under aseptic conditions, and in case of failure contamination results.

9.1.6.2. Sterilisation of Media

The medium used in industrial fermentation processes should be sterilised prior to use, so as to avoid contamination by microorganisms which may otherwise:

- 1) Consume the nutrients in the medium,
- 2) Alter the chemical structure of the nutrients,
- 3) Alter the pH,
- 4) Create more foam in the fermentation which ultimately affects aeration,
- 5) Produce metabolic products which affect the growth of fermentation microorganisms,
- 6) Alter the oxidation-reduction potential of the medium, and
- 7) Convert, degrade or destroy the desired fermentation product.

Sterilisation of medium can be done by:

- 1) Boiling in water,
- 2) Passing steam, or
- 3) Autoclaving.

The media used in fermentation are sterilised thermally for which various techniques have been developed. Thermal sterilisation should be a batch or continuous process or a HTST (High Temperature Short Time) process. In cases when the sterilisation cost is high and it destabilises the process economics, industrial fermentations are carried out at low pH, and by using contamination inhibitors (e.g., lactic acid).

Synthetic media in comparison to crude media require less sterilisation efforts. The former requires a small amount of heating for sterilisation, while the latter contains some heat-resistant bacterial spores, thus requiring prolonged heating.

9.1.6.3. Sterilisation of Air

For industrial aerobic fermentation processes, clean and sterile air is required in large quantity. Table 9.3 lists the representative species of air-borne bacteria:

Table 9.3: Representative Species of Air-Borne Bacteria

Species	Width (Microns)	Length (Microns)
<i>Enterobacter aerogenes</i>	1.0-1.5	1.0-2.5
<i>Bacillus cereus</i>	1.3-2.0	8.1-25.8
<i>Bacillus licheniformis</i>	0.5-0.7	1.8-3.3
<i>Bacillus megaterium</i>	0.9-2.1	2.0-10.0
<i>Bacillus mycoides</i>	0.6-1.6	1.6-13.6
<i>Bacillus subtilis</i>	0.5-1.1	1.6-4.8
<i>Micrococcus aureus</i>	0.5-1.0	0.5-1.0
<i>Proteus vulgaris</i> (spores)	0.5-1.0	1.0- 3.0

A cubic metre of air contains around 4×10^3 to 20×10^3 particles with a maximum possibility of 12×10^3 . However, air contains 10^3 to 10^4 particles/m³ on an average, and the average size of the dust particle is approximately 0.6 μ.

Sterilisation of air can be done by:

- 1) Heating,
- 2) Using UV rays and other electromagnetic waves,
- 3) Using germicidal sprays, or
- 4) Filtration.

9.1.7. Large-Scale Production Fermenter Design

Industrial fermenters are either of anaerobic or aerobic classes. Anaerobic fermenters do not require much special equipment, except for the removal of heat generated during the fermentation process; on the contrary, aerobic fermenters require much elaborate equipment for adequate mixing and aeration.

The industrial fermentation processes are mostly aerobic, thus a typical aerobic fermenter is shown in **figure 9.4** and its parts have been discussed below.

9.1.7.1. Cooling Jacket

Large-scale industrial fermenters are made up of stainless steel. A fermenter is a large cylinder closed at the top and fitted with various pipes and valves at the bottom. The fermenter is fitted with a cooling jacket on the external surface, and through this jacket steam (for sterilisation) or cooling water (for cooling) is passed.

Cooling jacket is an essential part because sterilisation of the nutrient medium and removal of the heat generated are mandatory for completing the fermentation process successfully. In large fermenters, heat transfer occurs insufficiently through the jacket, and thus, internal coils are provided to pass through either steam or cooling water.

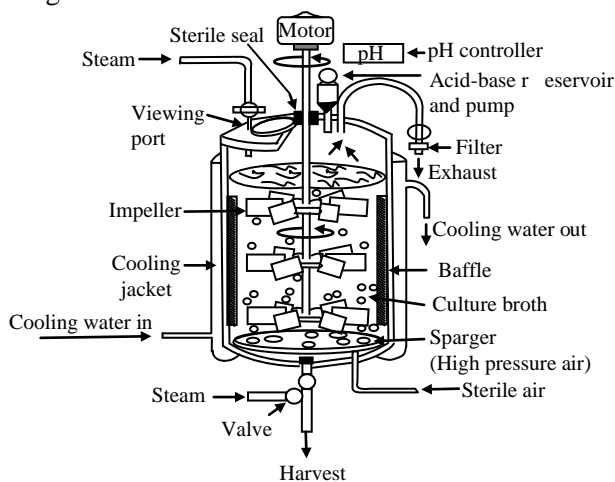


Figure 9.4: Internal View of an Industrial Aerobic Fermenter

9.1.7.2. Aeration System and Stirring

Aeration system forms an essential part of a fermenter. The oxygen demand by the culture, in a fermenter with a high microbial population density, is tremendous; but since oxygen is poorly water-soluble, it barely transfers rapidly through the growth medium. Therefore, precautions should be taken and two separate aeration devices (i.e., **sparger** and **impeller**) should be used to ensure proper aeration and oxygen availability in the fermenter throughout the culture.

Sparger is a series of holes in a metal ring or a nozzle through which filter-sterilised or oxygen-enriched air enters the fermenter under high pressure as a series of tiny bubbles from which the oxygen passes by diffusion into the liquid culture medium.

Impeller (or **agitator**) is an agitating device required for stirring of the fermenter. Stirring achieves mixing of the gas bubbles and of the microbial cells through the liquid culture medium. Thus, stirring ensures uniform access of microbial cells to the nutrients.

The impeller’s size and position in the fermenter depends on the fermenter’s size. Idyllically, the impeller should be 1/3rd of the fermenter’s diameter and should be positioned above the fermenter’s base. The number of impeller to be fitted also depends on the size of fermenter. More than one impeller is equipped in tall fermenters in order to obtain satisfactory aeration and agitation.

9.1.7.3. Baffles

Baffles are equipped in the fermenters of all sizes. They prevent vortex and improve the efficiency of aeration. They are metal strips of 1/10th of fermenter’s diameter and are attached radially to the walls.

9.1.7.4. Controlling Devices for Environmental Factors

In microbial fermentation, growth and product formation should be measured and also the environmental parameters (such as temperature, oxygen concentration, pH, cells mass, levels of key nutrients, and product concentration) should be controlled throughout the process using various devices in a fermenter.

9.1.7.5. Use of Computer in Fermenter

Computer technology has put a remarkable influence in fermentation process and computers are used to model fermentation processes in industrial fermenters. Integration of computers into fermentation systems is based on their capacity for process monitoring, data acquisition, data storage, and error -detection. Some on-line data analysis functions include the acquisition measurements, data verification, filtering, unit conversions, calculation of indirect measurements, differential integration calculations of estimated variables, data reduction, tabulation of results, graphical presentation of results, process stimulation, and data storage.

9.1.8. Various Controls of a Fermenter

Process monitoring and control are the issues to be faced during fermenter development. With the recent advents in bio analytical techniques, a vast array of probes has been developed and being utilised. The controls applicable in the fermentation process are enlisted in **table 9.4**, and the process monitoring parameters are given in **table 9.5**:

Table 9.4 : Typical Fermenter Control Ranges

Control Parameters	Range
Temperature	8°C above coolant to 60°C ± 1°C
Agitator Speed	0-1000 rpm
Stability	>98%
pH range	2-12 ± 0.1
Pressure	2000mbar
DO ₂ range	0-100%
Air flow	0-6 litres/minute

Table 9.5: Fermentation Process Control Monitoring Parameters and Methodology

Process Controls	Monitoring Devices
Air Flow	Flow meter
Coolant Water Flow	Flow meter
Power Input	V.O.H.; torque
Temperature	Resistance thermocouples thermistors diodes.
Rheology	Tube viscometer, cone and plate viscometer, concentric cylinder viscometer, infinite sea viscometer foam control.
Redox Potential	pH dissolved oxygen (DO ₂), polarographic probes, galvanic probes, permeable tube/oxygen analyser, dissolved carbon dioxide (DCO ₂).
State of Culture	Enzyme probes metabolic heat substrate analysis.
Cell Concentration	Gravimetric dry weight turbidity.
Immunocytometry	Cell number, impedance, carbon dioxide production, oxygen production, DNA content, cell particle size distribution.
Gas Analysis	Oxygen analysers, carbon dioxide analysers, mass spectrometry, gas chromatography.

9.1.9. Factors Affecting Fermenter Design

In designing fermentation processes, the major component is media (i.e., water) in which the microorganisms grow. A wide variety of fermenters are commercially available, and thus while selecting a definite type of a fermenter, the following factors should be considered:

- 1) The type of reaction to be carried out, and
- 2) The suitable operating conditions for that reaction.

Some other factors involved in the designing of a fermenter are:

- 1) **Selection of the Microorganism:** This is the most important step in which an appropriate strain of a particular microorganism is to be selected. This determines the growth phase in which the product is formed, the temperature and pH ranges, the aeration degree required, and the contamination effects.
- 2) **Selection of Fermenter Configuration:** After the micro organism, an appropriate fermenter configuration is to be selected. Thus, the merits and demerits of different fermenter configuration such as batch stirred -tank fermenter, continuous stirred -tank fermenter, tubular fermenter, etc. should be understood well.
- 3) **Determination of the Fermenter Dimensions:** Size of t he fermentation batch manages the volume and diameter of the fermenter. Similarly, the type of fermentation determines the values of the operating variables such as concentration, temperature and pH, process time (for batch fermentation), and flow rate (for continuous fermentation).
- 4) **Heat Transfer and Safety Factors:** The extent of heat transfer surface and the requirements of mixing devices, power and aeration, facilities for monitoring and control, and the safety factors should be determined.

- 5) **Materials of Construction:** The materials of construction and mechanical design, and the devices required for maintaining aseptic conditions should be selected.
- 6) **Media Design of Various Fermentation Processes:** There are several essential factors that govern and also play an important role in the media design of various fermentation processes, such as:
 - i) **Quality of Water:** The predominant water quality is of great importance as it affects the resultant microbial growth and also the production of specific bioproducts.
 - ii) **Quality Control of Raw Materials:** Apart from water, other chemical constituents, e.g., pasteurised wort (malt extract solution), salts, acids, etc., should also be of better grade and quality to obtain faultless optimised fermentation and yield desired bioproducts.
 - iii) **Nutritional Requirements:** The vital nutritional requirements of microorganisms are an energy or carbon source, an available nitrogen source, inorganic elements, and specific growth factors (only for some particular cell-types).
 - iv) **Sterilisation Practices:** The various conventional, time-tested and widely adopted sterilisation practices meant for the biotechnological media should kill maximum contaminating microorganisms to cause minimum damage to the medium components. Among the two frequently employed sterilisation practices, the batch wise sterilisation in the bioreactor is considered to be most widely used, while the continuous sterilisation methods are also gaining acceptability and adaptability.

9.1.10. Production of Penicillins

Penicillin is the **first antibiotic** which was clinically used in **1941**. Firstly it was obtained from the fungus *Penicillium notatum*; but presently it is obtained from a high yielding mutant of *P. chrysogenum*. The nucleus of penicillin consists of fused rings of **thiazolidine** and **β -lactam**, and these rings have side chains attached through an amide linkage (**figure 9.5**).

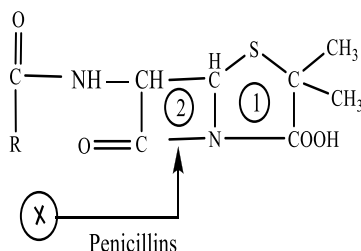


Figure 9.5: Chemical Structure of Penicillin. 1) Thiazolidine Ring; 2) β -Lactam Ring; (X) Bond which is Broken by Penicillinase.

Penicillin fermentation is an aerobic process with a volumetric oxygen absorption rate of 0.4-0.8mm/min. The aeration rate required varies with the strain, the type of fermenter used, and the impeller system. However, it ranges between 0.5 to 1.0 vvm. It is produced by fed batch submerged fermentation in a stirred tank fermenter.

This process of penicillin production by fermentation has been described under the following headings:

- 1) Strain development,
- 2) Inoculum production,
- 3) Inoculation,
- 4) Medium, and
- 5) Extraction and purification.

9.1.10.1. Strain Development

The variety of moulds yielding a greater amount of penicillin is called the **high yielding strain**, developed from the wild *P. chrysogenum* by **sequential genetic selection process**. In this process, an improved mutant is developed step by step by treating the wild strain of *P. chrysogenum* with a series of mutagenic agents or exposing to UV radiation either individually or in combination with X -rays and chemical mutagens. This process can also be named as **strain improvement**.

Strain development is a strenuous and lengthy process. The selected mutant in comparison to the wild type has a greater capacity for antibiotic production.

Table 9.6: Significant Stages in Strain Improvement Programme in *P. Chrysogenum*

Strains	Methods	Penicillin (mgml ⁻¹)	Characteristics
<i>P. notatum</i> (Fleming)	<i>P. chrysogenum</i>	3	
NRRL 1951	Original isolate	60	Yellow pigment
NRRL 1951.B25	Selection	125	Yellow pigment
X-1612	X rays	300	Yellow pigment
WIS Q 176	UV-light	800-1000	Yellow pigment
B 13-D 10	UV-light	–	Pigment-free
WIS 47-638	Selection	–	Pigment-free
WIS 47-1564	Selection	800-1000	Pigment-free, 95-100% G*
WIS 48-701	Selection	–	Pigment-free, 95-100% G*
WIS 49-133	Nitrogen mustard gas	1500-3000	Pigment-free, 95-100% G*
WIS 49-2166	Nitrogen mustard gas	1500-3000	Pigment-free, 95-100% G*
WIS 50-535	Nitrogen mustard gas	1500-00	Pigment-free, 95-100% G*
WIS 51-20	Selection	2000-3000	Pigment-free, 95-100% G*
EIS.1	NM and Selection	7000	Pigment-free, Penicillin G

Different biosynthetic penicillins with enhanced features can be formed by adding side chain precursors to the fermentation medium or by chemically modifying the natural penicillins. Penicillins now are mainly produced semi-synthetically by chemical modification of the natural penicillin yielded from the fermentation of *P. chrysogenum* strains.

Natural penicillins are modified by removing their natural acyl group and leaving behind the 6 -APA (6-Aminopenicillanic Acid) to which other acyl groups are added to confer new properties. This is done by passing the natural penicillin (with removed natural acyl group) through a column of immobilised penicillin acylase (obtained from *E. coli*) at neutral pH.

For example, penicillin G is converted to 6 -APA and phenylacetic acid; the 6 -APA is then acylated by adding an appropriate side chain to obtain a semi synthetic penicillin.

9.1.10.2. Inoculum Production

Inoculum is the **microorganism used in fermentation**. Generally, a high yielding strain of *P. chrysogenum* is used.

A strain of the fungus is sub -cultured from stock culture for inoculum development. Spores from primary source are suspended in either water or a dilute solution of a non -toxic wetting agent (**e.g.**, 1:10000 sodium lauryl sulphate). Then the spores are added to flasks or bottles containing wheat bran and nutrient solution. These flasks or bottles are incubated at 24°C for 5 -7 days to support heavy sporulation. This complete process is repeated a number of times to have more sporulation.

The spores obtained are used directly to inoculate the inoculum tanks or stirred fermenters. The incubation temperature is maintained at 24 -27°C for 2 days with continuous agitation and aeration to support heavy mycelial growth, which may be added to a 2nd or 3rd stage of fermentation. The resulting inoculum employed in a production tank is tested by microscopic examination as well as by sub -culturing method.

Many sporulation media have been designed to obtain a large number of spores. **Moyer** and **Coghill** developed a sporulation media in **1946**, which is most widely used (**table 9.7**).

Table 9.7: Composition of Moyer and Coghill Sporulation Medium

Components	Concentration (gm/lt)
Glycerol	7.5
Cane molasses	7.5
Corn steep liquor	2.5
MgSO ₄ .7H ₂ O	2.5
KH ₂ PO ₄	0.050
Peptone	0.060
NaCl	5.00
Fe-tartrate	0.005
CuSO ₄ .5H ₂ O	0.004
Agar	2.50
Distilled water	1.0

9.1.10.3. Inoculation

Inoculation is the process of **introducing pure inoculum into the fermenters** or production tanks by any of the following **three methods**:

- 1) **Dry Spores may be used as Inoculum:** The spores of *P. chrysogenum* are hydrophobic, thus either the spores are blown deep into the medium or a wetting agent (e.g., sodium lauryl sulphate) is used.
- 2) **Suspension of Non-Germinated Spores:** This suspension (prepared with 1:10000 sodium lauryl sulphate solution) is fed into the fermenter by using spray guns or pipettes. Then the fermentation medium is agitated and aerated so that the spores get uniformly distributed in the entire medium.
- 3) The medium in the fermentation tanks are fed with pre -germinated spores or mycelial pellets (prepared by the germination of spores) after 2 -3 days of spore inoculation.

Fermenters with a capacity of 40,000 to 2 lac litres are used for penicillin production. Tanks with larger capacities are not used due to difficulties with the oxygen supply. Some manufacturers use Waldh of fermenters or air lift fermenters, but this is only possible in mutants generating low viscosity. Depending on the producti on strain, the operational temperature is maintained between 25-27°C. A flow chart for penicillin production is shown in **figure 9.6**:

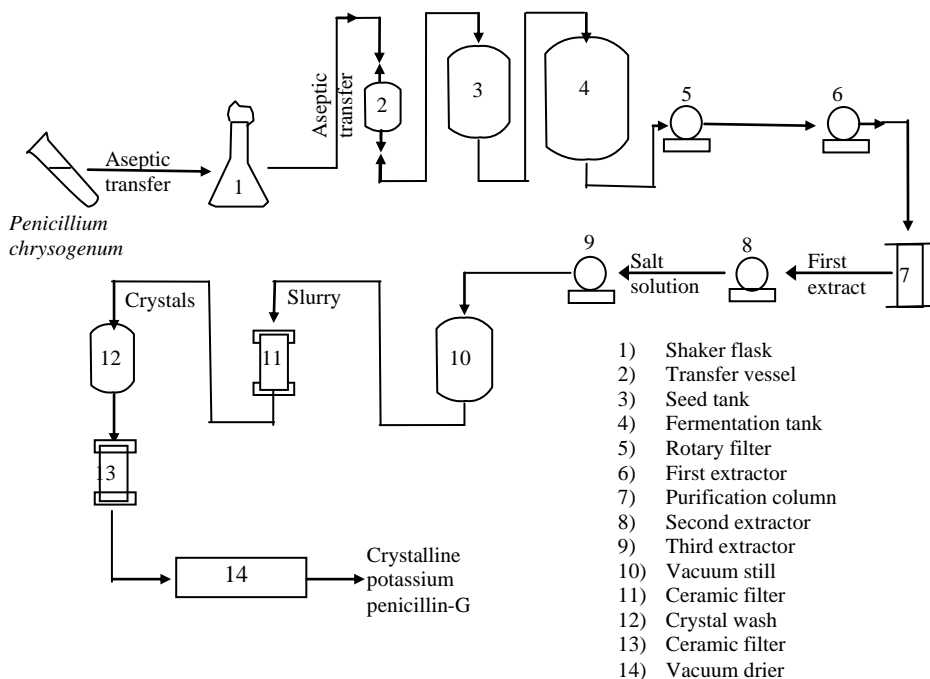


Figure 9.6: Flow Sheet for Large-Scale Production of Penicillin

9.1.10.4. Medium

The medium used in penicillin production should achieve:

- 1) An abundant growth of the mycelium,
- 2) Maximum accumulation of the antibiotic, and
- 3) Easy and economical extraction and purification of the antibiotic.

Mainly lactose is used as a source of carbon; however, glucose, sucrose, glycerol, and sorbitol can also be used. Sulphate, acetate or nitrate salts of ammonium are used as sources of nitrogen. Corn-steep liquor is enriched with important amino acids desirable for mycelial growth, thus a medium containing corn steep liquor supports heavy formation of mycelium and spores.

Salts of potassium, phosphorus, magnesium, sulphur, zinc, and copper are used. Potassium and phosphorus are used in the form of potassium dihydrogen phosphate; magnesium, iron and copper are used in the form of sulphates. All these elements are present in corn steep liquor.

Penicillin-F and penicillin -K are the naturally produced penicillins synthesised by *P. notatum* and *P. chrysogenum*, respectively, without using a precursor. In case phenylacetic acid is added in the medium, *P. chrysogenum* produces penicillin-G and not penicillin -K. In the same way, desired synthetic penicillins can be obtained by adding a suitable precursor in the medium.

Jackson designed a medium in **1958** in the following composition, and used it in fermentative production of penicillin (**table 9.8**).

Table 9.8: Composition of Jackson’s Medium

Components	Concentration (%)
Corn steep liquor	3.5
Lactose	3.5
Glucose	1.0
Calcium carbonate	1.0
Potassium dihydrogen phosphate	0.4
Edible oil	0.25

Penicillin yields with time are linear from approximately 48 to 96 hours. The final penicillin yield ranging between 3 -5% depends on the amount of carbohydrate consumed during the fermentation process (1500 International Units per millilitre). **Sylvester** and **Coghill** in **1954** estimated that for producing 1000 gallons of fermented culture which can yield 2.2 -2.7kg of penicillin via submerged culture method, around 227kg of nutrients, 3400kg of steam, 45460lt of water, 1000 kWh of electricity, and 7075m³ of air is required.

Penicillin undergoes carboxylation under the influence of penicillinase enzyme to form the biologically inactive penicillanic acid. The penicillinase enzyme is widely distributed in different microorganisms, which may enter the fermenter at any stage and convert penicillin into penicillanic acid (**figure 9.7**).

In penicillin fermentation, contamination forms the major limitation, and thus should be prevented. The contamination risk was one of the main problems in the ancient times during penicillin production. This was because fermentation was carried out in bottles and contamination in one bottle may destroy penicillin in all the batches of bottles.

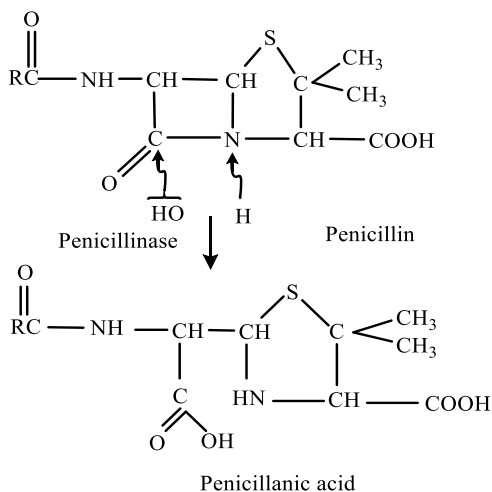


Figure 9.7: Carboxylation of Penicillin by the Action of Penicillinase

In a typical penicillin fermentation process, there is a growth of 10 hours duration with a doubling time of 6 hours and during this time the greater part of the cell mass is formed. Oxygen supply in the growing culture is critical, as oxygen transfer is hindered by the increasing viscosity. After the growth phase, the culture proceeds to actual penicillin production. The growth is sharply reduced by feeding with various culture medium components.

The production phase can be extended to 120-180 hours. Penicillin production by continuous fermentation is difficult due to instability of the production strains. A batch fill and draw system is an alternative, in which 20-40% of the fermentation contents is replaced with fresh nutrient solution. This process is repeated around ten times without affecting the yield.

9.1.10.5. Extraction and Purification

When sufficient amount of penicillin has been produced during the fermentation, it is extracted and purified. This process is carried out in **three steps**:

- 1) **Separation of Mycelium:** The mycelium is separated from the medium using a rotatory vacuum filter. This process should be performed carefully to avoid contamination by the microorganisms which produce the penicillin-degrading enzyme, i.e., penicillinase.
- 2) **Extraction of Penicillin:** The penicillin is extracted into the medium with counter current extraction method and less than 1% remains as mycelium bound. After separating the mycelium, the liquid pH is adjusted to 2.0 to 2.5 by adding phosphoric or sulphuric acid. With this treatment penicillin converts into its anionic form.

The liquid is extracted using Podbielniak counter current extractor with an organic solvent (e.g., amyl acetate or butyl acetate or methyl isobutyl ketone) quickly because at low pH values penicillin is unstable. Then the penicillin is extracted back into water from the organic solvent by adding potassium or sodium hydroxide. This also elevates the pH to 7.0 to 7.5.

The resulting aqueous solution is re -acidified and re -extracted with organic solvent. These shifts between the water and the solvent purify the penicillin, and it is obtained as sodium penicillin. The solvent consumed is recovered by distillation and used again.

- 3) **Treatment of Crude Extract:** The sodium penicillin obtained is treated with charcoal for removing the substances causing fever, i.e., pyrogens. It may also be sterilised using Seitz filter for removing bacteria. This treated sodium penicillin is converted into its crystalline form by crystallisation. It is either packed in sterile vials in the form of powders or is prepared as tablets or syrups for oral administration.

9.1.11. Production of Citric Acid

Citric acid was first discovered as a constituent of lemon. Citric acid at the current time is known as an intermediate of Krebs cycle, and therefore is present in every living organism. Previously, it was isolated from lemons (which contain 7-9% citric acid), and nowadays 99% of it is obtained by microbial fermentation.

9.1.11.1. Microbial Strains for Citric Acid Production

Citric acid can be obtained from various microorganisms. *Aspergillus niger* (fungus) is most commonly used for industrial production of citric acid. *Aspergillus clavatus*, *Aspergillus wentii*, *Penicillium luteum*, *Candida catenulata*, *Candida guilliermondii*, and *Corynebacterium* sp. are some other organisms that may be used for the same purpose; however, these organisms are less important.

To improve the industrial production of citric acid, mutant strains of *A. niger* have been developed. These strains can tolerate high sugar concentration and low pH, and produce minimum undesirable by -products (oxalic acid, isocitric acid, and gluconic acid).

9.1.11.2. Medium

The yield of citric acid produced by *A. niger* is determined by the initial sugar concentration (15 -18%) and other organic acids produced in the medium. A concentration above or lower than 15 -18% is uneconomic and also amounts to lower yields. The concentration of other ingredients (i.e., nitrogen, phosphorous, and sulphur) and trace composition of basal medium for citric acid production are listed in the **table 9.9**:

Table 9.9: Production Media for Fermentation of Citric Acid by *A. niger*

Ingredients	Quantity (%)
Total reducing sugars (molasses, sucrose)	14-15
Nitrogen source	0.25
KH ₂ PO ₄	0.10-0.15
MgSO ₄ .7H ₂ O	0.02-0.025
pH for <div>Molasses Sucrose</div>	5.0-6.0 2.0-3.0
CuSO ₄ (if molasses is used)	4.7mg/l
Octadecanol (anti-foaming agent)	0.75

9.1.11.3. Production Processes for Citric Acid

Industrial production of citric acid involves the following two processes:

- 1) **Surface Process:** In this process, the microorganisms are grown as a layer or a film on a surface in contact with the solid or liquid nutrient medium. Thus, the surface process has supported-growth systems.
- 2) **Submerged Process:** In this process, the microorganisms are either immersed in or dispersed throughout the nutrient medium. There are two types of submerged fermenters (bioreactors), i.e., stirred bioreactors and airlift bioreactors.

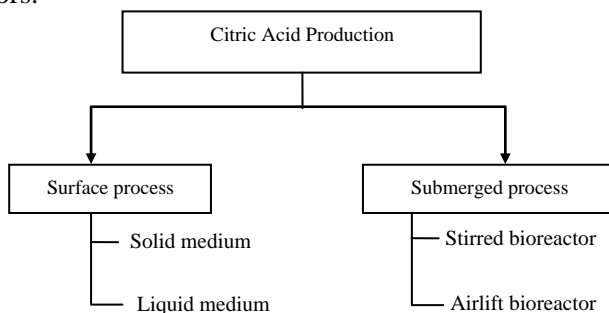


Figure 9.8: Industrial Processes for the Production of Citric Acid

9.1.11.4. Surface Processes

The surface process of fermentation of citric acid involves:

- 1) **Solid Surface Fermentation:** In this type of surface fermentation, the culture medium comprises of solid substrates, such as wheat bran or pulp from sweet potato starch. The medium pH is adjusted to 4–5, followed by sterilisation. Thereafter, the inoculum (spores of *A. niger*) is spread as layers of 3-6cm thickness and incubated at 28°C temperature.

The growth of organisms can be accelerated by adding α -amylase. Solid-state fermentation takes 80-100 hours for producing citric acid maximally. At the end, citric acid is extracted into hot water and isolated.

- 2) **Liquid Surface Fermentation:** In this type of surface fermentation, liquid is used as nutrient medium for citric acid production. This method is in use since the ancient times due to a simple technology, low energy costs, higher reproducibility, and minimal interference of trace metals and dissolved O_2 tension. However, the labour costs are higher since the manpower requirements for cleaning the systems are more.

In liquid surface fermentation, beet molasses are used as sources of nutrients. Fermentation is carried out in aluminium trays filled with sterile nutrient medium. The inoculum (spores) is sprayed over the medium, and sterile air is passed for supplying O_2 and also for cooling. Temperature throughout the process is maintained at 30°C. The spores start germinating within 24 hours of inoculation, and form a layer of mycelium over the medium. As the mycelium grows in size and forms a thick layer on the nutrient solution surface, the nutrient medium pH falls to less than 2. Fermentation is stopped after 7-15 days.

The mycelium and nutrient solution are separated. The mycelium is mechanically pressed and washed thoroughly to obtain maximum amount of citric acid. The nutrient solution is further processed for recovery of citric acid. The final yield of citric acid is in the range of 0.7 – 0.9 per gram of sugar.

9.1.11.5. Submerged Processes

Submerged fermentation is the most preferred method due to its high efficiency and easy automation. It has disadvantages of adverse influence of trace metals and other impurities, variations in O_2 tension, and advanced control technology that requires highly trained personnel.

Stirred tanks and aerated towers are the two types of bioreactors used in submerged fermentation. Vessels of these bioreactors are made up of high quality stainless steel. The sparging of air occurs from the base of the fermenter.

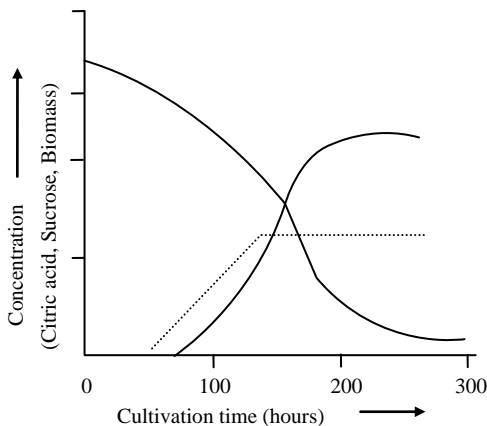


Figure 9.9: Diagrammatic Representation of Citric Acid (—) Production along with Sucrose (—) and biomass (---) Concentration in Relation to Time

The yield of citric acid production depends on the mycelium structure. Mycelium having forked and bulbous hyphae and branches aggregating into pellets are regarded as the most appropriate for citric acid formation; while, the loose and filamentous mycelium having limited branches results in no citric acid production. An adequate supply of O_2 (20-25% of saturation value) is required for good production of citric acid. The ideal aeration rate is in the range of 0.2 – 1 vvm (volume/volume/minute).

In submerged fermenters, foam may be formed which may occupy about 1/3rd of the bioreactor. Formation of foam can be prevented by using antifoam agents (e.g., lard oil) and mechanical antifoam devices. Nutrient concentration is very important in the industrial production of citric acid.

Figure 9.9 gives a diagrammatic representation of sucrose, citric acid and biomass concentration with respect to cultivation time. It is estimated that under optimal conditions, in 250-280 hours, 100-110gm/l of citric acid is obtained from 140gm/l of sucrose with a biomass (dry weight) of 8-12gm/l.

9.1.11.6. Recovery of Citric Acid

The recovery steps of citric acid either from surface process or submerged process are comparable (**figure 9.10**). In the process of recovery, the culture broth is filtered and mycelium (which may contain about 10% of citric acid produced) is washed. Oxalic acid (an unwanted by-product) is removed by precipitation by adding lime at pH less than 3.

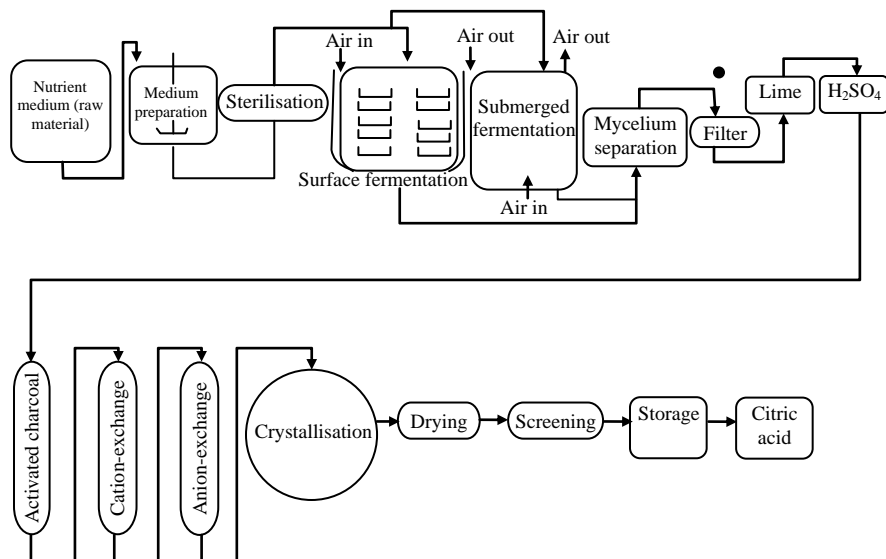


Figure 9.10: Flow Chart for Industrial Production of Citric Acid by Surface or Submerged Processes

The culture broth pH is adjusted to 7.2 and its temperature at 70–90°C for precipitating citric acid. For further purification, citric acid is dissolved in sulphuric acid (calcium sulphate precipitate separates). In the final steps of citric acid recovery, treatment with activated charcoal, cation and anion-exchangers, and crystallisation are carried out.

Citric acid monohydrate formed below 36°C temperature is the major commercial product. Above 40°C temperature, citric acid crystallises out in an anhydrous form. The purity degree of citric acid produced depends on the purpose of its requirement. For instance, pure forms of citric acid are needed for use in food preparations, while for industrial use it can be in crude form.

9.1.12. Production of Vitamin B₁₂

Vitamin B₁₂ comes under a group of compounds known as cobalamins. Chemically, it has a central cobalt atom coordinated by corrin (a porphyrin-like group). Dimethylbenzimidazole (a base) and a cyano group occupy the axial coordination sites. B₁₂ analogues are the compounds in which bases other than dimethylbenzimidazole are present.

Vitamin B₁₂ was produced using many different microbes. In its commercial scale production, one organism from *Pseudomonas* (i.e., *Pseudomonas denitrificans*) and two from *Propionibacteria* (i.e., *Propionibacterium shermanii*

and *Propionibacterium freudenreichii*) species are used. These have rapid growth and high productivity of selected mutants, thus were preferred over *Streptomyces* and other species.

Production of vitamin B₁₂ on a laboratory -scale fermentation process using *Pseudomonas denitrificans* and pilot plant -scale fermentation process using *Propionibacterium shermanii* have been discussed below. Mutant strains of these organisms were utilised.

9.1.12.1. Fermentation of *Pseudomonas denitrificans*

Commercially producing mutants were developed from the original wild -type of *P. denitrificans* isolated by **Miller** and **Rosenblum** in **1960**, and the process was described by **Florent** and **Ninent** in **1979**. This process yielded about 60mg/l in the laboratory.

Sugar beet molasses containing 5 -10% betaine (trimethyl glycine) serves as the carbohydrate source. Betaine stimulates vitamin B₁₂ production by promoting the synthesis of Ala -synthetase, responsible for the production of δ-aminolevulinic acid, which is the first intermediate of the pathway of cobalamin biosynthesis.

The growth of *Pseudomonas* and vitamin B₁₂ biosynthesis are carried out under aerated condition with agitation. Cobalamin biosynthesis by *Pseudomonas denitrificans* requires an external supply of 5,6-dimethylbenzimidazole (5,6-DBI) and cobalt salt.

Laboratory-scale fermentation of vitamin B₁₂ using *Pseudomonas denitrificans* occurs via following **steps**:

- 1) **Maintenance Culture:** The inoculated media is incubated for 4 days at 28°C temperature.

Table 9.10: Maintenance Culture

Ingredients	Quantity (gm/l)
Beet molasses	60
Brewer’s yeast	1
Nz amine	1
(NH ₄) ₂ HPO ₄	2
MgSO ₄ .7H ₂ O	1.0
MnSO ₄ .7H ₂ O	0.2
ZnSO ₄ .7H ₂ O	0.02
Na ₂ M ₁₀ O ₄ .2H ₂ O	510-3
Agar	25.0
pH up to	7.4

- 2) **Seed Culture:** It is the same medium as above only without agar and is incubated for 3 days at 28°C temperature on a rotary shaker.
- 3) **Production Culture:** The media inoculated with seed culture is incubated for 90 hours at 29°C temperature with 420 rpm agitation and 1v/v/m aeration.

Table 9.11: Production Media

Ingredients	Quantity (gm/l)
Beet molasses	100
Yeast	2
(NH ₄) ₂ HPO ₄	5
MgSO ₄ ·7H ₂ O	3
MnSO ₄ ·H ₂ O	0.2
CO(NO ₃) ₂ ·6H ₂ O	0.188
ZnSO ₄ ·7H ₂ O	0.02
Na ₂ M ₀ O ₄ ·2H ₂ O	5×10 ⁻³
5,6-DBI	0.025
pH up to	7.4

9.1.12.2. Fermentation of *Propionibacterium shermanii*

There are many propionic organisms grown on carbohydrate-based media under unaerated condition that produce cobaltocorrinoids. Production of cobalamin requires cobalt supplement, and also depends on the internal formation or external supply of 5,6 -dimethylbenzimidazole. The mutant strains of *P. shermanii* synthesises their own 5,6-DBI with an yield of around 65mg/l on pilot-scale.

Aeration promotes 5,6 -DBI formation, however represses one of the stages of vitamin B₁₂ biosynthesis. Hence, the first stage of fermentation (of 80 hours) should be performed under anaerobic condition without aeration and little agitation so that all the sugar in the media is utilised for the growth and the formation of cobinamide has no repressive effect. The following stage of fermentation (of the next 88 hours) is performed by agitation and little aeration to induce the biosynthesis of 5,6-DBI and converts the cobinamide to cobalamin.

Pilot plant -scale fermentation of vitamin B₁₂ using *P. shermanii* occurs via following steps:

1) **Maintenance Culture:** The inoculated media is incubated for 4 days at 30°C temperature.

Table 9.12: Maintenance Culture

Ingredients	Quantity (gm/l)
Tryptone	10
Yeast extract	10
Filtered tomato juice	200
Agar	10
pH up to	7.2

2) **Seed Culture (First Stage):** It is the same medium as above only without agar, and is incubated for 2 days at 30°C temperature without agitation.

3) **Seed Culture (Second Stage):** The inoculated media composed of corn steep liquor (20gm/l) and glucose (90gm/l), is incubated for 24 hours at 30°C temperature without aeration, and is maintained at pH 6.5.

- 4) **Main Culture:** The production media composed of corn steep liquor (40gm/l), glucose (100gm/l), and $\text{COCl}_2/6\text{H}_2\text{O}$ (0.02gm/l) is incubated at 30°C temperature and is maintained at pH 7.0. The first 80 hours is performed without aeration with slight nitrogen pressure, followed by slow agitation. The next 88 hours is carried on with agitation, slight aeration (0.1v/v/m), and at pH 7.0.

9.1.12.3. Isolation and Purification

Extraction begins with the release of an unstable cobalamin from the cells lysed, and treatment of this cobalamin with cyanide so that it converts into a more stable cyanocobalamin.

Cells are separated from the culture broth and lysed by heating at $80-120^\circ\text{C}$ temperature for 10-30 minutes. The pH should be maintained at 6.5-8.5. The lysed cells release various cobalamins, which are solubilised with potassium cyanide in the presence of sodium nitrite. All the cobalamins convert into cyanocobalamin. The ballast is then eliminated with zinc hydroxide.

The product is purified by adsorption on various substrates (e.g., amberlite IRC 50, Dowex 1×2 , alumina, silanised silica gel, and Amberlite XAD 2), followed by elution with water-alcohol or water-phenol mixtures.

9.1.13. Production of Glutamic Acid

The commercial production of glutamic acid (figure 9.11) by microbial fermentation offers 90% of world's total demand, and the remaining 10% is provided by chemical methods. For actual fermentation, microbial strains are grown in fermenters with volume of 500m^3 .

9.1.13.1. Medium

Hydrolysed starch solution, cane molasses, and beet molasses are the carbohydrates used as carbon source. The media containing cane molasses with high biotin content is also added with penicillin during the active growth of cell. Ammonia, ammonia gas, urea, etc. are used as nitrogen sources. Ammonium ions are included during fermentation, and the other ions include K^+ , Mg^{2+} , PO_4^{3-} , SO_4^{2-} , and Cl^- . Biotin should be added in the fermenting media in concentration below $5\mu\text{g/l}$. The media should be maintained at pH between 7-8 and temperature between $30-35^\circ\text{C}$.

The concentration of biotin in the fermentation medium significantly affects the glutamic acid yield. Fermentation takes 2-4 days to complete, and at the end of the process, the ammonium salt of glutamic acid is present in the broth.

9.1.13.2. Process

In a downstream process, the bacterial cells are separated and the broth is passed through a basic anion exchange resin. Glutamic acid anions bind to the resin and release ammonia, which can be recovered by distillation and reused in fermentation.

Elution is performed with NaOH to form Monosodium Glutamate (MSG) in the solution and to regenerate the basic anion exchanger. MSG is crystallised directly from the elute followed by the conditioning steps like decolourisation and serving to yield a good-grade quality of MSG.

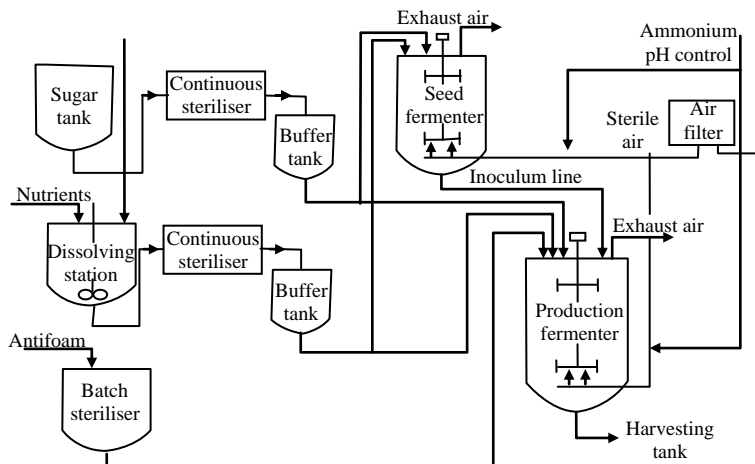
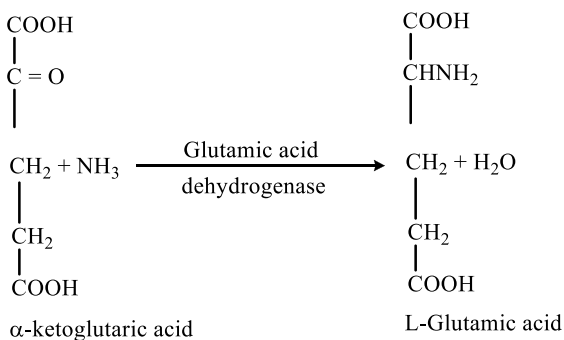


Figure 9.11: Flow Diagram of Commercial Production Method of Glutamic Acid (Glutamate)

The conversion of α -ketoglutaric acid (precursor of glutamic acid) into glutamic acid occurs in the presence of glutamic acid dehydrogenase enzyme. By adding penicillin in the medium, the production of glutamic acid can be increased.



9.1.13.3. Recovery

The product is extracted and purified from the concentrated broth by crystallisation of glutamic acid. Ion exchange resins are commonly used for this purpose.

9.1.14. Production of Griseofulvin

Griseofulvin (a less toxic systemic antifungal antibiotic) is administered orally for treating and controlling fungal diseases of skin, hair, and nails caused by various dermatophytes. This antibiotic can be produced by a large number of fungal organisms mainly including penicillin species. These species mostly belong to two main divisions of the genus *Penicillium*, i.e., *Asymmetrica fasciculata* and *Asymmetrica divaricate*. The strains used for the commercial

production of griseofulvin are mutants of *Penicillium patulum*, *Penicillium raistrickii*, or *Penicillium urticae*. The strains with conidia provides maximum product.

9.1.14.1. Inoculum Development

Spore suspension and vegetative cells are regarded suitable inocula for laboratory-scale fermentations. The sporulation medium (table 9.13) provides inoculum suitable for direct inoculation of shake-flask culture.

Table 9.13: Sporulation Medium for Preparation of Spore Inoculum

Ingredients	Quantity (gm/l)
Whey powder lactose	30.0
Whey powder nitrogen	50.0
KH ₂ PO ₄	4.0
KCl	0.5
CSL solids	3.8

The germination medium (table 9.14) also provides inoculum for shake -flask culture.

Table 9.14: Germination Medium for Vegetative Inoculum

Ingredients	Quantity (gm/l)
Protopeptone	20.0
Malted cereal extract	10.0
Glucose	40.0
Soluble starch	20.0
NaNO ₃	3.0
KH ₂ PO ₄	1.0
MgSO ₄ .7H ₂ O	0.5
FeSO ₄ .7H ₂ O	0.02

Table 9.15: Seed Stage (Vegetative) Medium

Ingredients	Quantity (gm/l)
C.S.L. nitrogen	3.0
Brown sugar	20.0
Chalk	10.0
Maize oil	10.0
Hodag M.F	0.3

Griseofulvin, similar to penicillin and streptomycin fermentation, requires early growth and then with the nutrient limitation strategy maintains a cell population within the aerating potential of the fermenter. The production level depends on good aeration, optimum pH, and availability of nitrogen. A high carbohydrate level (glucose, lactose, sucrose, upto 12%) generally results in a higher yield. Phosphate also has a beneficial effect (0.4 -0.8%). Chlorine should be supplied through the entire fermentation process, or else dechlorogriseofulvin (lacking antifungal activity) will be obtained as the product.

Table 9.16: Typical Production Medium

Ingredients	Quantity (%)
Cornsteep liquor - N source	0.175
CaCO ₃	0.4
KH ₂ PO ₄	0.4
KCl	0.15

The carbohydrate glucose syrup (50%) is added stepwise after the first 16 -20 hours (10 -12%). The pH is maintained within 6.8 -7.2 by adding glucose continuously. Fermentation is carried at 25 °C temperature with an air flow of 1vvm. After 10 days the yield will be 6 -8gm/l. The yield can be improved (12 -15.5gm/l) by adding various methyl donors (choline salts, methyl xanthate, and folic acid) to the medium.

9.1.14.2. Extraction and Purification

Griseofulvin is stored intracellularly. The cells are removed by filtration and then extraction with organic solvent. The wet mycelium is treated with butyl acetate with subsequent evaporation. The crude griseofulvin is washed with chloroform and re-crystallised from aqueous methanol to give a product with a 58% yield. The mycelium is extracted with methylene chloride, evaporated, and then crystallised to obtain a pure product with 95% yield. The product can be improved (with a purity of 99%) by re-crystallisation with acetone.

9.2. SUMMARY

The details given in the chapter can be summarised as follows:

- 1) The process of **fermentation** involves biochemical activity of organisms during their growth, development, reproduction, senescence, and death.
- 2) In **batch fermentation** process, the microorganisms are inoculated in a fixed volume of batch culture medium.
- 3) In **fed-batch fermentation** process, freshly prepared culture media is added periodically without removing the culture fluid, thus increasing the volume of fermentation culture.
- 4) In **continuous fermentation** process, a near -balanced growth is obtained with a little fluctuation in nutrients, metabolites, cell numbers, or biomass.
- 5) **Media** is a mixture of various nutrients prepared artificially to support the growth and multiplication of microorganisms.
- 6) **Primary Culture** is prepared by dispersing cells, obtained from freshly removed host tissues, with trypsin.
- 7) **Secondary Culture** includes diploid cell lines that have undergone a change allowing their limited culture (up to 50 passages) but retaining their normal chromosome pattern.
- 8) In **Multi-Stage Continuous Fermentation**, two or more fermenters are continuously operated in a sequence.

- 9) The apparatus that maintains optimal conditions for the growth of microorganisms is a **fermenter**.
- 10) Sterilisation methods provide a contamination-free environment.
- 11) **Impeller** (or **agitator**) is an agitating device required for stirring of the fermenter.
- 12) Baffles prevent vortex and improve the efficiency of aeration.
- 13) Penicillin is the **first antibiotic** which was clinically used in **1941**.
- 14) The variety of moulds yielding a greater amount of penicillin is called the **high yielding strain**, developed from the wild *P. chrysogenum* by **sequential genetic selection process**.
- 15) Inoculum is the **microorganism used in fermentation**.
- 16) Inoculation is the process of **introducing pure inoculum into the fermenters** or production tanks.
- 17) **Citric acid** at the current time is known as an intermediate of Krebs cycle.
- 18) Citric acid can be obtained from various microorganisms. *Aspergillus niger* (fungus) is most commonly used for industrial production of citric acid.
- 19) In **surface process**, the microorganisms are grown as a layer or a film on a surface in contact with the solid or liquid nutrient medium.
- 20) In **submerged process**, the microorganisms are either immersed in or dispersed throughout the nutrient medium.
- 21) **Vitamin B₁₂** comes under a group of compounds known as cobalamins.
- 22) Production of cobalamin requires cobalt supplement, and also depends on the internal formation or external supply of 5,6-dimethylbenzimidazole.
- 23) **Ion exchange resins** are commonly used for recovery process.
- 24) **Griseofulvin** (a less toxic systemic antifungal antibiotic) is administered orally for treating and controlling fungal diseases of skin, hair, and nails caused by various dermatophytes.
- 25) Griseofulvin is stored intracellularly.

9.3. EXERCISE

9.3.1. True or False

- 1) In batch fermentation process, the microorganisms are inoculated in a fixed volume of batch culture medium.
- 2) Griseofulvin is stored intracellularly.
- 3) Citric acid comes under a group of compounds known as cobalamins.
- 4) Introducing pure inoculum into the fermenters is known as inoculation.
- 5) Baffles prevent vortex and improve the efficiency of aeration.
- 6) The apparatus that maintains optimal conditions for the growth of microorganisms is an impeller.
- 7) Citric acid is an intermediate of Krebs cycle.

9.3.2. Fill in the Blanks

- 8) The variety of moulds yielding a greater amount of penicillin is called the _____.
- 9) _____ is most commonly used for industrial production of citric acid.
- 10) The apparatus that maintains optimal conditions for the growth of microorganisms is a _____.
- 11) _____ is a mixture of various nutrients prepared artificially to support the growth and multiplication of microorganisms.
- 12) _____ methods provide a contamination-free environment.
- 13) Vitamin B₁₂ comes under a group of compounds known as _____.

Answers

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------|-----------|-------------------------|
| 1) True | 2) True | 3) False | 4) True |
| 5) True | 6) False | 7) True | 8) High yielding strain |
| 9) <i>Aspergillus niger</i> | 10) Fermenter | 11) Media | 12) Sterilisation |
| 13) Cobalamins | | | |

9.3.3. Very Short Answer Type Questions

- 1) Define fermentation and name the methods of fermentation.
- 2) Discuss batch fermentation.
- 3) How fermenter is sterilised?
- 4) Write about isolation and purification of vitamin B₁₂.
- 5) Discuss the aeration system and stirring in fermenter.
- 6) What are the microbial strains used for citric acid production?

9.3.4. Short Answer Type Questions

- 1) Write the factors affecting fermenter design.
- 2) Write about the medium used for penicillin production.
- 3) Explain the fermentation process for glutamic acid production.
- 4) Discuss the inoculation process for the production of penicillins.
- 5) Briefly discuss production of glutamic acid.

9.3.5. Long Answer Type Questions

- 1) Discuss the fermentation methods in detail.
- 2) Write about the methods used for sterilisation.
- 3) Explain large-scale production fermenter design.
- 4) Explain citric acid production.

CHAPTER
10

Blood Products and
Plasma Substitutes

10.1. BLOOD PRODUCTS

10.1.1. Introduction

Blood is a thick and bright red coloured fluid. It is alkaline (pH is 7.3 -7.45), salty, viscous, and heavier than water (specific gravity is 1.03-1.05).

Blood is made up of a liquid portion (plasma) and a cellular portion containing red blood cells (erythrocytes), white blood cells (leukocytes), and platelets (thrombocytes). The plasma contains water, electrolytes, different proteins such as clotting (coagulation) factors and immunoglobulins, and numerous metabolic substances. Blood plays various important roles in the human body, like transport of oxygen, nutrients and ions and serving as a buffer between the cells and environment. The major whole blood components are enlisted in **table 10.1**:

Table 10.1: Components of Whole Blood

Plasma	Cells
Water (97%)	Red blood cells
Ions	White blood cells
Organics	Platelets
Sugars	
Amino acids	
Lipids	
Trace elements	
Dissolved gases	

Blood transfusion is a lifesaving intervention with well-known benefits and risks. It includes some infectious and non -infectious complications. Blood transfusion technique is used:

- 1) For maintaining adequate circulating blood volume,
- 2) For replacing specific blood components (erythrocytes, leukocytes, platelets, plasma, etc.), and
- 3) For removing harmful substances (such as bilirubin or excess red cells) by using various techniques of exchange transfusion.

10.1.2. Whole Human Blood

Whole blood is the simplest and most common type of blood donation. It can be transfused in its original form, or it can be separated into its specific components of red cells, white cells, plasma and platelets to be used in multiple patients.

Whole human blood is transfused for replacing the red blood cells, clotting factors, or other normal constituents missing from the patient's blood (either partially or wholly), or for restoring blood volume after acute haemorrhage. It is also utilised in various research applications, like drug target discovery, analysis of immune responses, and identification/validation of biomarkers.

10.1.2.1. Collection

Blood can be collected by the following steps:

- 1) An area of the donor's arm over the antecubital vein is cleaned and swabbed with an antiseptic solution.
- 2) A local anaesthetic is injected, and the sterile needle of a blood donor set is inserted in the vein.
- 3) The needle is connected to a bottle or plastic bag containing Acid -Citrate-Dextrose or ACD anti coagulant [disodium hydrogen citrate (2.0 -2.5gm), dextrose (3gm) and water (120ml)] via the tubing of the blood donor set.
- 4) The citrate binds to the calcium ions present in the blood and prevents clotting which would have occurred otherwise within a few minutes of collection.
- 5) Dextrose preserves the red cells, increase their life during storage from 4-7 days (in citrate alone) to 21 days (in ACD).
- 6) Volumes of 420ml of blood are collected and mixed appropriately with the solution in the container.
- 7) Two samples are withdrawn from the collected blood before being issued, one is checked for syphilis and blood group tests, and the other is checked for compatibility test made before the blood is given to a particular patient.
- 8) On standing, the cells settle down and form a dark red layer occupying about half the fluid volume, with a yellowish layer of plasma above.
- 9) The above layer of plasma is either clear or cloudy, which depends on the amount of lipid ingested by the donor in his meals before donating blood.
- 10) Blood which is contaminated or haemolysed through improper storage appear abnormal and should be carefully inspected before the blood is given to a patient.

10.1.2.2. Processing

Blood is drawn from a donor, consisting of erythrocytes, leukocytes, platelets, and plasma proteins with the anticoagulants -preservative solution. Whole blood is stored in a monitored refrigerator at -6°C temperature for 21 days if collected in CPD (Citrate Phosphate Dextrose anticoagulant solution) or for 35 days if collected in CPDA -1 (Citrate Phosphate Dextrose Adenine Solution). Additive solutions cannot be added to whole blood to increase the storage period.

Before the technology of preparing blood component was developed, only whole blood was available as the blood product. When plastic was replaced with glass as the collection medium in the 1960s, whole blood can be easily separated into its components. From that time the availability of whole blood dropped, and it was replaced with red blood cells. In patients requiring only oxygen -carrying

capacity from red blood cells, transfusion of whole blood leads to problems like circulatory overload, loss of viable platelets, and decrease in labile coagulation factors within the first 24 hours of storage. Thus, whole blood has a limited clinical use.

Whole blood is still believed to be used as a replacement in trauma and transplant cases where massive blood loss occurs. However practically instead of the whole blood, intravenous fluids and blood components are the standard therapy for massive resuscitation.

The processing of whole blood depends on the components to be produced from the whole blood unit. If plasma and RBCs are to be processed, the whole blood unit is transported on ice; while, if platelets are to be produced, the whole blood unit is maintained at room temperature till the platelets which plasma separates from the RBCs.

For **production of plasma and RBCs**, the whole blood unit is stored at $1-6^{\circ}\text{C}$ temperature or transported in a refrigerated system to maintain the optimal storage temperature for RBCs (i.e., $1-10^{\circ}\text{C}$). For **production of Fresh Frozen Plasma (FFP)**, the whole blood unit is separated from the plasma within 8 hours of collection and stored in a freezer at temperature -18°C or less. A whole blood unit intended for plasma frozen within 24 hours of phlebotomy (it is the practice of drawing blood from patients and prepare the blood samples for testing) is processed and frozen between 8-24 hours after collection.

For **production of platelets** refrigeration alters the platelet membrane, thus resulting in poor *in vivo* platelet recovery after transfusion. For **production of a platelet concentrate** the whole blood unit is transported in a container that can maintain the optimal temperature range for platelet viability (i.e., $22-24^{\circ}\text{C}$). At the laboratory where components are prepared, the whole blood unit is processed to form a platelet concentrate within 8 hours of collection, and the remaining RBCs are refrigerated.

10.1.2.3. Storage

Given below are the storage requirements for whole human blood:

- 1) Soon after the blood is collected from the donor, it should be cooled to $4-6^{\circ}\text{C}$ temperature and maintained at the same temperature for 21 days, except for short periods of 30 minutes (necessary during transportation or testing).
- 2) The concentration of haemoglobin in the blood-anticoagulant mixture should be not less than 9.7gm/dl.
- 3) The blood cells and the serum should be examined to determine the ABO blood group, and the cells alone should be examined for the Rh group.
- 4) The blood sterility should be checked before it is used for transfusion by testing a proportion of containers of blood older than 21 days as a check on the technique of collection and storage.
- 5) The label should bear the ABO and Rh groups, volumes of blood and anticoagulant solution present, date of collecting blood, expiry date, required storage conditions, a warning that the contents should not be used if any visible sign of deterioration is seen, and a number or code by which the history of the preparation can be traced back to the original donor.

Factors Affecting Storage

Blood should be stored at 4-10°C temperature (preferably at 4-6°C) for not more than 21 days. Given below are the factors that influence the storage of blood:

- 1) **Deterioration during Storage:** Red cells may get damaged or haemolysed on exposure to heat, freezing, excessive agitation, hypertonic or hypotonic solutions, incorrect environmental pH, or storage beyond the specified dating period. The blood may clot if incorrect collection procedures have been followed. Under normal conditions also, some small clots may be present, and thus blood should be administered always through a 'giving' or 'recipient' set, which includes a filter with a large surface area. This filter removes the clots, but does not get blocked during the transfusion.
- 2) **Bacterial Contamination:** If blood is sterilised by heat, filtration, or using chemical agents, the red cells and plasma proteins are irreversibly damaged. Thus, the only ways of preventing bacterial contamination of the whole blood to be transfused are the use of properly sterilised equipment, careful techniques of collection, and storage at 4-6°C temperature at all times (even during transportation). Even if these measures are adopted, a few viable organisms (derived from the donor's skin) are still present in the collected blood. These organisms either die or their proliferation is prevented by storing the blood at desired temperature (4-6°C). In rare cases, the blood may get contaminated by cryophilic gram-negative organisms that grow at 4 °C, and do not give rise to any macroscopic changes. Depending on the number of organisms present, blood transfusion may cause a mild, severe or rapidly fatal reaction.
- 3) **Transmission of Disease from the Donor:** Syphilis, malaria and hepatitis are the diseases that can get transmitted by blood transfusion. A serological test for syphilis should always be done, however a negative test is not a complete precaution. Thus, the donor's medical history is checked to determine whether or not he/she is free of diseases that get transmitted by blood transfusion. The greatest risk is of transmitting hepatitis B (serum hepatitis). A high proportion of hepatitis carriers can be identified by immunological tests that detect the presence of hepatitis B surface antigen in their blood. Thus, all blood donations are screened by such tests.
- 4) **Sensitisation to Blood Group Antigens:** Blood transfusion is a kind of homograft (i.e., transfer of living tissue from one individual to another). Antibodies developed in the plasma reject the red cells of the type introduced by reacting with the antigens on the cell surfaces. In case of ABO blood group antigens, iso-antibodies are present in the blood even when the individual has not gone through any previous blood transfusions, and react with the cells of wrong group if these are transfused.

The rejection reaction caused by the action of antibodies on red cells results in intravascular agglutination, lysis or disruption of the transfused cells, and a fatal effect on the patient. Therefore before using the blood, it is tested and labelled according to its blood group; the patient is grouped and blood of

appropriate group is selected; a compatibility test is performed in which the cells to be transfused are tested against the patient's serum to confirm that no antibodies which will agglutinate or lyse the cells are present. In order to avoid the transfusion of blood of wrong group, an elaborate system of labelling, record-keeping and cross-checks should be adopted.

10.1.3. Plasma, Serum and Plasma Fractions

During the storage period, the red cells lose their capacity to survive in the circulation of the transfused recipient. When 21 days old blood is transfused, around 70% of the cells remain in the patient's circulation after 24 hours. Therefore, blood older than 21 days is not considered suitable for transfusion. The plasma proteins are relatively more stable, and the plasma should be aspirated from the sedimented red cells of time-expired blood to use it for therapeutic products. Freshly collected blood is subjected to centrifugation to obtain fresh plasma for preparing certain labile components that cannot be recovered in active form from the time-expired blood.

Even if the plasma and certain fractions derived from it are prepared from blood screened for hepatitis B surface antigen, they may still carry the hepatitis B virus. Thus, they should be used only when the benefits likely to accrue to the patient compensates the risk of transmitting the disease. These fractions should not be transfused as a vehicle for administering a drug or other substance. Dried plasma and serum are being replaced with albumin preparations, as they serve as volume expanders with no risk.

Proteins (complex macromolecules) can get easily damaged or denatured on exposure to heat, thus strict storage requirements should be maintained. Since proteins are instable in solution, some protein-containing products are issued as a freeze-dried powder, sealed in the presence of dry nitrogen. Such preparations are hygroscopic and if moisture enters through a loose or faulty seal, they lose their ~~stability~~ **stability**.

In Pharmacopoeias, requirements are laid down with respect to sterility, identity, freedom from pyrogens, total protein content, electrolyte content, solubility, presence of preservatives and stabilisers, and residual moisture content for freeze-dried products. Apart from these special requirements for plasma proteins, required protein composition as determined by electrophoretic analysis or other procedures are also mentioned. The **label** of these products should include:

- 1) The product name,
- 2) The batch number,
- 3) Information on potency or concentration,
- 4) The name and address of manufacturer or authorised distributor,
- 5) The date of manufacture,
- 6) The date of expiry,
- 7) The required storage conditions, and
- 8) The nature and concentration of bacteriostatic agent (if added).

Products used in blood volume replacement therapy, including plasma, human albumin preparations and solutions of various substances are used as plasma substitutes.

10.1.3.1. Dried Human Plasma BP

Haemagglutinating antibodies of the ABO system are found in the plasma of some donors. When these antibodies are transfused into patients of certain blood groups, there is a risk of intravascular agglutination and haemolysis; however, this risk can be avoided if the haemagglutinins are neutralised with the soluble blood group substances present in the plasma of other donors of appropriate blood groups.

Plasma is selected from such pools of blood donated that the normal distribution of ABO groups is represented; thus a ten-donor pool contains plasma from equal numbers of A and O donations, along with at least one B or AB donation.

Many years back it was found in a research that on restricting plasma pools to ten donors, the risk of transmitting hepatitis B was low; thus, small-pool plasma was issued to be used with a risk of transmitting hepatitis in one out of 500 patients.

Attempts to inactivate the virus either with UV irradiation or with β -propiolactone proved to be ineffective; however combination of both inactivates the agent, but the so treated plasma shows electrophoretic and other abnormalities.

Filtration of plasma is difficult and it is not practically possible to sterilise large numbers of small pools by filtration. As whole blood cannot be assumed to be sterile, it is necessary to perform sterility test on each ten-donor pool. The pools which pass these tests are redistributed in transfusion bottles in such quantities that they can be freeze dried. Dried plasma is a light to deep cream-coloured powder that is free from streaks of red or pink indicative of red cells or haemoglobin. It is reconstituted to the original volume using water for injection at room temperature, and it dissolves in less than 10 minutes to give a cloudy solution. The protein content is not less than 45gm/l. Adding 17gm/l of calcium chloride to 1ml causes coagulation, thus indicating the presence of fibrinogen.

Storage

- 1) Dried human plasma should be stored under dry conditions.
- 2) It should be stored at temperature below 50°C.
- 3) It should be stored away from light.

Labelling

Apart from the general requirements, the label of dried human plasma should also state:

- 1) The names and percentages of anticoagulant and other added substances.
- 2) The quantity of water for injection required to reconstitute the original volume
- 3) The protein content of the reconstituted liquid.
- 4) The contents should not be used after 3 hours of reconstitution.

Uses

- 1) It is used for restoring the plasma volume in patients suffering from burns, scalds, or crush injury.
- 2) In cases of emergency, when whole blood is not available or the results of compatibility tests are still awaited, dried plasma can be used to restore blood volume.
- 3) In cases of emergency, when fibrinogen concentrate is not available, dried plasma is reconstituted to one third or one quarter of the original volume and used for treating acute fibrinogen deficiency.

10.1.3.2. Fresh Frozen Plasma

Fresh frozen plasma is prepared by centrifugation of whole human blood within a few hours of its collection from the donor, followed by storing it in the frozen state at temperature below -30°C . If it is not pooled it should be labelled and used according to the stated blood group. When the plasma is to be used, it is thawed for 45 minutes by immersion in a water bath at a temperature not more than 37°C .

Uses

- 1) It is used to preserve the labile clotting factors.
- 2) It is a source of clotting factor VIII that is required for treating minor haemorrhage in mildly affected haemophiliacs.

10.1.3.3. Dried Human Serum, BP

Dried human serum is prepared by collecting blood without adding an anticoagulant from donors who meet the requirements specified for whole human blood. The collected blood is then allowed to clot, and the separated fluid is pooled, bottled and freeze-dried.

The ratio of blood groups in the pool and the pool size for dried human serum are similar as that for dried human plasma. All the other requirements are also identical, with the exceptions that the protein content should not be less than 65gm/l, and the test for coagulation with calcium chloride does not apply. The uses of dried human serum are similar to those of dried human plasma, except for the fact that it is not a source of fibrinogen.

10.1.4. Plasma Substitutes

There are some limiting factors and disadvantages closely related to the use of human blood, plasma and its derivatives. Therefore, many attempts have been made to find substances (not of human origin) that can be used for the restoration of depleted blood volume. Such substances should be non-antigenic, non-toxic, get completely excreted or metabolised, and may exert a colloid osmotic pressure. Gum acacia, modified globin (derived from human haemoglobin), synthetic polymers such as polyvinyl pyrrolidone, hydroxyethyl starch, modified gelatin and dextran are the substances which have been investigated. Dextran and gelatin (to a lesser extent) are the most widely used ones.

Gronwall and **Ingelman** suggested that dextrans (polysaccharides of bacterial origin) can be used as volume expanders, thus these substances have been examined comprehensively. Dextrans are long chain polymers of dextrose (D-glucose) with their sub-units linked through α -1,6-glycosidic linkages. As per the B.P., dextran to be used clinically is produced commercially by large-scale fermentation, using a strain of *Leuconostoc mesenteroides* bacteria. Dextran that has been precipitated from the fermentation medium and purified to remove pyrogenic and antigenic substances is a clinically useful volume expander and possesses colloidal properties similar to plasma.

10.1.4.1. Ideal Requirements of Plasma Substitutes

The ideal requirements of a plasma substitute or the properties of an ideal plasma substitute are:

- 1) Its colloidal osmotic pressure should be similar to that of whole blood.
- 2) Its viscosity should be similar to that of plasma.
- 3) Its molecular weight should be such that the molecules do not easily diffuse through the capillary walls.
- 4) It should suffer a low rate of excretion or destruction by the body.
- 5) It should undergo a complete elimination from the body.
- 6) It should be free from toxicity, **e.g.**, no impairment of renal function.
- 7) It should be free from antigenicity and pyrogenicity.
- 8) It should not produce confusing results on tests like blood grouping and erythrocyte sedimentation rate.
- 9) Its isotonicity in solution should be equal to that of blood plasma.
- 10) It should be highly stable in liquid form at normal and sterilising temperatures and during transport and storage.
- 11) It should be easy to prepare and readily available at low cost.

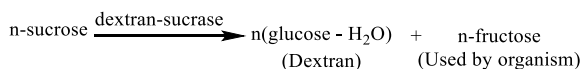
10.1.4.2. Polyvinylpyrrolidone (PVP)

The Germans in the Second World War introduced polyvinylpyrrolidone (a synthetic colloid) for shock treatment. It was marketed in the 1950s but was withdrawn later because of its suspected carcinogenicity.

Polyvinylpyrrolidone (PVP or povidone) is the generic name for the water-soluble homopolymer of N-Vinyl-2-Pyrrolidone (NVP). It is a synthetic polymer with average of molecular weight of 40,000. It is used as a 3.5% solution. It interferes with blood grouping and releases histamine. It mainly gets excreted via renal route; however small amounts of it are also excreted by liver through bile. Since it interacts with penicillin and insulin, its use as a plasma expander has become rare.

10.1.4.3. Dextran

Dextran, the most acceptable plasma substitute, is a polysaccharide produced when the bacterium *Leuconostoc mesenteroides* is grown in a medium containing sucrose. This organism secretes an enzyme that converts sucrose to dextran:



In sugar industries, dextran occurs as a slime that clogs the pipes and filters, and hinders crystallisation.

The two main groups of dextrans can be produced from different strains of *Leuconostoc mesenteroides*:

- 1) Long unbranched chains of glucose units linked via 1,6-glycosidic linkages.
- 2) Highly branched polymers of short chains of 1-6 units linked via 1-4 and 1-3 linkages to branches.

Production of Dextran

Dextran is produced by laboratory culture followed by growth in seed tanks in the factory and then in fermenters of 4500dm³ capacity. Enzyme synthesis and its actions on sucrose are rapid, thus it is not necessary to maintain high degree of asepsis in antibiotic fermentation. Also, the process is inhibited by aeration, thus there is no need for a costly supply of sterile air.

Hydrolysis of sucrose into glucose and fructose during sterilisation of the culture media should also be prevented, or else dextran will not be obtained because the conversion does not involve inversion but a straight transglycosylation. Hydrolysis can be prevented by adjusting the media pH to neutral before sterilisation, and by avoiding overheating. On attaining maximum conversion to dextran, it is precipitated by adding a suitable organic solvent. Natural dextran consists of chains of around 200,000 glucose units with molecular weights of about 50 million.

Very **large molecules** having molecular weight above 20,50,000 have the following **limitations**:

- 1) They yield highly viscous solutions that are difficult to administer.
- 2) They cause renal damage and allergic reactions.
- 3) They form rouleaux (aggregates of red cells resembling piles of plates) that interfere with blood matching and sedimentation tests.
- 4) They produce colloidal osmotic pressures lower than those of small molecules.

The selected fraction still requires to be purified for removing:

- 1) Reducing sugars by solvent precipitation; the main contaminant is fructose (the by-product of fermentation).
- 2) Fractionation solvents by evaporation under reduced pressure.
- 3) Inorganic salts by demineralisation in a mixed bed ion exchanger; phosphates should be removed particularly as they cause precipitation during sterilisation and storage.
- 4) Coloured substances by adsorption on activated charcoal.
- 5) Pyrogens by adsorption on asbestos or cellulose derivatives.
- 6) Microbes by filtration; between each treatment, the preparation is passed through a fibrous pad and before bottling also a membrane filter is used.

The obtained solution is diluted to a concentration of 5% (either as 5% dextrose injection or sodium chloride injection), packed in sulphur-treated soda lime bottles, closed with lacquered rubber plugs, and finally sterilised by autoclaving.

Storage

Dextran 110 injections in 5gm/l dextrose should be stored at temperature below 25°C to retain its properties for 5 years. Sodium chloride injection of dextran 110 should be stored at temperature up to 40°C to retain its properties for 5 years.

Labelling

Apart from the general requirements, the label of dextran products should bear:

- 1) The dextran concentration,
- 2) The solvent name, and
- 3) The strain of *Leuconostoc mesenteroides*.

Uses

- 1) Dextran is used for emergency restoration of blood volume.
- 2) Large infusions of dextran interfere with blood coagulation; therefore dextran 110 should be carefully administered to patients with a bleeding tendency.

Dextran 40 Injection, I.P.

This preparation has an average molecular weight of 40,000. Small molecular weight dextran of this size specifically diminishes red cell aggregation. Due to its small molecular size, it exerts a significant osmotic pressure but the resultant blood volume expansion is brief, 75% of the dextran gets excreted in 24 hours. Dextran of small molecular weight promotes blood flow in endangered conditions, **for example**, as in thromboembolic conditions.

The preparation method, the product appearance, and the required control tests are similar to those of Dextran 110. Dextran 40 injections should be stored at a temperature not more than 25°C; and temperature fluctuations should be avoided. Under these conditions it retains its properties for 5 years.

10.2. SUMMARY

The details given in the chapter can be summarised as follows:

- 1) **Blood** is a thick and bright red coloured fluid. It is alkaline (pH is 7.3 -7.45), salty, viscous, and heavier than water (specific gravity is 1.03-1.05).
- 2) Blood is made up of a liquid portion (plasma) and a cellular portion containing red blood cells (erythrocytes), white blood cells (leukocytes), and platelets (thrombocytes).
- 3) Whole blood is the simplest and most common type of blood donation.
- 4) **Whole human blood** is transfused for replacing the red blood cells, clotting factors, or other normal constituents missing from the patient's blood (either partially or wholly), or for restoring blood volume after acute haemorrhage.
- 5) The citrate binds to the calcium ions present in the blood and prevents clotting.
- 6) **Dextrose** preserves the red cells, increase their life during storage from 4 -7 days (in citrate alone) to 21 days (in ACD).
- 7) Whole blood is stored in a monitored refrigerator at 1-6°C temperature for 21 days if collected in CPD (Citrate Phosphate Dextrose anticoagulant solution) or for 35 days if collected in CPDA -1 (Citrate Phosphate Dextrose Adenine Solution).
- 8) For **production of plasma and RBCs**, the whole blood unit is stored at 1 - 6°C temperature or transported in a refrigerated system to maintain the optimal storage temperature for RBCs (i.e., 1-10°C).
- 9) For **production of Fresh Frozen Plasma (FFP)**, the whole blood unit is separated from the plasma within 8 hours of collection and stored in a freezer at temperature -18°C or less.

- 10) For **production of platelets**, refrigeration alters the platelet membrane, thus resulting in poor *in vivo* platelet recovery after transfusion.
- 11) For **production of a platelet concentrate**, the whole blood unit is transported in a container that can maintain the optimal temperature range for platelet viability (i.e., 22-24°C).
- 12) Blood should be stored at 4-10°C temperature (preferably at 4-6°C) for not more than 21 days.
- 13) If blood is sterilised by heat, filtration, or using chemical agents, the red cells and plasma proteins are irreversibly damaged.
- 14) During the storage period, the red cells lose their capacity to survive in the circulation of the transfused recipient.
- 15) **Fresh frozen plasma** is prepared by centrifugation of whole human blood within a few hours of its collection from the donor, followed by storing it in the frozen state at temperature below -30°C.
- 16) **Dried human serum** is prepared by collecting blood without adding an anti-coagulant from donors who meet the requirements specified for whole human blood.
- 17) **Dextran**, the most acceptable plasma substitute, is a polysaccharide produced when the bacterium *Leuconostoc mesenteroides* is grown in a medium containing sucrose.
- 18) The Germans in the Second World War introduced polyvinylpyrrolidone (a synthetic colloid) for shock treatment.

10.3. EXERCISE

10.3.1. True or False

- 1) Blood is a thin and bright red coloured fluid.
- 2) The blood is slightly acidic.
- 3) The citrate binds to the calcium ions present in the blood.
- 4) The citrate prevents clotting.
- 5) Immediately after collecting blood from the donor, it should be cooled to 15-20°C temperature.

10.3.2. Fill in the Blanks

- 6) The blood is _____ in nature.
- 7) The pH of blood is _____.
- 8) Blood should be stored at _____ temperature.
- 9) The concentration of haemoglobin in the blood -anticoagulant mixture should be not less than _____.
- 10) _____ is the source of clotting factor VIII.

Answers

- 1) False 2) False 3) True 4) True 5) False
- 6) Alkaline 7) 7.3-7.5 8) 4-10°C 9) 9.7gm/dl
- 10) Fresh frozen plasma

10.3.3. Very Short Answer Type Questions

- 1) Write a short note on blood and blood transfusion.
- 2) Discuss about whole human blood.
- 3) Write a short note on the labelling of dried human plasma BP.
- 4) Briefly discuss dried human serum BP.
- 5) Discuss dextran 40 injection, I.P.

10.3.4. Short Answer Type Questions

- 1) Discuss the collection and processing of whole human blood.
- 2) Write a short note on plasma substitutes.
- 3) Give the storage, labelling, and uses of dried human plasma BP.
- 4) Write the ideal requirements of plasma substitutes.

10.3.5. Long Answer Type Questions

- 1) Write a detailed note on whole human blood.
- 2) Explain plasma substitutes.
- 3) Explain PVP and dextran.

Index

A

Agriculture, 18
Antitoxins, 118

B

Bacterial vaccines, 117
Bacterial Vaccines, 116
Biological Engineering, 19
Biosensors, 46
 Applications, 48
 Principle, 46
 Types, 47
 Working, 47
Biotechnology, 15, 42
 Applications, 17
 Historical Background, 15
Biotransformation
 Applications, 178
Blood, 234
Blood Products, 225

C

Cloning, 18
Cloning Vectors, 67
 Bacteriophages, 69
 Cosmids, 71
 Expression Vectors, 75
 Plasmids, 67
Competitive ELISA, 147
Conjugation, 162

D

Deletion Mutation, 193

E

Electro-Deposition, 43
Enzyme Immobilization, 19
 Adsorption Method, 20
 Applications, 28
 Covalent Bonding, 21
 Encapsulation, 26
 Entrapment, 23, 24

Enzyme Linked Immunosorbent
Assay, 144

F

Fermentation, 195
 Batch Fermentation, 195
 Continuous Fermentation, 196
 Factors Affecting Fermenter
 Design, 206
 Fed-Batch Fermentation, 196
 Large-Scale Production Fermenter
 Design, 204
 Sterilisation Methods, 202
 Study of Equipments, 201
 Study of Media, 198
 Various Controls of a Fermenter,
 205
Frameshift Mutation, 193

G

Gene Therapy, 17
Genetic Engineering, 55
 Applications, 56
 Basic Principles, 56
 Historical Background, 55
 Process, 56
Genetic Organisation, 153
 Eukaryotes, 154
 Prokaryotes, 155
Genetic Testing, 18

H

Hybridoma Technology, 132
 Applications of MAbs, 137
 Principle, 132
 Production of MAbs, 133
 Purification of MAbs, 136
Hypersensitivity Reactions, 105
 Type I, 106
 Type II, 106
 Type III, 108
 Type IV, 108
 Type V, 110

I

- Identification and Isolation of Recombinant Genes, 76
- Hybrid Released Translation (HRT) Method, 77
- Immunochemical Detection, 78
- Replica Plate Method, 76
- Immune Stimulation, 110
- Immune Suppression, 110
- Immunity, 90
 - Active Immunity, 94
 - Cellular/Cell-Mediated/T-Cell Immunity, 95
 - Humoral/Antibody-Mediated/B-Cell Immunity, 96
 - Non-Specific/Innate/Neutral Immunity, 90
 - Passive Immunity, 94
 - Specific/Acquired/Adaptive Immunity, 93
- Immunoglobulins, 98
 - Classification, 98
 - Structure, 100
- Indirect ELISA, 145
- Insertion Mutation, 193
- Inversion, 193

L

- Live Attenuated Vaccines, 116

M

- Major Histocompatibility Complex, 102
- Microbial Biotransformation, 170
- Microbial genetics, 158
- Mutagens, 184
 - Chemical Mutagens, 188
 - Physical Mutagens, 185
- Mutation, 181
 - Types, 181
 - Types of Mutants, 184

N

- Natural Immunity
 - Mechanisms, 91

- Neutral Mutation, 193

P

- Pharmacogenomics, 17
- Plasma Substituents, 231
 - Dextran, 232
 - Polyvinylpyrrolidone, 232
- Plasma, Serum and Plasma Fractions, 229
 - Dried Human Plasma, 230
 - Dried Human Serum, 231
 - Fresh Frozen Plasma, 231
- Point Mutation, 193, 194
- Production of Citric Acid, 213
- Production of Glutamic Acid, 219
- Production of Griseofulvin, 220
- Production of Vitamin B₁₂, 216
- Production of Enzymes, 32
 - Amylase, 35
 - Catalase, 37
 - Lipase, 39
 - Penicillinase, 41
 - Peroxidase, 37
 - Protease, 40
- Production of Penicillins, 207
- Protein Engineering, 49

R

- Reactor Loading, 42
- Recombinant DNA Technology, 60
 - Application in the Production of Hepatitis Vaccine, 84
 - Application in the Production of Insulin, 86
 - Application in the Production of Interferon, 82
 - Applications in Medicine, 81
 - Blotting Techniques, 79
 - Dot Blot Hybridisation, 79
 - Gel Electrophoresis, 79
 - PCR (Polymerase Chain Reaction), 80

S

- Sandwich ELISA, 146

Serum, 119
Southern Blotting, 152

T

Toxoids, 117, 118
Transduction, 160
Transformation, 158
transition mutation, 193
Transposons, 167

V

Vaccines, 116
 AIDS Vaccine, 129
 BCG Vaccine, 120

Cholera Vaccine, 121
Classification, 116
Diphtheria Antitoxin, 131
Hepatitis Vaccine, 129
Pertussis Vaccine, 121
Polio Vaccine, 124
Rabies Vaccine, 122
Tetanus Toxoid, 122
Typhoid Vaccine, 128
Viral Vaccines, 118

W

Western Blotting, 148
Whole Human Blood, 225

Bibliography

- Kori S.S., Halkai M.A., *Pharmaceutical Biotechnology (Fundamentals and Applications)*, Vallabh Prakashan.
- Jogadand S. N., *Medical Biotechnology*, Himalaya Publishing House.
- Gupta P. K., *Elements of Biotechnology*, Rastogi Publications.
- Purohit S. S., *Biotechnology (Fundamentals and Applications)*, Student Edition.
- Arora Mohan P., *Biotechnology*, Himalaya Publishing House.
- Chikhale N. J. and Gomase V. S., *Bioinformatics*, Himalaya Publishing House.
- Ray S. and Ray A K., *Biodiversity & Biotechnology*, New Central Book Agency (P) Ltd.
- Bourgaize, Jewell & Buiser, *Biotechnology*, Pearson Education.
- Bahadur B., *Essentials of Biology & Biotechnology*, Pharma Book Syndicate.
- Sambamurthy K. and Kar A., *Pharmaceutical Biotechnology*, New Age.
- Nagori B. P. and Issarani R., *Foundations in Pharmaceutical Biotechnology*, Pharma Book Syndicate.
- Vyas S. P. and Dixit V. K., *Pharmaceutical Biotechnology*, CBS Publishers.

About the Book

This textbook introduces details of Pharmaceutical Biotechnology in a systematic way with exercises at the end of each chapter. Chapter 1 and 2 introduces biotechnology, biosensors, protein and genetic engineering. Chapter 3 details on recombinant DNA technology. Chapter 4 and 5 details on immunology and immunisation. Chapter 6, 7 and 8 illustrates immune-blotting techniques, microbial genetics, and mutation. Chapter 9 and 10 describes fermentation and blood products and plasma substitutes.

About the Author



Dr. S. Jayaraman, M.Pharm., Ph.D., **Principal, Sri Shanmugha College of Pharmacy** has completed his B.Pharm in 1999, M.Pharm in 2007 and Ph.D in Pharmacognosy in 2017. He is having **20 years** of teaching experience. He is the Member of Association of Pharmaceutical Teachers of India. He is the inspection committee member of Pharmacy Council of India. He has published seven research papers. He was the chairperson in various seminars and workshops. He was the examiner cum evaluator in various universities in and around Tamil Nadu state.



Dr. Richa Ohri, a researcher, drug delivery scientist and author of repute, is M. Pharm and Ph.D (Pharmaceutical Sciences). She is having **14 years** of teaching experience. Dr. Richa did her M. Pharm (Pharmaceutics) and **Ph.D. (Pharmaceutical Sciences)** from **Punjabi University, Patiala**. She has worked as a Lecturer at MM College of Pharmacy, MM University, Mullana; as a Research Fellow in the Department of Pharmaceutical Sciences & Drug Research, Punjabi University, Patiala; as Senior Research Fellow (CSIR) in the Department of Pharmaceutical Sciences & Drug Research, Punjabi University, Patiala; and as a Senior Research Fellow (CSIR) under direct fellowship, Department of Pharmaceutical Sciences and Drug Research, Punjabi University, Patiala. She was Principal of the Himalayan Institute of Pharmacy, Kala Amb for 4 years. At present, she is working as **Principal of Lala Birkha Ram College of Pharmacy, Golpura Barwala**. She has a distinct study in Drugs and their utilisation.



Dr. Pankaj Verma is **Associate Professor** of Pharmaceutical Sciences at **Anand College of Pharmacy, Agra**. Dr. Verma received his **Ph.D.** from the **Jiwaji University, Gwalior**. He is having **14 years** of teaching experience. He has written good numbers of peer-reviewed journal articles and book chapters.

As per PCI Sem 6 th	GTU Sem 5 th as per PCI	Rate
Medicinal Chemistry-III	Medicinal Chemistry-II	₹210
Pharmacology-III	Pharmacology-II	₹210
Herbal Drug Technology	Pharmacognosy and Phytochemistry-II	₹210
Biopharmaceutics and Pharmacokinetics	Pharmaceutical Microbiology	₹215
Pharmaceutical Biotechnology	Pharmaceutical Biotechnology	₹180
Quality Assurance		

